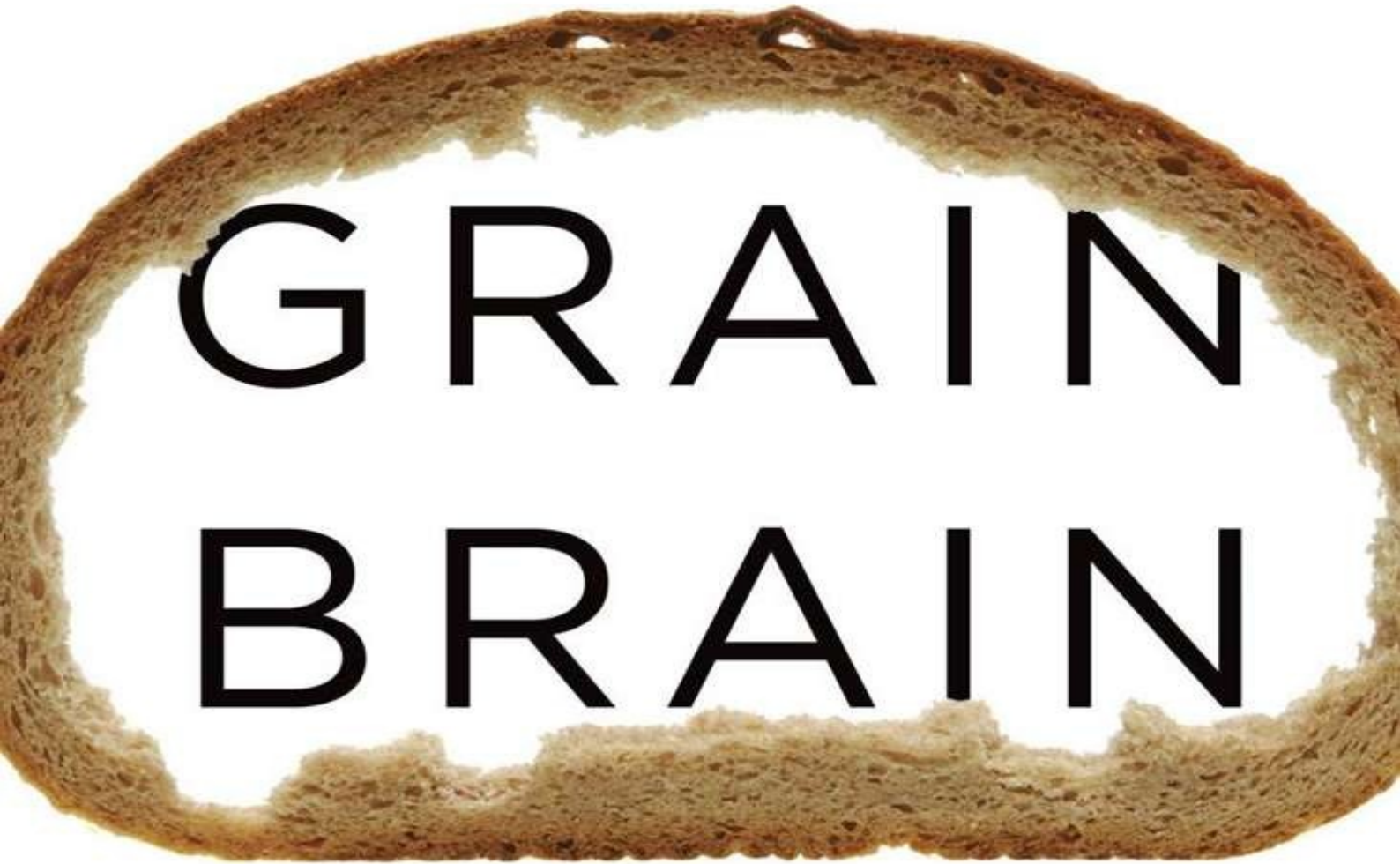


NEW YORK TIMES NO.1 BESTSELLER

*The Surprising Truth About Wheat, Carbs,
and Sugar – Your Brain's Silent Killers*



DR DAVID PERLMUTTER

WITH KRISTIN LOBERG

Contents

Title Page

Copyright

Praise

Also by

Dedication

INTRODUCTION: Against the Grain

SELF-ASSESSMENT: What Are Your Risk Factors?

PART I: THE WHOLE GRAIN TRUTH

CHAPTER 1: The Cornerstone of Brain Disease: *What You Don't Know About Inflammation*

CHAPTER 2: The Sticky Protein: *Gluten's Role in Brain Inflammation (It's Not Just About Your Belly)*

CHAPTER 3: Attention, Carboholics and Fat Phobics: *Surprising Truths About Your Brain's Real Enemies and Lovers*

CHAPTER 4: Not a Fruitful Union: *This Is Your Brain on Sugar (Natural or Not)*

CHAPTER 5: The Gift of Neurogenesis and Controlling Master Switches: *How to Change Your Genetic Destiny*

CHAPTER 6: Brain Drain: *How Gluten Robs You and Your Children's Peace of Mind*

PART II: GRAIN BRAIN REHAB

CHAPTER 7: Dietary Habits for an Optimal Brain: *Hello, Fasting, Fats, and Essential Supplements*

CHAPTER 8: Genetic Medicine: *Jog Your Genes to Build a Better Brain*

CHAPTER 9: Good Night, Brain: *Leverage Your Leptin to Rule Your Hormonal Kingdom*

PART III: SAY GOOD-BYE TO GRAIN BRAIN

CHAPTER 10: A New Way of Life: *The Four-Week Plan of Action*

CHAPTER 11: Eating Your Way to a Healthy Brain: *Meal Plans and Recipes*

EPILOGUE: The Mesmerizing Truth

Acknowledgments

Illustration Credits

Notes

Index

About the Author

GRAIN BRAIN

The Surprising Truth About Wheat, Carbs, and Sugar
— Your Brain's Silent Killers

Dr David Perlmutter
With Kristin Loberg



www.yellowkitebooks.co.uk

First published in Great Britain in 2014 by Yellow Kite Books
An imprint of Hodder & Stoughton
An Hachette UK company

Copyright © David Perlmutter, MD 2014

The right of David Perlmutter to be identified as the Author of the Work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the publisher, nor be otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

A CIP catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library

ISBN 978 1 444 79192 1

Hodder & Stoughton Ltd
338 Euston Road
London NW1 3BH

www.hodder.co.uk

‘Dr. Perlmutter outlines an innovative approach to our most fragile organ, the brain. He is an absolute leader in the use of alternative and conventional approaches in the treatment of neurologic disorders. I have referred him patients with wonderful results. He is on the cutting edge and can help change the way we practice medicine.’ – **Mehmet Oz, MD**

‘Dr. Perlmutter takes us on a detailed tour of the destructive effects that ‘healthy whole grains’ have on our brains. Modern wheat, in particular, is responsible for destroying more brains in this country than all the strokes, car accidents, and head trauma combined. Dr. Perlmutter makes a persuasive case for this wheat-free approach to preserve brain health and functioning, or to begin the process of reversal.’ – **William Davis, MD**, author of *Wheat Belly*

‘If you want to boost your brain power, keep your memory, and lift your mood and energy, as well as heal from a host of other common complaints, Dr. Perlmutter is your guide. This is the definitive instruction book for the care and feeding of your brain!’ – **Mark Hyman, MD**, author of *The Blood Sugar Solution*

‘Dementia and many other brain diseases are not inevitable, nor are they genetic. They are directly and powerfully linked to a diet high in sugar and grains. *Grain Brain* not only proves this, it also gives you everything you need to know to protect your brain – or a loved one’s – now.’ – **Christiane Northrup, MD**, author of *Women’s Bodies, Women’s Wisdom*

‘This book is a treasure. It is filled with self-empowering wisdom and easily understood leading-edge science. It can help you to avoid the devastating effects of an unhealthy diet and the dietary factors which are involved. By learning from the information presented in Dr. Perlmutter’s book, you can avoid multiple health and neurological problems.’ – **Bernie Siegel, MD**, author of *Faith, Hope, and Healing* and *The Art of Healing*

‘A provocative, eye-opening scientific account of how diet profoundly influences nerve health and brain function. *Grain Brain* explains how the American diet rich in gluten and inflammatory foods is linked to neurological conditions. Dr. Perlmutter outlines a blueprint for optimal health and a more resilient brain through proper nutrition and lifestyle. *Grain Brain* is a must-read!’ – **Gerard E. Mullin, MD**, Associate Professor of Medicine, The Johns Hopkins School of Medicine, and author of *The Inside Tract: Your Good Gut Guide to Great Digestive Health*

‘Dr. Perlmutter is the leading integrative medicine neurologist in North America today. His ability to fully integrate conventional medicine diagnosis and treatment with the latest innovations in nutritional and environmental medicine is phenomenal. As a teacher and clinician, he has fundamentally changed how physicians and patients think about neurological degeneration and, happily, regeneration.’ – **Joseph Pizzorno, MD**, coauthor of *Encyclopedia of Natural Medicine*

‘Dr. Perlmutter provides sound advice, supported by the latest and most well respected medical research.’ – **Russell. B. Roth, MD**, Past President, American Medical Association

‘A galvanizing call to arms against a gluten-heavy diet. ... Perlmutter’s credentials as a board-certified neurologist and American College of Nutrition Fellow make him a uniquely qualified voice in the debate about which foods are best for the brain and body.’ – **Kirkus Reviews**

‘Mind-blowing and disruptive to some long-standing beliefs about what our bodies require for optimal health ... GRAIN BRAIN lays out an easy-to-understand roadmap packed with the latest science.’ – **Max Lugavere, Psychology Today**

‘A tour de force that is destined to save many lives. As I read this important and well-written book I found myself nodding my head vigorously in agreement at practically every page. [*Grain Brain*] gives us what we need to know to be well again. Please read it.’ – **Health Central**

ALSO BY DAVID PERLMUTTER

Power Up Your Brain
Raise a Smarter Child by Kindergarten
The Better Brain Book

To my father, who at age ninety-six begins each day
by getting dressed to see his patients —
despite having retired more than a quarter century ago.

Your brain ...

weighs three pounds and has one hundred thousand miles of blood vessels.

contains more connections than there are stars in the Milky Way.

is the fattest organ in your body.

could be suffering this very minute without your having a clue.

Introduction

Against the Grain

Maintaining order rather than correcting disorder is the ultimate principle of wisdom. To cure disease after it has appeared is like digging a well when one feels thirsty, or forging weapons after the war has already begun.

— NEI JING, 2ND CENTURY BC

IF YOU COULD ASK YOUR GRANDPARENTS or great-grandparents what people died from when they were growing up, you'd likely hear the words "old age." Or you might learn the story of someone who got a nasty germ and passed away prematurely from tuberculosis, cholera, or dysentery. What you won't hear are things like diabetes, cancer, heart disease, and dementia. Since the mid-twentieth century, we've had to attribute someone's immediate cause of death to a single disease rather than use the term "old age" on a death certificate. Today, those single diseases tend to be the kind that go on and on in a chronic, degenerating state and involve multiple complications and symptoms that accumulate over time. Which is why eighty- and ninety-year-olds don't usually die from a specific ailment. Like an old house in ongoing disrepair, the materials weather and rust, the plumbing and electrical falter, and the walls begin to crack from tiny fissures you cannot see. Throughout the home's natural decline, you do the needed maintenance wherever necessary. But it will never be like new unless you tear the structure down and start over again. Each attempt at patching and fixing buys you more time, but eventually the areas in desperate need of a total remodel or complete replacement are everywhere. And, as with all things in life, the human body simply wears out. An enfeebling illness sets in and slowly progresses at an excruciating pace until the body finally goes kaput.

This is especially true when it comes to brain disorders, including the most dreaded of them all: Alzheimer's disease. It's a modern medical bogeyman that's never far from the headlines. If there is one health worry that seems to eclipse all others as people get older, it's falling prey to Alzheimer's or some other form of dementia that leaves you unable to think, reason, and remember. Research shows how deep this angst runs. In 2011, a study conducted by

Harris Interactive for the MetLife Foundation showed that 31 percent of people fear dementia more than death or cancer.¹ And this fear doesn't just affect older people.

There are plenty of perpetual myths about the basket of brain-degenerating maladies that includes Alzheimer's: *It's in the genes, it's inevitable with age, and it's a given if you live into your eighties and beyond.*

Not so fast.

I'm here to tell you that the fate of your brain is not in your genes. It's not inevitable. And if you're someone who suffers from another type of brain disorder, such as chronic headaches, depression, epilepsy, or extreme moodiness, the culprit may not be encoded in your DNA.

It's in the food you eat.

Yes, you read that right: Brain dysfunction starts in your daily bread, and I'm going to prove it. I'll state it again because I realize it sounds absurd: Modern grains are silently destroying your brain. By "modern," I'm not just referring to the refined white flours, pastas, and rice that have already been demonized by the anti-obesity folks; I'm referring to all the grains that so many of us have embraced as being healthful — whole wheat, whole grain, multigrain, seven-grain, live grain, stone-ground, and so on. Basically, I am calling what is arguably our most beloved dietary staple a terrorist group that bullies our most precious organ, the brain. I will demonstrate how fruit and other carbohydrates could be health hazards with far-reaching consequences that not only will wreak physical havoc on your brain, but also will accelerate your body's aging process from the inside out. This isn't science fiction; it's now documented fact.

It is my objective in writing *Grain Brain* to provide information that is sound and based on evolutionary, modern scientific and physiological perspectives. This book goes outside the box of the layman's accepted dogma — and away from vested corporate interests. It proposes a new way of understanding the root cause of brain disease and offers a promising message of hope: Brain disease can be largely prevented through the choices you make in life. So if you haven't figured it out by now, I'll be crystal clear: This is not just another diet book or generic how-to guide to all things preventive health. This is a game-changer.

Every day we hear about something new in our various wars against chronic disease, particularly with regard to illnesses that are predominantly avoidable through lifestyle habits. You'd have to be living under a rock not to know that we are getting fatter and fatter every year despite all the information sold to us about how to stay slim and trim. You'd also be hard-pressed to find someone who doesn't know about our soaring rates of type 2

diabetes. Or the fact that heart disease is our number one killer, trailed closely by cancer.

Eat your vegetables. Brush your teeth. Sweat once in a while. Get plenty of rest. Don't smoke. Laugh more. There are certain tenets to health that are pretty commonsensical and that we all know we should practice routinely. But somehow, when it comes to preserving our brain's health and mental faculties, we tend to think it's not really up to us — that somehow it's our destiny to develop brain disorders during our prime and grow senile in our elder years, or that we'll escape such a fate through the luck of good genes or medical breakthroughs. Certainly, we would probably do well to stay mentally engaged after retirement, complete crossword puzzles, keep reading, and go to museums. And it's not like there's a blatantly obvious, direct correlation between brain dysfunctions and specific lifestyle choices as there is between, say, smoking two packs of cigarettes a day and getting lung cancer, or gorging on French fries and becoming obese. Like I said, we have a habit of categorizing brain ailments separately from the other afflictions we attribute to bad habits. I'm going to change this perception by showing you the relationship between how you live and your risk of developing an array of brain-related problems, some that can strike when you're a toddler and others that get diagnosed at the other end of your life span. I believe that the shift in our diet that has occurred over the past century — from high-fat, low-carb to today's low-fat, high-carb diet, fundamentally consisting of grains and other damaging carbohydrates — is the origin of many of our modern scourges linked to the brain, including chronic headaches, insomnia, anxiety, depression, epilepsy, movement disorders, schizophrenia, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), and those senior moments that quite likely herald serious cognitive decline and full-blown, irreversible, untreatable, and incurable brain disease. I'll reveal to you the profound effect that grains could be having on your brain *right now* without your even sensing it.

The idea that our brains are sensitive to what we eat has been quietly circulating in our most prestigious medical literature recently. This information begs to be known by the public, which is increasingly duped by an industry that sells foods commonly thought of as “nutritious.” It also has led doctors and scientists like me to question what we consider to be “healthy.” Are carbohydrates and processed polyunsaturated vegetable oils such as canola, corn, cottonseed, peanut, safflower, soybean, and sunflower to blame for our spiraling rates of cardiovascular disease, obesity, and dementia? Is a high-saturated fat and high-cholesterol diet actually good for the heart and brain? Can we really change our DNA with food despite the genes we've inherited? It's fairly well known now that a small percentage of the

population's digestive systems are sensitive to gluten, the protein found in wheat, barley, and rye; but is it possible for virtually *everyone's* brain to have a negative reaction to this ingredient?

Questions like these really began to bother me a few years ago as damning research started to emerge while my patients got sicker. As a practicing neurologist who cares day in and day out for individuals searching for answers to debilitating brain conditions, as well as families struggling to cope with the loss of a loved one's mental faculties, I'm compelled to get to the bottom of this. Perhaps it's because I'm not just a board-certified neurologist but also a fellow of the American College of Nutrition — the only doctor in the country with both of these credentials. I'm also a founding member and fellow of the American Board of Integrative and Holistic Medicine. This enables me to have a unique perspective on the relationship between what we eat and how our brains function. This is not well understood by most people, including doctors who were educated years before this new science was established. It's time we paid attention. It's time someone like me came out from behind the microscope and the door to the clinical exam room and, frankly, blew the whistle. After all, the statistics are astounding.

For starters, diabetes and brain disease are this country's costliest and most pernicious diseases, yet they are largely preventable and are uniquely tied together: Having diabetes doubles your risk for Alzheimer's disease. In fact, if there's one thing this book clearly demonstrates, it's that many of our illnesses that involve the brain share common denominators. Diabetes and dementia may not seem related at all, but I'm going to show you just how close every one of our potential brain dysfunctions is to conditions that we rarely attribute to the brain. I'm also going to draw surprising connections between vastly different brain disorders, such as Parkinson's and a propensity to engage in violent behavior, that point to root causes of an array of afflictions that involve the brain.

While it's well established that processed foods and refined carbohydrates have contributed to our challenges with obesity and so-called food allergies, no one has explained the relationship between grains and other ingredients and brain health and, in the broader outlook, DNA. It's pretty straightforward: Our genes determine not just how we process food but, more important, how we *respond* to the foods we eat. There is little doubt that one of the largest and most wide-reaching events in the ultimate decline of brain health in modern society has been the introduction of wheat grain into the human diet. While it's true that our Neolithic ancestors consumed minuscule amounts of this grain, what we now call wheat bears little resemblance to the wild einkorn variety that our forebears consumed on rare occasions. With modern

hybridization and gene-modifying technology, the 133 pounds of wheat that the average American consumes each year shares almost no genetic, structural, or chemical likeness to what hunter-gatherers might have stumbled upon. And therein lies the problem: We are increasingly challenging our physiology with ingredients for which we are not genetically prepared.

For the record, this is not a book about celiac disease (a rare autoimmune disorder that involves gluten but only affects a small number of people). If you're already thinking that this book isn't for you because (1) you haven't been diagnosed with any condition or disorder, or (2) you're not sensitive to gluten as far as you know, I implore you to read on. This is about *all* of us. Gluten is what I call a "silent germ." It can inflict lasting damage without your knowing it.

Beyond calories, fat, protein, and micronutrients, we now understand that food is a powerful epigenetic modulator — meaning it can change our DNA for better or worse. Indeed, beyond simply serving as a source of calories, protein, and fat, food actually regulates the expression of many of our genes. And we have only just begun to understand the damaging consequences of wheat consumption from this perspective.

Most of us believe that we can live our lives however we choose, and then when medical problems arise, we can turn to our doctors for a quick fix in the form of the latest and greatest pill. This convenient scenario fosters an illness-centered approach on the part of physicians as they play their role as the purveyors of pills. But this approach is tragically flawed on two counts. First, it is focused on illness, not wellness. Second, the treatments themselves are often fraught with dangerous consequences. As an example, a recent report in the prestigious *Archives of Internal Medicine* revealed that postmenopausal women who were put on statin drugs to lower their cholesterol had a nearly 48 percent increased risk of developing diabetes compared to those who weren't given the drug.² This one example becomes even more critical when you consider that becoming diabetic doubles your risk for Alzheimer's disease.

These days, we are seeing an ever-increasing public awareness of the effects of lifestyle choices on health as well as disease risk. We often hear of the "heart smart" diet or recommendations to increase dietary fiber as a strategy to reduce colon cancer risk. But why is precious little information made available about how we can keep our brains healthy and stave off brain diseases? Is it because the brain is tied to the ethereal concept of the mind, and this erroneously distances it from our ability to control it? Or is it that pharmaceutical companies are invested in discouraging the idea that lifestyle choices have a profound influence on brain health? Fair warning: I'm not

going to have kind things to say about our pharmaceutical industry. I know far too many stories of people abused by it than helped by it. You'll be reading some of these stories in the pages ahead.

This book is about those lifestyle changes you can make today to keep your brain healthy, vibrant, and sharp, while dramatically reducing your risk for debilitating brain disease in the future. I have dedicated more than thirty-five years to the study of brain diseases. My workday centers on creating integrative programs designed to enhance brain function in those afflicted with devastating disease. On a daily basis I meet with families and other loved ones whose lives have been turned upside down by illness. It's heart-wrenching for me as well. Each morning before I start my day, I visit with my ninety-six-year-old father. A former brilliant neurosurgeon trained at the prestigious Lahey Clinic, he now resides in an assisted-living facility located across the parking lot from my office. While he may or may not remember my name, he almost never forgets to tell me to make sure I make rounds on each of his patients. He retired more than twenty-five years ago.

The information that I will reveal to you is not just breathtaking; it's undeniably conclusive. You'll be shifting how you eat immediately. And you'll be looking at yourself in a whole new light. Right about now, you might be asking, *Is the damage already done?* Have you doomed your brain from all those years of having your cake and eating it too? Don't panic. More than anything, I intend this book to be empowering, equipping you with a remote control to your future brain. It's all about what you do from this day forward.

Drawing on decades of clinical and laboratory studies (including my own), as well as extraordinary results I've seen over the past thirty-odd years in my practices, I'll tell you what we know and how we can take advantage of this knowledge. I'll also offer a comprehensive action plan to transform your cognitive health and add more vibrant years to your life. And the benefits don't stop at brain health. I can promise that this program can help any of the following:

- ADHD
- anxiety and chronic stress
- chronic headaches and migraines
- depression
- diabetes
- epilepsy

- focus and concentration problems
- inflammatory conditions and diseases, including arthritis
- insomnia
- intestinal problems, including celiac disease, gluten sensitivity, and irritable bowel
- memory problems and mild cognitive impairment, frequently a precursor to Alzheimer's disease
- mood disorders
- overweight and obesity
- Tourette's syndrome
- and much more

Even if you don't suffer from any of the above conditions, this book can help you preserve your well-being and mental acuties. It is for both the old and the young, including women who plan to become or are pregnant. As I write this introduction, yet another study has emerged showing that babies born to women who are sensitive to gluten live with an increased risk of developing schizophrenia and other psychiatric disorders later in life.³ That's a huge, chilling finding that all expectant moms need to know.

I've seen dramatic turnarounds in health, such as the twenty-three-year-old man whose crippling tremors vanished after a few easy changes to his diet, and the countless case studies of epileptic patients whose seizures ended the day they replaced grains with more fats and protein. Or the thirty-something woman who experienced an extraordinary transformation in her health after suffering from a litany of medical challenges. Before coming to see me, she not only experienced crushing migraines, depression, and heartbreaking infertility, but also had a rare condition called dystonia that contorted her muscles into strange positions and nearly incapacitated her. Thanks to a few simple dietary tweaks, she allowed her body and brain to recover back to perfect health ... and a perfect pregnancy. These stories speak for themselves and are emblematic of millions of other stories of people who live with unnecessary life-depleting conditions. I see a lot of patients who have "tried everything" and who have had every neurological exam or scan available to them in the hope of finding a cure for their condition. With a few simple prescriptions that don't involve drugs, surgery, or even talk therapy, the vast majority of them heal and find a path back to health. You'll find all of these prescriptions in this book.

A brief note about the book's organization: I've divided the material into three parts, starting with a comprehensive questionnaire designed to show you

how your daily habits might be affecting the function and long-term health of your brain.

Part 1, “The Whole Grain Truth,” takes you on a tour of your brain’s friends and enemies, the latter of which render you vulnerable to dysfunction and disease. Turning the classic American food pyramid upside down, I’ll explain what happens when the brain encounters common ingredients like wheat, fructose (the natural sugar found in fruit), and certain fats, proving that an extremely low-carbohydrate but high-fat diet is ideal (we’re talking no more than 60 grams of carbs a day — the amount in a serving of fruit). This may also sound preposterous, but I’ll be recommending that you start swapping out your daily bread with butter and eggs. You’ll soon be consuming more saturated fat and cholesterol and re-thinking the aisles in your grocery store. Anyone who’s already been diagnosed with high cholesterol and prescribed a statin will be in for a rude awakening: I’m going to explain what’s really going on in your body and tell you how to remedy this condition easily, deliciously, and without drugs. In compelling detail, backed by science, I’ll put a new spin on the topic of inflammation — showing you that in order to control this potentially deadly biochemical reaction that lies at the heart of brain disease (not to mention all of our degenerative illnesses from head to toe), your diet will need to change. I’ll show you how your food choices can bring inflammation under control by actually changing the expression of your genes. And it’s pointless to consume antioxidants. Instead, we need to eat ingredients that turn on the body’s own powerful antioxidant and detoxification pathways. Part 1 includes an exploration of the latest research on how we can change our genetic destiny and actually control the “master switches” in our DNA. The research is so captivating that it will inspire the most exercise-averse fast-food junkie. Part 1 ends with a more in-depth look at some of our most pernicious psychological and behavioral disorders, such as ADHD and depression, as well as headaches. I’ll explain how many cases can be remedied without drugs.

In part 2, “Grain Brain Rehab,” I present the science behind the habits that support a healthy brain, which includes three primary areas: nutrition and supplements, exercise, and sleep. The lessons gained in this part will help you execute my monthlong program outlined in part 3, “Say Good-bye to Grain Brain.” Included are menu plans, recipes, and weekly goals. For additional support and ongoing updates, you can go to my website at www.DrPerlmutter.com. There, you’ll be able to access the latest studies, read my blog, and download materials that will help you tailor the information in this book to your personal preferences. For example, you’ll find a “day at a glance” and “month at a glance” calendar with ideas on how to create your

meals and plan your day, recipes included. Some of the lists in this book (e.g., “The Gluten Police”) will also be accessible online, so they will be easy to pin up in your kitchen or on your refrigerator as a reminder.

So exactly what is “grain brain”? I think you already have a clue. It can best be understood by reflecting back on an old news bulletin. If you were paying attention to advertising in the mid-1980s, you might recall the public service announcements for a large-scale anti-narcotics campaign that featured an egg in a frying pan with the memorable tagline *This is your brain on drugs*. The powerful image suggested that the effect of drugs on the brain was like that of a hot pan on an egg. *Sizzle, sizzle*.

This pretty much sums up my assertion about our brains on grains. Let me prove it to you. Then it’s up to you to decide if you’ll take this all seriously and welcome a brighter, more disease-free future. We’ve all got a lot to lose if we don’t heed this message, and a lot to gain if we do.

Self-Assessment

What Are Your Risk Factors?

WE TEND TO think of brain disease as something that can strike us at any time, for no good reason other than genetic predisposition. Unlike heart disease, which progresses over time due to a combination of certain genetic and lifestyle factors, brain ailments seem like conditions that befall us by chance. Some of us escape them, while others become “afflicted.” But this thinking is wrong. Brain dysfunction is really no different from heart dysfunction. It develops over time through our behaviors and habits. On a positive note, this means we can consciously prevent disorders of our nervous system and even cognitive decline much in the way we can stave off heart disease: by eating right and getting our exercise. The science now tells us, in fact, that many of our brain-related illnesses, from depression to dementia, are closely related to our nutritional and lifestyle choices. Yet only one in one hundred of us will get through life without any mental impairment, let alone a headache or two.

Before I delve into the science behind the bold statement that brain disorders often reflect poor nutrition, as well as a lot of other aggressive assertions, let’s start with a simple questionnaire that reveals what habits could be silently harming you right now. The goal of the questionnaire below is to gauge your risk factors for current neurological problems, which can manifest in migraines, seizures, mood and movement disorders, sexual dysfunction, and ADHD, as well as for serious mental decline in the future. Respond to these statements as honestly as possible. Don’t think about the connections to brain disease implied by my statements; just respond truthfully. In upcoming chapters you’ll begin to understand why I used these particular statements and where you stand in your risk factors. Note that if you feel like you’re in between true and false, and would answer “sometimes,” then you should choose true.

- | | |
|---|------------|
| 1. I eat bread (any kind). | TRUE/FALSE |
| 2. I drink fruit juice (any kind). | TRUE/FALSE |
| 3. I have more than one serving of fruit a day. | TRUE/FALSE |

4. I choose agave over sugar.	TRUE/FALSE
5. I get out of breath on my daily walk.	TRUE/FALSE
6. My cholesterol is below 150.	TRUE/FALSE
7. I have diabetes.	TRUE/FALSE
8. I am overweight.	TRUE/FALSE
9. I eat rice or pasta (any kind).	TRUE/FALSE
10. I drink milk.	TRUE/FALSE
11. I don't exercise regularly.	TRUE/FALSE
12. Neurological conditions run in my family.	TRUE/FALSE
13. I don't take a vitamin D supplement.	TRUE/FALSE
14. I eat a low-fat diet.	TRUE/FALSE
15. I take a statin.	TRUE/FALSE
16. I avoid high-cholesterol foods.	TRUE/FALSE
17. I drink soda (diet or regular).	TRUE/FALSE
18. I don't drink wine.	TRUE/FALSE
19. I drink beer.	TRUE/FALSE
20. I eat cereal (any kind).	TRUE/FALSE

A perfect score on this test would be a whopping zero “true” answers. If you answered true to one question, your brain — and your entire nervous system — is at greater risk for disease and disorder than if you scored a zero. And the more trues you tallied up, the higher your risk. If you scored more than a ten, you’re putting yourself into the hazard zone for serious neurological ailments that can be prevented but cannot necessarily be cured once you are diagnosed.

TESTING, TESTING, 1-2-3

“What are my risks?” It’s a question I am asked countless times every day. The great news is that we now have the means to medically profile individuals to determine their risk for developing certain diseases — from Alzheimer’s to obesity (which is now a well-documented risk factor for brain disease) — and to follow them along their journey to mark their progress. The laboratory studies listed below are available today, are economical, and are generally covered by most insurance plans. You’ll learn more about these tests in later chapters, as well as ideas for improving your results (your “numbers”). The reason I list them here, however, is that many of you want to know right away what tests your doctor can perform that will help you get a

true sense of your risk factors for brain disease. Don't hesitate to bring this list with you to your next doctor's visit and request the following lab work.

- **Fasting blood glucose:** A commonly used diagnostic tool to check for pre-diabetes and diabetes, this test measures the amount of sugar (glucose) in your blood after you have not eaten for at least eight hours. A level between 70 and 100 milligrams per deciliter (mg/dL) is considered normal; above this, your body is showing signs of insulin resistance and diabetes, and an increased risk for brain disease.

- **Hemoglobin A1C:** Unlike a test of blood sugar, this test reveals an "average" blood sugar over a ninety-day period and provides a far better indication of overall blood sugar control. Because it can indicate the damage done to brain proteins due to blood sugar (something called "glycated hemoglobin"), it's one of the greatest predictors of brain atrophy.

- **Fructosamine:** Similar to the hemoglobin A1C test, a fructosamine test is used to measure an average blood sugar level but over a shorter time period — the past two to three weeks.

- **Fasting insulin:** Long before blood sugar begins to climb as a person becomes diabetic, the fasting insulin level will rise, indicating that the pancreas is working overtime to deal with the excess of dietary carbohydrate. It is a very effective early warning system for getting ahead of the diabetes curve, and so has tremendous relevance for preventing brain disease.

- **Homocysteine:** Higher levels of this amino acid, produced by the body, are associated with many conditions, including atherosclerosis (narrowing and hardening of the arteries), heart disease, stroke, and dementia; it can often be easily lowered with specific B vitamins.

- **Vitamin D:** This is now recognized as a critical brain hormone (it's not a vitamin).

- **C-reactive protein (CRP):** This is a marker of inflammation.

- **Cyrex array 3:** This is the most comprehensive marker of gluten sensitivity available.

- **Cyrex array 4 (optional):** This measures sensitivity to twenty-four "cross-reactive" foods to which a gluten-sensitive individual may also react.

Even if you don't choose to have these tests done today, having a general understanding of them and what they mean will help you embrace the principles of *Grain Brain*. I will be referring to these tests and their implications throughout the book.

PART I

THE WHOLE GRAIN TRUTH

If the thought of your brain suffering over a bowl of savory pasta or plate of sweet French toast seems far-fetched, brace yourself. You probably already knew that processed sugar and carbs weren't all that great for you, especially in excess, but so-called healthy carbohydrates like whole grains and natural sugars? Welcome to the whole grain truth. In this part, we're going to explore what happens when the brain is bombarded by carbohydrates, many of which are packed with inflammatory ingredients like gluten that can irritate your nervous system. The damage can begin with daily nuisances like headaches and unexplained anxiety and progress to more sinister disorders such as depression and dementia.

We'll also look at the role common metabolic challenges like insulin resistance and diabetes play in neurological dysfunction, and see how we likely owe our obesity and Alzheimer's epidemics to our undying love for carbs and stark disdain for fat and cholesterol.

By the end of this part, you'll have a new appreciation for dietary fat and an educated apprehension when it comes to most carbohydrates. You'll also learn that there are things you can do to spur the growth of new brain cells, gain control of your genetic destiny, and protect your mental faculties.

CHAPTER 1

The Cornerstone of Brain Disease

What You Don't Know About Inflammation

The chief function of the body is to carry the brain around.

— THOMAS A. EDISON

IMAGINE BEING TRANSPORTED BACK to the Paleolithic era of early humans who lived in caves and roamed the savannas tens of thousands of years ago. Pretend, for a moment, that language is not a barrier and you can communicate easily. You have the opportunity to tell them what the future is like. From a cross-legged perch on a dirt floor in front of a warm fire, you start by describing the wonders of our high-tech world, with its planes, trains, and automobiles, city skyscrapers, computers, televisions, smartphones, and the information highway that is the Internet. Humans have already traveled to the moon and back. At some point, the conversation moves to other lifestyle topics and what it's like to really live in the twenty-first century. You dive into describing modern medicine with its stupendous array of drugs to treat problems and combat diseases and germs. Serious threats to survival are few and far between. Not many people need to worry about crouching tigers, famine, and pestilence. You explain what it's like to shop at grocery stores and supermarkets, a totally foreign concept to these individuals. Food is plentiful, and you mention things like cheeseburgers, French fries, soda, pizza, bagels, bread, cinnamon rolls, pancakes, waffles, scones, pasta, cake, chips, crackers, cereal, ice cream, and candy. You can eat fruit all year long and access virtually any kind of food at the touch of a button or just a short drive away. Water and juice come in bottles for transportability. Although you try to avoid brand names, it's hard to resist because they have become such a part of life — Starbucks, Wonder Bread, Pepperidge Farm, Pillsbury, Lucky Charms, Skittles, Domino's, Subway, McDonald's, Gatorade, Häagen-Dazs, Cheerios, Yoplait, Cheez-It, Coke, Hershey's, and Budweiser.

They are in awe, barely able to picture this future. Most of the features you chronicle are unfathomable; they can't even visualize a fast-food restaurant or bread bar. The term "junk food" is impossible to put into words these people understand. Before you can even begin to mention some of the milestones that humans had to achieve over millennia, such as farming and herding, and later food manufacturing, they ask about the challenges modern people deal with. The obesity epidemic, which has gotten so much attention in your media lately, comes first to mind. This isn't an easy matter for their lean and toned bodies to grasp, and neither is your account of the chronic illnesses that plague society — heart disease, diabetes, depression, autoimmune disorders, cancer, and dementia. These are totally unfamiliar to them, and they ask a lot of questions. What is an "autoimmune disorder"? What causes "diabetes"? What is "dementia"? At this point you're speaking a different language. In fact, as you give them a rundown of what kills most people in the future, doing your best to define each condition, you are met with looks of confusion and disbelief. You've painted a beautiful, exotic picture of the future in these people's minds, but then you tear it down with causes of death that seem to be more frightening than dying from an infection or being eaten by a predator higher up on the food chain. The thought of living with a chronic condition that slowly and painfully leads to death sounds awful. And when you try to convince them that ongoing, degenerative disease is possibly the trade-off for potentially living much longer than they do, your prehistoric ancestors don't buy it. And, soon enough, neither do you. Something seems wrong with this picture.

As a species, we are genetically and physiologically identical to these humans that lived before the dawn of agriculture. And we are the product of an optimal design — shaped by nature over thousands of generations. We may not call ourselves hunters and gatherers anymore, but our bodies certainly behave as such from a biological perspective. Now, let's say that during your time travel back to the present day, you begin to ponder your experience with these ancestors. It's easy to marvel at how far we've come from a purely technological standpoint, but it's also a no-brainer to consider the struggles that millions of your contemporary comrades suffer needlessly. You may even feel overwhelmed by the fact that preventable, non-communicable diseases account for more deaths worldwide today than all other diseases combined. This is tough to swallow. Indeed, we may be living longer than our ancient relatives, but we could be living much better — enjoying our lives sickness-free — especially during the second half of life when the risk of illness rises. While it's true that we are living longer than previous generations, most of our gains are due to improvements in infant

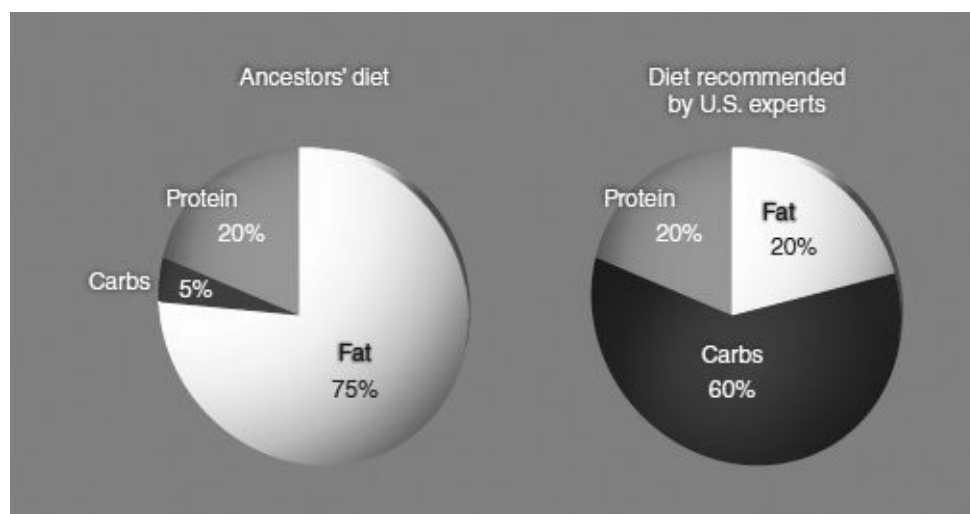
mortality and child health. In other words, we've gotten better at surviving the accidents and illnesses of childhood. We haven't, unfortunately, gotten better at preventing and combatting illnesses that strike us when we're older. And while we can certainly make a case for having much more effective treatments now for many illnesses, that still doesn't erase the fact that millions of people suffer needlessly from conditions that could have been avoided. When we applaud the average life expectancy in America today, we shouldn't forget about quality of life.

When I was in medical school decades ago, my education revolved around diagnosing disease and knowing how to treat or, in some cases, cure each disease with a drug or other therapy. I learned how to understand symptoms and arrive at a solution that matched those symptoms. A lot has changed since then, because we are not only less likely to encounter easily treatable and curable illnesses, but also better able to understand many of our modern, chronic diseases through the lens of a common denominator: inflammation. So, rather than spotting infectious diseases and addressing sicknesses with known culprits, such as germs, viruses, or bacteria, doctors are faced with myriad conditions that don't have clear-cut answers. I can't write a prescription to cure someone's cancer, vanquish inexplicable pain, instantly reverse diabetes, or restore a brain that's been washed away by Alzheimer's disease. I can certainly try to mask or lessen symptoms and manage the body's reactions, but there's a big difference between treating an illness at its root and just keeping symptoms at bay. Now that one of my own kids is in medical school, I see how times have changed in teaching circles. Doctors in training are no longer taught just how to diagnose and treat; they are equipped with ways of *thinking* that help them to address today's epidemics, many of which are rooted in inflammatory pathways run amok.

Before I get to the connection between inflammation and the brain, let's consider what I think is arguably one of the most monumental discoveries of our era: The origin of brain disease is in many cases predominantly dietary. Although several factors play into the genesis and progression of brain disorders, to a large extent numerous neurological afflictions often reflect the mistake of consuming too many carbs and too few healthy fats. The best way to comprehend this truth is to consider the most dreaded neurological ailment of all — Alzheimer's — and view it within the context of a type of diabetes triggered by diet alone. We all know that poor diet can lead to obesity and diabetes, but a busted brain?

ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE — TYPE 3 DIABETES?

Flash back to your moment with those hunters and gatherers. Their brains are not too different from yours. Both have evolved to seek out foods high in fat and sugar. After all, it's a survival mechanism. The problem is that your hunting efforts end quickly because you live in the age of plenty, and you're more likely to find processed fats and sugars. Your caveman counterparts are likely to spend a long time searching, only to come across fat from animals and natural sugar from plants and berries if the season is right. So while your brain might operate similarly, your sources of nutrition are anything but. In fact, take a look at the following graphic that depicts the main differences between our diet and that of our forebears.



And what, exactly, does this difference in dietary habits have to do with how well we age and whether or not we suffer from a neurological disorder or disease?

Everything.

The studies describing Alzheimer's as a third type of diabetes began to emerge in 2005,¹ but the link between poor diet and Alzheimer's has only recently been brought to light with newer studies showing how this can happen.^{2, 3} These studies are both convincingly horrifying and empowering at the same time. To think we can prevent Alzheimer's just by changing the food we eat is, well, astonishing. This has many implications for preventing not just Alzheimer's disease but all other brain disorders, as you'll soon discover in the upcoming chapters. But first, a brief lesson on what diabetes and the brain have in common.

Evolutionarily, our bodies have designed a brilliant way to turn the fuel from food into energy for our cells to use. For almost the entire existence of our species, glucose — the body's major source of energy for most cells — has been scarce. This pushed us to develop ways to store glucose and convert

other things into it. The body can manufacture glucose from fat or protein if necessary through a process called gluconeogenesis. But this requires more energy than the conversion of starches and sugar into glucose, which is a more straightforward reaction.

The process by which our cells accept and utilize glucose is an elaborate one. The cells don't just suck up glucose passing by them in the bloodstream. This vital sugar molecule has to be allowed into the cell by the hormone insulin, which is produced by the pancreas. Insulin, as you may already know, is one of the most important biological substances for cellular metabolism. Its job is to ferry glucose from the bloodstream into muscle, fat, and liver cells. Once there, it can be used as fuel. Normal, healthy cells have a high sensitivity to insulin. But when cells are constantly exposed to high levels of insulin as a result of a persistent intake of glucose (much of which is caused by an overconsumption of hyper-processed foods filled with refined sugars that spike insulin levels beyond a healthy limit), our cells adapt by reducing the number of receptors on their surfaces to respond to insulin. In other words, our cells desensitize themselves to insulin, causing insulin resistance, which allows the cells to ignore the insulin and fail to retrieve glucose from the blood. The pancreas then responds by pumping out more insulin. So higher levels of insulin become needed for sugar to go into the cells. This creates a cyclical problem that eventually culminates in type 2 diabetes. People with diabetes have high blood sugar because their body cannot transport sugar into cells, where it can be safely stored for energy. And this sugar in the blood presents many problems — too many to mention. Like a shard of glass, the toxic sugar inflicts a lot of damage, leading to blindness, infections, nerve damage, heart disease, and, yes, Alzheimer's. Throughout this chain of events, inflammation runs rampant in the body.

I should also point out that insulin can be viewed as an accomplice to the events that unfold when blood sugar cannot be managed well. Unfortunately, insulin doesn't just escort glucose into our cells. It's also an anabolic hormone, meaning it stimulates growth, promotes fat formation and retention, and encourages inflammation. When insulin levels are high, other hormones can be affected adversely, either increased or decreased due to insulin's domineering presence. This, in turn, plunges the body further into unhealthy patterns of chaos that cripple its ability to recover its normal metabolism.⁴

Genetics are certainly involved in whether or not a person becomes diabetic, and genetics can also determine at what point the body's diabetes switch gets turned on, once its cells can no longer tolerate the high blood sugar. For the record, type 1 diabetes is a separate disease thought to be an autoimmune disorder — accounting for only 5 percent of all cases. People

with type 1 diabetes make little or no insulin because their immune system attacks and destroys the cells in the pancreas that produce insulin, so daily injections of this important hormone are needed to keep blood sugars balanced. Unlike type 2, which is usually diagnosed in adults after their bodies have been abused by too much glucose over time, type 1 diabetes is typically diagnosed in children and adolescents. And unlike type 2, which is reversible through diet and lifestyle changes, there is no cure for type 1. That said, it's important to keep in mind that even though genes strongly influence the risk of developing type 1 diabetes, the environment can play a role, too. It has long been known that type 1 results from both genetic and environmental influences, but the rising incidence over the last several decades has led some researchers to conclude that environmental factors could be more instrumental in the development of type 1 than previously thought.

SAD BUT TRUE

More than one hundred eighty-six thousand people younger than age twenty have diabetes (either type 1 or type 2).⁵ Just a decade ago type 2 diabetes was known as "adult-onset diabetes," but with so many young people being diagnosed, the term had to be dropped. And new science shows that the progression of the disease happens more rapidly in children than in adults. It's also more challenging to treat in the younger generation.

What we're beginning to understand is that insulin resistance, as it relates to Alzheimer's disease, sparks the formation of those infamous plaques that are present in diseased brains. These plaques are the buildup of an odd protein that essentially hijacks the brain and takes the place of normal brain cells. And the fact that we can associate high levels of insulin with brain disease is why talk of "type 3 diabetes" is starting to circulate among researchers. It's all the more telling to note that obese people are at a much greater risk of impaired brain function, and that those with diabetes are at least twice as likely to develop Alzheimer's disease.

This statement is not meant to imply that diabetes causes Alzheimer's disease, only that they both share the same origin. They both spring from foods that force the body to develop biological pathways leading to dysfunction and, farther down the road, illness. While it's true that someone with diabetes and another person with dementia may look and act differently, they have a lot more in common than we previously thought.

In the last decade, we've witnessed a parallel rise in the number of type 2 diabetes cases and the number of people who are considered obese. Now, however, we're starting to see a pattern among those with dementia, too, as

the rate of Alzheimer's disease increases in sync with type 2 diabetes. I don't think this is an arbitrary observation. It's a reality we all have to face as we shoulder the weight of soaring health care costs and an aging population. New estimates indicate that Alzheimer's will likely affect 100 million people by 2050, a crippling number for our health care system and one that will dwarf our obesity epidemic.⁶ The prevalence of type 2 diabetes, which accounts for 90 to 95 percent of all diabetes cases in the United States, has tripled in the past forty years. No wonder the U.S. government is anxiously looking to researchers to improve the prognosis and avert this catastrophe. And in the next forty years, more than 115 million new cases of Alzheimer's are expected globally, costing us more than one trillion dollars (in today's dollars).^{7, 8} According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 18.8 million Americans were diagnosed with diabetes in 2010 and another 7 million went undetected. Between 1995 and 2010, the number of diagnosed cases of diabetes jumped by 50 percent or more in forty-two states, and by 100 percent or more in eighteen states.⁹

THE SILENT BRAIN ON FIRE

One of the most frequent questions I get at my clinic from families of Alzheimer's patients is *How did this happen? What did my mother (or father, brother, sister) do wrong?* I am careful how I respond at such a heartbreaking time in a family's life. Watching my own father wither away slowly day after day is a constant reminder of the mixed emotions that a family endures. There is frustration fused with helplessness, and anguish mingled with regret. But if I had to tell family members (myself included) the absolute truth given what we know today, I'd say that their loved one may have done one or more of the following:

- lived with chronic high blood sugar levels even in the absence of diabetes
- eaten too many carbohydrates throughout his or her life
- opted for a low-fat diet that minimized cholesterol
- had undiagnosed sensitivity to gluten, the protein found in wheat, rye, and barley

When I tell people that gluten sensitivity represents one of the greatest and most under-recognized health threats to humanity, the response I hear is pretty much the same: "You can't be serious. Not everyone is sensitive to gluten. Of course, if you have celiac disease, but that's a small number of people." And when I remind people that all the latest science points to the bane of gluten in triggering not just dementia but epilepsy, headaches, depression, schizophrenia, ADHD, and even decreased libido, a common thread prevails in the response: "I don't understand what you mean." They say this because

all they know about gluten focuses on intestinal health — not neurological wellness.

We're going to get up close and personal with gluten in the next chapter. Gluten isn't just an issue for those with bona fide celiac disease, an autoimmune disorder that strikes a small minority. As many as 40 percent of us can't properly process gluten, and the remaining 60 percent could be in harm's way. The question we need to be asking ourselves: *What if we're all sensitive to gluten from the perspective of the brain?* Unfortunately, gluten is found not only in wheat products but also in the most unexpected products — from ice cream to hand cream. Increasing numbers of studies are confirming the link between gluten sensitivity and neurological dysfunction. This is true even for people who have no problems digesting gluten and who test negative for gluten sensitivity. I see this every day in my practice. Many of my patients reach me once they have “tried everything” and have been to scores of other doctors in search of help. Whether it's headaches and migraines, Tourette's syndrome, seizures, insomnia, anxiety, ADHD, depression, or just some odd set of neurological symptoms with no definite label, one of the first things I do is prescribe the total elimination of gluten from their diets. And the results continue to astound me.

Researchers have known for some time now that the cornerstone of all degenerative conditions, including brain disorders, is inflammation. But what they didn't have documented until now are the instigators of that inflammation — the first missteps that prompt this deadly reaction. And what they are finding is that gluten, and a high-carbohydrate diet for that matter, are among the most prominent stimulators of inflammatory pathways that reach the brain. What's most disturbing about this discovery, however, is that we often don't know when our brains are being negatively affected. Digestive disorders and food allergies are much easier to spot because symptoms such as gas, bloating, pain, constipation, and diarrhea emerge relatively quickly. But the brain is a more elusive organ. It could be enduring assaults at a molecular level without your feeling it. Unless you're nursing a headache or managing a neurological problem that's clearly evident, it can be hard to know what's going on in the brain until it's too late. When it comes to brain disease, once the diagnosis is in for something like dementia, turning the train around is hard.

The good news is that I'm going to show you how to control your genetic destiny even if you were born with a natural tendency to develop a neurological challenge. This will require that you free yourself from a few myths so many people continue to cling to. The two biggest ones: (1) a low-fat, high-carb diet is good, and (2) cholesterol is bad.

The story doesn't end with the elimination of gluten. Gluten is just one piece of the puzzle. In the upcoming chapters, you'll soon understand why cholesterol is one of the most important players in maintaining brain health and function. Study after study shows that high cholesterol reduces your risk for brain disease and increases longevity. By the same token, high levels of dietary fat (the good kind, no trans fats here) have been proven to be key to health and peak brain function.

Say what? I realize you may doubt these statements because they run so contrary to what you've been taught to believe. One of the most prized and respected studies ever done in America, the famous Framingham Heart Study, has added volumes of data to our understanding of certain risk factors for disease, including, most recently, dementia. It commenced in 1948 with the recruitment of 5,209 men and women between the ages of thirty and sixty-two from the town of Framingham, Massachusetts, none of whom had yet suffered a heart attack or stroke or even developed symptoms of cardiovascular disease.¹⁰ Since then, the study has added multiple generations stemming from the original group, which has allowed scientists to carefully monitor these populations and gather clues to physiological conditions within the context of myriad factors — age, gender, psychosocial issues, physical traits, and genetic patterns. In the mid-2000s, researchers at Boston University set out to examine the relationship between total cholesterol and cognitive performance, and they looked at 789 men and 1,105 women who were part of the original group. All of the individuals were free of dementia and stroke at the beginning of the study and were followed for sixteen to eighteen years. Cognitive tests were performed every four to six years, evaluating things like memory, learning, concept formation, concentration, attention, abstract reasoning, and organizational abilities — all the features that are compromised in patients with Alzheimer's disease.

According to the study's report, published in 2005, "There was a significant positive linear association between total cholesterol and measures of verbal fluency, attention/concentration, abstract reasoning, and a composite score measuring multiple cognitive domains."¹¹ Moreover, "participants with 'desirable' total cholesterol (less than 200) performed less well than participants with borderline high total cholesterol levels (200 to 239) and participants with high total cholesterol levels (greater than 240)." The study concluded that "lower naturally occurring total cholesterol levels are associated with poor performance on cognitive measures, which placed high demand on abstract reasoning, attention/concentration, word fluency, and executive functioning." In other words, the people who had the *highest* cholesterol levels scored higher on cognitive tests than those with lower

levels. Evidently, there is a protective factor when it comes to cholesterol and the brain. We'll be exploring how this is possible in [chapter 3](#).

The research keeps coming from various labs around the world, flipping conventional wisdom on its head. As I write this, researchers with Australian National University in Canberra just published a study in the journal *Neurology* (the medical journal of the American Academy of Neurology) showing that people whose blood sugar is on the high end of the “normal range” have a much greater risk for brain shrinkage.¹² This ties directly into the story of type 3 diabetes. We've known for a long time that brain disorders and dementia are associated with brain shrinkage. But knowing now that such shrinkage can happen as a result of blood sugar spikes in the “normal” range has tremendous implications for anyone who eats blood sugar-boosting foods (i.e., carbohydrates). So often my patients will tell me that they are fine because their blood sugar is normal. But what is normal? The lab test may indicate that an individual is “normal” by established standards, but new science is forcing us to reconsider normal parameters. Your blood sugar may be “normal,” but if you could peek into your pancreas, you might be aghast at how much it's struggling to pump out enough insulin to keep you on an even keel. For this reason, getting a fasting insulin test, which is done first thing in the morning before eating a meal, is critical. An elevated level of insulin in your blood at this time is a red flag — a sign that something isn't metabolically right. You could be on the verge of diabetes, already depriving your brain of its future functionality.

The Australian study involved 249 people age sixty to sixty-four who had blood sugar in the so-called normal range, and who underwent brain scans at the start of the study and again an average of four years later. Those with higher blood sugar levels within the normal range were more likely to show a loss of brain volume in regions involved with memory and cognitive skills. The researchers even managed to factor out other influences, such as age, high blood pressure, smoking, and alcohol use. Still, they found that blood sugar on the high end of normal accounted for 6 to 10 percent of the brain shrinkage. The study suggests that blood sugar levels could have an impact on brain health even for people who do not have diabetes.¹³

Blood sugar and insulin imbalances are epidemic. Within the next decade, one in two Americans will suffer from diabetes — the term now used to describe a range of metabolic imbalances from mild insulin resistance to pre-diabetes to full-blown diabetes. The hardest fact of all to accept is that a breathtaking 90 percent of these people will not be diagnosed. They will carry on and come to learn of their predicament when it's far too late. My mission is to interrupt such an unfortunate destiny. We want to focus not on calling all

the king's horses and all the king's men, but on coaxing Humpty Dumpty down from the wall before disaster strikes. This will require a shift in a few daily habits.

If the thought of going on a low-carb diet is terrifying (you're already biting your nails at the thought of nixing all the delicious foods you've come to love), don't give up yet. I promise to make this as easy as possible. I might take away the bread basket, but I'll replace it with other things you might have avoided under the false idea that they were somehow bad for you, such as butter, meat, cheese, and eggs, as well as an abundance of wonderfully healthful vegetables. The best news of all is that as soon as you shift your body's metabolism from relying on carbs to relying on fat and protein, you'll find a lot of desirable goals easier to achieve, such as losing weight effortlessly and permanently, gaining more energy throughout the day, sleeping better, being more creative and productive, having a sharper memory and faster brain, and enjoying a better sex life. This, of course, is in addition to safeguarding your brain.

INFLAMMATION GETS CEREBRAL

Let's get back to this idea of inflammation, which I've mentioned a few times in this chapter without a full explanation. Everyone has a rough idea what is meant by the term "inflammation" in a very general sense. Whether it's the redness that quickly appears after an insect bite or the chronic soreness of an arthritic joint, most of us understand that when there is some kind of stress in the body, our body's natural response is to create swelling and pain, hallmarks of the inflammatory process. But inflammation isn't always a negative reaction. It can also serve as an indication that the body is trying to defend itself against something it believes to be potentially harmful. Whether to neutralize the insect's toxins or reduce movement in a sprained ankle to allow healing, inflammation is vital to our survival.

Problems arise, however, when inflammation gets out of control. Just as one glass of wine a day is healthy but multiple glasses every day can lead to health risks, the same holds true for inflammation. Inflammation is meant to be a spot treatment. It's not supposed to be turned on for prolonged periods of time, and never forever. But that's what's happening in millions of people. If the body is constantly under assault by exposure to irritants, the inflammation response stays on. And it spreads to every part of the body through the bloodstream; hence, we have the ability to detect this kind of widespread inflammation through blood tests.

When inflammation goes awry, a variety of chemicals are produced that are directly toxic to our cells. This leads to a reduction of cellular function followed by cellular destruction. Unbridled inflammation is rampant in Western cultures, with leading scientific research showing that it is a fundamental cause of the morbidity and mortality associated with coronary artery disease, cancer, diabetes, Alzheimer's disease, and virtually every other chronic disease you can imagine.

It's not much of a stretch to appreciate how unchecked inflammation would underlie a problem like arthritis, for example. After all, the common drugs used to treat the condition, such as ibuprofen and aspirin, are marketed as "anti-inflammatories." With asthma, antihistamines are used to combat the inflammatory reaction that occurs when someone is exposed to an irritant that elicits an allergic response. These days, more and more people are beginning to understand that coronary artery disease, a leading cause of heart attacks, may actually have more to do with inflammation than it does with high cholesterol. This explains why aspirin, in addition to its blood-thinning properties, is useful in reducing risk not only for heart attacks but also for strokes.

But the connection of inflammation to brain diseases, although well described in the scientific literature, seems somehow difficult to embrace — and it's largely unknown by the public. Perhaps one reason people can't seem to envision "brain inflammation" as being involved in everything from Parkinson's disease to multiple sclerosis, epilepsy, autism, Alzheimer's disease, and depression is that unlike the rest of the body, the brain has no pain receptors, so we can't feel inflammation in the brain.

Focusing on reducing inflammation might seem out of place in a discussion of enhancing brain health and function. But while we are all familiar with inflammation as it relates to such disease states as arthritis and asthma, the past decade has produced an extensive body of research clearly pointing the finger of causality at inflammation when considering a variety of neurodegenerative conditions. In fact, studies dating back as far as the 1990s show that people who have taken nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications such as Advil (ibuprofen) and Aleve (naproxen) for two or more years may have more than a 40 percent reduced risk for Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease.[14](#), [15](#) At the same time, other studies have clearly shown dramatic elevation of cytokines, the cellular mediators of inflammation, in the brains of individuals suffering from these and other degenerative brain disorders.[16](#) Today, new imaging technology is finally allowing us to see cells actively involved in producing inflammatory cytokines in the brains of Alzheimer's patients.

So, we now are forced to regard inflammation in a whole new light. Far more than just the cause of your painful knee and sore joints, it underpins the very process of brain degeneration. Ultimately, the key downstream effect of inflammation in the brain that is responsible for the damage is activation of chemical pathways that increase free radical production. At the center of chronic inflammation is the concept of oxidative stress — a biological type of “rusting.” This gradual corrosion happens on all tissues. It’s a normal part of life; it occurs everywhere in nature, including when our bodies turn calories (energy) from food and oxygen from the air into usable energy. But when it begins to run rampant, or when the body can’t keep it under healthy control, it can become deadly. Although the word *oxidation* implies oxygen, it’s not the kind we breathe. The felon here is simply O because it’s not paired with another oxygen molecule (O₂).

Let me take you one step further in describing the oxidation process. Most of us have heard about free radicals by now. These are molecules that have lost an electron. Normally, electrons are found in pairs, but forces such as stress, pollution, chemicals, toxic dietary triggers, ultraviolet sunlight, and ordinary body activities can “free” an electron from a molecule such that it loses its social graces and starts trying to steal electrons from other molecules. This disorder is the oxidation process itself, a chain of events that creates more free radicals and stirs inflammation. Because oxidized tissues and cells don’t function normally, the process can render you vulnerable to a slew of health challenges. This helps explain why people with high levels of oxidation, which is often reflected by high levels of inflammation, have an extensive list of health challenges and symptoms ranging from a low resistance to infection to joint pain, digestive disorders, anxiety, headaches, depression, and allergies.

And, as you probably can guess, reduced oxidation lowers inflammation, which in turn helps limit oxidation. Antioxidants are important for this very reason. These nutrients, such as vitamins A, C, and E, donate electrons to free radicals, and this interrupts the chain reaction and helps prevent damage. Historically, antioxidant-rich foods such as plants, berries, and nuts were part of our diet, but the food industry today processes a lot of nutrients out of our diets that are sorely needed for optimal health and energy metabolism.

Later in this book I’m going to show you how to turn on a particular pathway in your body that not only directly reduces free radicals naturally, but also protects the brain by reducing excess free radicals produced by inflammation. Interventions designed to reduce inflammation using natural substances like turmeric have been described in medical literature dating back

more than two thousand years, but it is only in the past decade that we have begun to understand this intricate and eloquent biochemistry.

Another upshot of this biological pathway is the activation of specific genes that code for the production of enzymes and other chemicals that serve to break down and eliminate various toxins to which we are exposed. One might wonder why human DNA would contain codes for the production of detoxification chemicals, because we tend to assume that our first real exposure to toxins began with the industrial era. But humans (and, in fact, all living things) have been exposed to a variety of toxins for as long as there has been life on the planet. Aside from toxins that naturally exist in our external environment, like lead, arsenic, and aluminum, as well as powerful toxins created as a form of protection by variously consumed plants and animals, our bodies produce toxins internally during the normal processes of metabolism. So these detoxification genes — now needed more than ever — have gratefully served us for a very long time. And we are just beginning to understand how natural substances you can buy at your local grocery store, such as turmeric and the omega-3 docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), can act as powerful detoxification agents by enhancing genetic expression.

It is not just what we eat that can change the expression of our genes and, therefore, help us manage inflammation. You're going to learn about the latest studies demonstrating the ways exercise and sleep come into play, as these are important regulators (read: remote controllers) of our DNA. What's more, you'll learn how to grow new brain cells; I'm going to show you how and why neurogenesis — the birth of new brain cells — is under your control.

THE CRUEL IRONY: STATINS

Diet and exercise can boost our body's natural methods to manage inflammation, but is there also a case for drugs? Far from it. Ironically, cholesterol-lowering statins, which are among the most commonly prescribed drugs (e.g., Lipitor, Crestor, Zocor), are now being touted as a way to reduce overall levels of inflammation. But new research also reveals that statins *may lessen brain function and increase risk for heart disease*. The reason is simple: The brain needs cholesterol to thrive, a point I've already made but will repeat to make sure you don't forget it. Cholesterol is a critical brain nutrient essential for the function of neurons, and it plays a fundamental role as a building block of the cell membrane. It acts as an antioxidant and a precursor to important brain-supporting elements like vitamin D, as well as the steroid-related hormones (e.g., sex hormones such as testosterone and estrogen). Most important, cholesterol is looked upon as an essential fuel for

the neurons. Neurons themselves are unable to generate significant cholesterol; instead, they rely on delivery of cholesterol from the bloodstream via a specific carrier protein. Interestingly, this carrier protein, LDL, has been given the derogatory title of “bad cholesterol.” In reality, LDL is not a cholesterol molecule at all, good or bad. It’s a low-density lipoprotein (hence its acronym), and there is absolutely nothing bad about it. The fundamental role of LDL in the brain, again, is to capture life-giving cholesterol and transport it to the neuron, where it performs critically important functions.

And now we have the evidence in the scientific literature to prove that when cholesterol levels are low, the brain simply doesn’t work well; individuals with low cholesterol are at much greater risk for dementia and other neurological problems. We need to change our attitudes about cholesterol and even LDL; they are our friends, not foes.

But what about cholesterol and coronary artery disease? I’m going to tackle that very conundrum in [chapter 3](#). For now, I want to implant in your brain the idea that cholesterol is good. You’ll soon see that we’ve been barking up the wrong tree — blaming cholesterol, and LDL especially, when coronary artery disease has more to do with *oxidized* LDL. And how does LDL become so damaged that it’s no longer able to deliver cholesterol to the brain? One of the most common ways is through physical modification by glucose. Sugar molecules attach themselves to LDL and change the molecule’s shape, rendering it less useful while increasing free radical production.

If what I just described to you raced past your head, don’t panic. I’m going to take you by the hand through all of these biological events in the upcoming chapters. I’ve broadly touched upon a lot of issues in this chapter as a prelude to the balance of the book, which will take you deeper into the story of *Grain Brain*. The chief questions I want you to think about are: Have we accelerated our brain’s decline by following a low-fat, high-carb diet with fruit on the side? Can we really control the fate of our brains through lifestyle alone despite the DNA we’ve inherited? Is there too much invested interest in Big Pharma to consider the fact we can naturally prevent, treat, and sometimes cure — without drugs — a spectrum of brain-based ailments such as ADHD, depression, anxiety, insomnia, autism, Tourette’s syndrome, headaches, and Alzheimer’s disease? The answer to all three of these questions is a resounding yes. I’ll go even further and suggest we can prevent heart disease and diabetes, too. The current model of “treatment” for these maladies pays too much attention to the symptomatic smoke and ignores the smoldering fire. Such an approach is ineffective and unsustainable. If we’re ever going to push the boundaries of human longevity, live long past 100 years old, and really

have something amazing to report to our prehistoric ancestors, then we're going to have to change our whole MO.

The goal of this chapter was to explain the story of inflammation and introduce you to a new way of thinking — and looking — at your brain (and body). We take it for granted that the sun rises in the east every morning and sets in the west at night. The next day, the sun does the same thing again. But what if I told you that the sun isn't moving at all? It's *us* who are spinning and moving around the sun! I trust you already knew that, but the takeaway from the analogy is that we tend to get mentally wedded to ideas that are no longer valid. After lectures, people frequently approach me to say thanks for thinking outside the box. With all due respect, that's not the point. It does the world no good for me to be seen as someone whose ideas are "outside the box." My mission is to make the box bigger so that these concepts are part of our culture and way of living. Only then will we be able to make serious, meaningful headway with our modern afflictions.

FROM BRAIN HEALTH TO TOTAL HEALTH

The inescapable fact is that we have evolved into a species that requires fat for life and health. The massive amounts of carbs we eat today are fueling a silent firestorm in our bodies and brains. And I'm not just talking about the manufactured, refined stuff that we all know is not going to win prizes for us at the doctor's office (much less on the scale). I love how Dr. William Davis puts it in his seminal work *Wheat Belly*:[17](#)

Whether it's a loaf of organic high-fiber multigrain bread or a Twinkie, what exactly are you eating? We all know that the Twinkie is just a processed indulgence, but conventional advice tells us that the former is a better health choice, a source of fiber and B vitamins, and rich in "complex" carbohydrates.

Ah, but there's always another layer to the story. Let's peer inside the story. Let's peer inside the contents of this grain and try to understand why — regardless of shape, color, fiber content, organic or not — it potentially does odd things to humans.

And that's exactly where we're going next. But unlike Davis's brilliant account of the modern grain and the battle of the bulge, we're going to go one step further to see how it can inflict harm where we never imagined before: the brain.

CHAPTER 2

The Sticky Protein

Gluten's Role in Brain Inflammation (It's Not Just About Your Belly)

Tell me what you eat, I'll tell you who you are.

— ANTHELME BRILLAT-SAVARIN (1755–1826)

MOST EVERYONE HAS EXPERIENCED the throb of a headache and the agony of severe congestion. In many instances, we can point to a probable cause when symptoms descend on us, such as a long day in front of the computer in the case of a tension headache, or a passing cold bug when it hurts to swallow and the nose clogs up. For relief we can usually turn to over-the-counter remedies to manage our symptoms until the body returns to a normal, healthy state. But what do you do when the symptoms don't go away and the culprit is much harder to pin down? What if, like so many patients I treat, you find yourself in an unending war with nagging pain and misery for years?

For as long as she could remember, Fran struggled to chase the pulsating sensation out of her head. When I first examined her on a warm January day, Fran was as pleasant as could be for a sixty-three-year-old who endured daily migraine headaches. Of course she had tried all the usual headache medications and was taking Imitrex (sumatriptan), a powerful migraine drug, several times a week. In reviewing her medical history, I noted that in her early twenties she'd undergone "intestinal exploratory surgery" because she was suffering from "severe intestinal discomfort." As part of her evaluation, I tested her for gluten sensitivity and, not to my surprise, found that she was strongly positive in eight of the markers. I prescribed a gluten-free diet.

Four months later, I received a letter from Fran stating: "My almost daily migraine symptoms have abated since removing gluten from my diet. ... The two biggest changes in my body are the lack of a very hot head in the night with resulting migraines, and the huge increase in my energy levels. Today

my level of daily accomplishment is enormous compared to my life before seeing you.” She went on to conclude: “Thank you, once again, for finding what seems to be the solution to my many years of migraine misery.” I wish she could have gotten the years back, but at least now I could give her a pain-free future.

Another woman who came to me with a totally different set of symptoms but a similarly long history of suffering was Lauren. At just thirty years old, she told me squarely on our first meeting that she was “having some mental problems.” Lauren detailed the previous twelve years, which she described as a consistent downhill ride in terms of health. She told me how her early life was quite stressful once she lost both her mother and grandmother at a young age. When she started college she was hospitalized on several occasions for “mania.” During this time she would experience episodes of becoming highly talkative and overly grandiose about herself. She would then eat excessively, gain a lot of weight, and become severely depressed and suicidal. She had just started taking lithium, a medication used to treat bipolar disorder. Mental illness ran in her family; her sister had schizophrenia and her father was bipolar. Aside from Lauren’s dramatic account of her mental issues, the rest of her medical history was fairly unremarkable. She had no laments of bowel issues, food allergies, or any other of the standard types of complaints associated with gluten sensitivity.

I went ahead and ordered a test for gluten sensitivity. We found profoundly elevated levels of six important markers for the condition. In fact, several of these markers were more than twice the normal range. Two months after starting a gluten-free diet, Lauren wrote a letter to me that echoed what I’d been hearing from so many patients who’d gone gluten-free and experienced striking results. She stated:

Since being off gluten, my life has taken a complete 180. The first change that comes to mind, and the most important one, is my mood. When I was eating gluten, I would struggle with feeling depressed. I would always have to fight a “dark cloud over my head.” Now that I’m off gluten, I don’t feel depressed. The one time I ate some by mistake, I felt depressed again the next day. Other changes I’ve noticed include having more energy and being able to stay focused for longer periods. My thoughts are as sharp as ever. I can make a decision and come to a logical, confident conclusion like never before. I am also free of a lot of obsessive-compulsive behavior.

Let me give you one more example of a case that’s emblematic of another set of symptoms linked to the same culprit. Kurt and his mother came to see me when he was a twenty-three-year-old young man suffering from abnormal movements. His mother stated that six months prior to their visit, he began “looking like he was shivering.” Initially his tremors were subtle, but then they increased with time. He had been to two neurologists and received two

different diagnoses: one for what's called "essential tremor," and another for "dystonia." The doctors had offered him a blood pressure medication, propranolol, which is used to treat some types of tremor disorders. The other recommendation was to have the various muscles in his arms and neck injected with Botox, the botulinum toxin that would temporarily paralyze the spastic muscles. Both he and his mother had elected not to use either the pills or the injections.

What was interesting about his history were two things. First, he was diagnosed as having a learning disability in the fourth grade; his mother said that "he could not handle excessive stimulation." And second, for several years he had complaints of stomach pain with loose bowel movements to the extent that he had to see a gastroenterologist, who took a biopsy of his small intestine to test for celiac disease. It proved negative.

When I examined Kurt, his excessive movement problem was very evident. He could not control the shaking of his arms and neck and appeared to be suffering mightily. I reviewed his laboratory studies, which, for the most part, were unrevealing. He had been checked for Huntington's disease, an inherited disorder known to cause a similar movement abnormality in young people, as well as Wilson's disease, a disorder of copper metabolism also associated with a movement abnormality. All of these tests were negative. Blood work for gluten sensitivity did, however, show some elevated levels of certain antibodies indicative of vulnerability. I explained to Kurt and his mother that it was important to make sure gluten sensitivity wasn't the cause of his movement disorder, and I provided them information on how to pursue a gluten-free diet.

After several weeks I received a phone call from Kurt's mother indicating that without question his movements had calmed down. Because of his improvement he elected to stay on a gluten-free diet, and after approximately six months, the abnormal movements had all but disappeared completely. The changes that occurred in this young man are breathtaking, especially when you consider that a simple dietary change had such a life-transforming impact.

We are just beginning to see medical literature documenting a connection between movement disorders and gluten sensitivity, and physicians like me have now identified and treated a handful of individuals whose movement disorders have completely abated with a gluten-free program and for whom no other cause was identified. But unfortunately, most mainstream doctors are not on the lookout for the dietary explanation for such movement disorders and they are not aware of the latest reports.

These cases are not outliers. They reflect patterns that I've witnessed in so many patients. They all might come to me with vastly different medical complaints, but they share a common thread: gluten sensitivity. It's my belief that gluten is a modern poison, and that the research is compelling doctors like me to notice and re-examine the bigger picture when it comes to brain disorders and disease. The good news is that knowing this common denominator now means we can treat and, in some cases, cure a wide spectrum of ailments with a single prescription: the eviction of gluten from the diet.

Walk into any health food store, and now even a regular grocery store, and you're sure to be amazed at the selection of "gluten-free" products. In the past couple of years, the volume of gluten-free products sold has exploded; at last count, the industry clocked in at \$6.3 billion in 2011 and continues to grow.^{[1](#)} Spin-offs of everything from breakfast cereals to salad dressing are now positioned to take advantage of the ever-increasing number of individuals who are choosing foods without gluten. Why all the hype?

No doubt media attention may be playing a role. A 2011 *Yahoo! Sports* article asking "Is Novak Djokovic's new, gluten-free diet behind his winning streak?" goes on to say, "A simple allergy test could have led to one of the most dominant stretches in tennis history."^{[2](#)}

But beyond this one athlete's epiphany, what does the scientific community have to say about gluten sensitivity? What does it mean to be "gluten sensitive"? How does it differ from celiac disease? What's so bad about gluten? Hasn't it always been around? And just what exactly do I mean by "modern grains"? Let's take a tour.

THE GLUE OF GLUTEN

Gluten — which is Latin for "glue" — is a protein composite that acts as an adhesive material, holding flour together to make bread products, including crackers, baked goods, and pizza dough. When you bite into a fluffy muffin or roll and stretch pizza dough prior to cooking, you have gluten to thank. In fact, most of the soft, chewy bread products available today owe their gumminess to gluten. Gluten plays a key role in the leavening process, letting bread "rise" when wheat mixes with yeast. To hold a ball of what is essentially gluten in your hands, just mix water and wheat flour, create a dough by kneading the ball with your hands, and then rinse the glob under running water to eliminate the starches and fiber. What you're left with is a glutinous protein mixture.

Most Americans consume gluten through wheat, but gluten is found in a variety of grains including rye, barley, spelt, kamut, and bulgur. It's one of the most common food additives on the planet and is used not only in processed foods, but also in personal care products. As a trusty stabilizing agent, it helps cheese spreads and margarines retain their smooth texture, and it prevents sauces and gravies from curdling. Thickening hair conditioners and volumizing mascaras have gluten to thank, too. People can be as allergic to it as they can be to any protein. But let's get a better look at the scope of the problem.

Gluten is not a single molecule; it's actually made up of two main groups of proteins, the *glutenins* and the *gliadins*. A person may be sensitive to either of these proteins or to one of the twelve different smaller units that make up gliadin. Any of these could cause a sensitivity reaction leading to inflammation.

When I speak with patients about gluten sensitivity, one of the first things they say is something like, "Well, I don't have celiac disease. I've been tested!" I do my best to explain that there's a huge difference between celiac disease and gluten sensitivity. My aim is to convey the idea that celiac disease, also known as sprue, is an extreme manifestation of gluten sensitivity. Celiac disease is what happens when an allergic reaction to gluten causes damage specifically to the small intestine. It's one of the most severe reactions one can have to gluten. Although many experts estimate that 1 in every 200 people has celiac disease, this is a conservative calculation; the number is probably closer to 1 in 30, since so many individuals remain undiagnosed. As many as one in four people are vulnerable to the disease due to genetics alone; people of northern European ancestry are particularly susceptible. What's more, people can carry genes that code for mild versions of gluten intolerance, giving rise to a wide spectrum of gluten sensitivity. Celiac disease doesn't just harm the gut. Once the genes for this disease are triggered, sensitivity to gluten is a lifelong condition that can affect the skin and mucous membranes, as well as cause blisters in the mouth.[3](#)

Extreme reactions that trigger an autoimmune condition such as celiac aside, the key to understanding gluten sensitivity is that it can involve *any* organ in the body, even if the small intestine is completely spared. So while a person may not have celiac disease by definition, the rest of the body — including the brain — is at great risk if that individual is gluten sensitive.

It helps to understand that food sensitivities in general are usually a response from the immune system. They can also occur if the body lacks the right enzymes to digest ingredients in foods. In the case of gluten, its "sticky" attribute interferes with the breakdown and absorption of nutrients. As you

can imagine, poorly digested food leads to a pasty residue in your gut, which alerts the immune system to leap into action, eventually resulting in an assault on the lining of the small intestine. Those who experience symptoms complain of abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea, constipation, and intestinal distress. Some people, however, don't experience obvious signs of gastrointestinal trouble, but they could nevertheless be experiencing a silent attack elsewhere in their body, such as in their nervous system. Remember that when a body negatively reacts to food, it attempts to control the damage by sending out inflammatory messenger molecules to label the food particles as enemies. This leads the immune system to keep sending out inflammatory chemicals, killer cells among them, in a bid to wipe out the enemies. The process often damages our tissue, leaving the walls of our intestine compromised, a condition known as "leaky gut." Once you have a leaky gut, you're highly susceptible to additional food sensitivities in the future. And the onslaught of inflammation can also put you at risk for developing autoimmune disease.[4](#)

Inflammation, which you know by now is the cornerstone of many brain disorders, can be initiated when the immune system reacts to a substance in a person's body. When antibodies of the immune system come into contact with a protein or antigen to which a person is allergic, the inflammatory cascade is provoked, releasing a whole host of damaging chemicals known as cytokines. Gluten sensitivity in particular is caused by elevated levels of antibodies against the gliadin component of gluten. When the antibody combines with this protein (creating an anti-gliadin antibody), specific genes are turned on in a special type of immune cell in the body. Once these genes are activated, inflammatory cytokine chemicals collect and can attack the brain. Cytokines are highly antagonistic to the brain, damaging tissue and leaving the brain vulnerable to dysfunction and disease — especially if the assault continues. Another problem with anti-gliadin antibodies is that they can directly combine with specific proteins found in the brain that look like the gliadin protein found in gluten-containing foods, but the anti-gliadin antibodies just can't tell the difference. This has been described for decades and again leads to the formation of more inflammatory cytokines.[5](#)

Given this, it's no wonder that elevated cytokines are seen in Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, and even autism.[6](#) (Research has even shown that some people who are wrongly diagnosed with ALS, or Lou Gehrig's disease, simply have a sensitivity to gluten, and eliminating it from the diet resolves the symptoms.[7](#)) As England's Professor Marios Hadjivassiliou, one of the most well-respected researchers in the area of gluten sensitivity and the brain at the Royal Hallamshire Hospital in Sheffield,

reported in a 1996 article in the *Lancet*, “Our data suggest that gluten sensitivity is common in patients with neurological disease of unknown cause and may have etiological significance.”⁸

For someone like me who deals with challenging brain disorders of “unknown cause” on a daily basis, Dr. Hadjivassiliou’s statement is sobering when you consider that an estimated 99 percent of people whose immune systems react negatively to gluten don’t even know it. Dr. Hadjivassiliou goes on to state that “gluten sensitivity can be primarily, and at times, exclusively, a neurological disease.” In other words, *people with gluten sensitivity can have issues with brain function without having any gastrointestinal problems whatsoever*. For this reason, he tests all of his patients who have unexplained neurological disorders for gluten sensitivity. I love how Dr. Hadjivassiliou and his colleagues stated the facts in a 2002 editorial in the *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry* titled “Gluten Sensitivity as a Neurological Illness”:

It has taken nearly 2,000 years to appreciate that a common dietary protein introduced to the human diet relatively late in evolutionary terms (some 10,000 years ago), can produce human disease not only of the gut but also the skin and the nervous system. The protean neurological manifestations of gluten sensitivity can occur without gut involvement and neurologists must therefore become familiar with the common neurological presentations and means of diagnosis of this disease.⁹

In addition, the editorial summed up the findings brilliantly in the conclusion, which reiterated statements made in earlier papers: “Gluten sensitivity is best defined as a state of heightened immunological responsiveness in genetically susceptible people. This definition does not imply bowel involvement. That gluten sensitivity is regarded as principally a disease of the small bowel is a historical misconception.”

CELIAC THROUGH THE CENTURIES

Although the relationship between gluten sensitivity and neurological disease has received precious little attention in the medical literature, we can trace a prominent thread of accumulating knowledge back thousands of years to a time when gluten wasn’t even part of our vocabulary. The evidence, it turns out, was already mounting. We just weren’t able to document it until the current century. The fact that we can finally identify a link between celiac disease, which again is the strongest reaction to gluten, and neurological problems has implications for all of us, including those who don’t have celiac. The study of celiac patients has enabled us to zoom in on the real dangers of gluten that have largely remained hidden and silent for so long.

Celiac may seem like a “new disease,” but the first descriptions of the disorder date back to the first century AD, when Aretaeus of Cappadocia, one of the most distinguished ancient Greek doctors, wrote about it in a medical textbook covering various conditions, including neurological abnormalities such as epilepsy, headache, vertigo, and paralysis. Aretaeus was also the first to use the word *celiac*, which is Greek for “abdominal.” In describing this malady, he said: “The stomach being the digestive organ, labours in digestion, when diarrhea seizes the patient ... and if in addition, the patient’s general system be debilitated by atrophy of the body, the coeliac disease of a chronic nature is formed.”¹⁰

In the seventeenth century, the term *sprue* was introduced into the English language from the Dutch word *sprouw*, which means chronic diarrhea — one of the classic symptoms of celiac disease. The English pediatrician Dr. Samuel J. Gee was among the first to recognize the importance of diet in managing patients with celiac; he gave the first modern-day description of the condition in children in a lecture at a London hospital in 1887, noting, “If the patient can be cured at all, it must be by means of diet.”

At the time, however, no one could pinpoint which ingredient was the culprit, so recommendations in dietary changes in search of a cure were far from accurate. Dr. Gee, for example, banned fruits and vegetables, which wouldn’t have posed a problem, but allowed thin slices of toasted bread. He was particularly moved by the curing of a child “who was fed upon a quart of the best Dutch mussels daily,” but who relapsed when the season of mussels was over (perhaps the child went back to eating toast). In the United States, the first discussion of the disorder was published in 1908 when Dr. Christian Herter wrote a book about children with celiac disease, which he called “intestinal infantilism.” As others had noted previously, he wrote that these children failed to thrive and added that they tolerated fat better than carbohydrate. Then, in 1924, Dr. Sidney V. Haas, an American pediatrician, reported positive effects of a diet of bananas. (Obviously, bananas weren’t the cause of the improvement, but rather, the banana diet happened to exclude gluten.)

While it’s hard to imagine such a diet enduring the test of time, it remained popular until the actual cause of celiac could be determined and confirmed. And this would take another couple of decades, until the 1940s when the Dutch pediatrician Dr. Willem Karel Dicke made the connection to wheat flour. By then, carbohydrates in general had long been suspected, but not until a cause-and-effect observation could be made with wheat in particular did we see the direct connection. And how was this discovery actually made? During the Dutch famine of 1944, bread and flour were scarce, and Dr. Dicke noticed

that there was a dramatic decrease in the death rate among children affected by celiac — from greater than 35 percent to virtually zero. Dr. Dicke also reported that once wheat was again available, the mortality rate rose to previous levels. Finally, in 1952, a team of doctors from Birmingham, England, including Dr. Dicke, made the link between the ingestion of wheat proteins and celiac disease when they examined samples of intestinal mucosa taken from surgical patients. The introduction of the small bowel biopsy in the 1950s and '60s confirmed the gut as a target organ. (To be fair, I should note that historical experts have debated whether or not Dicke's earlier anecdotal observations in the Netherlands were completely correct, arguing that it would have been difficult if not impossible for him to record such a relapse when flour became available again. But these debaters are not dismissing the importance of identifying wheat as a culprit — they merely aim to highlight the fact that wheat isn't the *only* culprit.)

So when did we begin to see a connection between celiac and neurological issues? Again, the trail goes back much further than most people realize. More than a century ago the first anecdotal reports began to emerge, and throughout the twentieth century various doctors documented neurological conditions in patients with celiac. Early on, though, when neurological problems were found to correlate to celiac disease, by and large they were thought to represent a manifestation of nutritional deficiencies because of the gut issue. In other words, doctors didn't think a certain ingredient was necessarily wreaking havoc on the nervous system; they just thought the celiac condition itself, which prevented the absorption of nutrients and vitamins in the gut, led to deficiencies that triggered neurological problems like nerve damage and even cognitive impairments. And they were far from being able to grasp the role of inflammation in the story, which had yet to enter our medical library of knowledge. In 1937, the *Archives of Internal Medicine* published the Mayo Clinic's first review of neurological involvement in patients with celiac, but even then the research could not accurately describe the real cascade of events. They attributed the brain involvement to "electrolyte depletion" due principally to the gut's failure to digest and absorb nutrients properly.[11](#)

To reach the point where we could understand and fully explain the link between sensitivity to gluten and the brain, we needed a great deal of advancements in our technology, not to mention our understanding of the role of inflammatory pathways. But the turnaround in our perspective has indeed been sensational, and relatively recent. In 2006, the Mayo Clinic again came out with a report, published in the *Archives of Neurology*, about celiac disease and cognitive impairment, but this time the conclusion was a game-changer:[12](#)

“A possible association exists between progressive cognitive impairment and celiac disease, given the temporal relationship and the relatively high frequency of ataxia and peripheral neuropathy, more commonly associated with celiac disease.” Ataxia is the inability to control voluntary muscle movement and maintain balance, most frequently resulting from disorders in the brain; peripheral neuropathy is a fancy way of saying nerve damage. It encompasses a wide range of disorders in which the damaged nerves outside of the brain and spinal cord — peripheral nerves — cause numbness, weakness, or pain.

In this particular study, the researchers looked at thirteen patients who showed signs of progressive cognitive decline within two years of the onset of celiac disease symptoms or a worsening of the disorder. (The most common reasons why these patients sought medical help for their brain impairments were amnesia, confusion, and personality changes. Doctors confirmed all cases of celiac disease by small-bowel biopsy; anyone whose cognitive decline could potentially be pinned on an alternate cause were excluded.) One thing became clear during the analysis that instantly invalidated previous thinking: The cognitive decline could not be attributed to nutritional deficiencies. What’s more, doctors noted that the patients were relatively young to have dementia (the median age when signs of cognitive impairment began was sixty-four years with a range from forty-five to seventy-nine years). As reported in the media, according to Dr. Joseph Murray, a Mayo Clinic gastroenterologist and the study investigator, “There has been a fair amount written before about celiac disease and neurological issues like peripheral neuropathy ... or balance problems, but this degree of brain problem — the cognitive decline we’ve found here — has not been recognized before. I was not expecting there would be so many celiac disease patients with cognitive decline.”

Murray rightfully went on to add that it’s unlikely these patients’ conditions reflected a “chance connection.” Given the association between the celiac symptoms starting or worsening and the cognitive decline within just two years, the likelihood of this being a random event was very small. Perhaps the most stunning finding of all in this study was that several of the patients who were put on a gluten-free diet experienced “significant improvement” in their cognitive decline. When they completely withdrew from gluten consumption, three patients’ mental faculties either improved or stabilized, leading the researchers to highlight that they may have discovered a reversible form of cognitive impairment. This is a huge finding. Why? We really don’t have many forms of dementia that are readily treatable, so if we can stop and in some cases *reverse* the path to dementia, identifying celiac disease in the

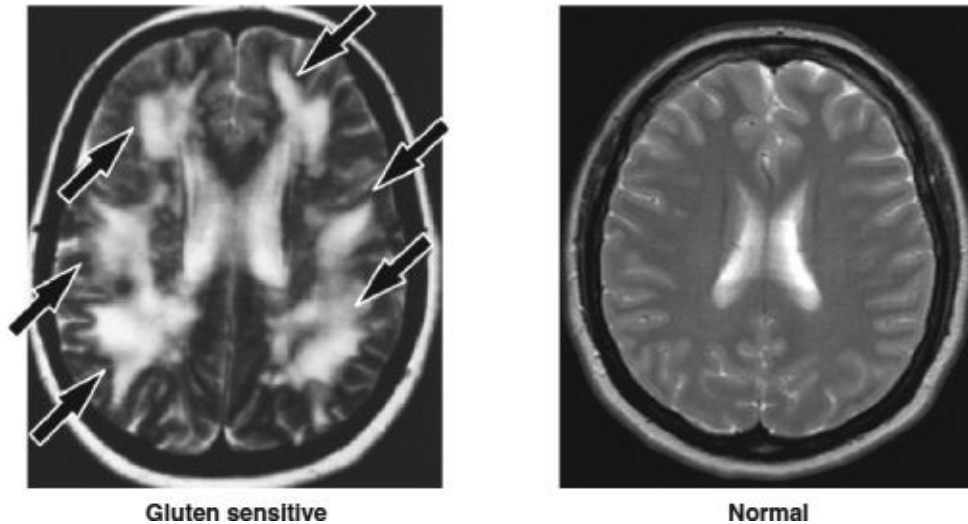
presence of cognitive decline should become customary. What's more, such a finding further argues against chance as an explanation of the link between celiac disease and cognitive decline. When asked about the scientific reasoning behind the link, Dr. Murray mentioned the potential impact of inflammatory cytokines — those chemical messengers of inflammation that contribute to problems in the brain.

One more item I'd like to point out from this study: When the researchers performed brain scans on these patients, they found noticeable changes in the white matter that could easily be confused with multiple sclerosis or even small strokes. This is the reason I always check for gluten sensitivity in patients referred to me with a diagnosis of multiple sclerosis; on many occasions I've found patients whose brain changes were in fact not related to multiple sclerosis at all and were likely due to gluten sensitivity. And lucky for them, a gluten-free diet reversed their condition.

THE BIGGER PICTURE

Recall the young man I discussed at the beginning of the chapter who was originally diagnosed with a movement disorder called dystonia. He couldn't control his muscle tone, resulting in wild and intense spasms throughout his body that prevented him from leading a normal life. Although neurological disease or side effects to drugs are often to blame in cases like this, my belief is that a lot of dystonia and other movement disorders can be attributed simply to gluten sensitivity. In my patient's situation, once we removed gluten from his diet, his tremors and convulsive twitches came to a screeching halt. Other movement disorders, such as ataxia, which I described earlier, myoclonus, another affliction characterized by spasmodic jerky contractions of muscles, and certain forms of epilepsy are often misdiagnosed — they are attributed to an unexplained neurological problem rather than to something as simple as gluten sensitivity. I've had several epileptic patients who've gone from considering risky surgery and relying on daily medication regimes to manage their seizures to becoming completely seizure-free through simple dietary shifts.

Dr. Hadjivassiliou has similarly examined brain scans from headache patients and documented dramatic abnormalities caused by gluten sensitivity. Even a lay reader without a trained eye can easily see the impact. Take a look at one example:



Brain MRI images showing severe changes in the white matter (arrows) related to gluten sensitivity and headaches (left) compared to a normal study (right).

For more than a decade Dr. Hadjivassiliou has repeatedly shown that a gluten-free diet can result in complete resolution of headaches in patients with gluten sensitivity. In a 2010 review for the *Lancet Neurology*, he makes a clarion call for change in how we view gluten sensitivity.¹³ For him and his colleagues, nothing could be more critical than getting the word out about the connection between seemingly invisible gluten sensitivity and brain dysfunction. And I agree. Dr. Hadjivassiliou's chronicle of patients with evident signs of cognitive deficits and documented gluten sensitivity, as well as their recovery, is impossible to deny.

As we've discussed, one of the most important takeaways from all the new information we've gained about celiac disease is that it's not confined to the gut. I would go so far as to say that gluten sensitivity *always* affects the brain. Neurobiologist Dr. Aristo Vojdani, a colleague who has published extensively on the topic of gluten sensitivity, has stated that the incidence of gluten sensitivity in Western populations may be as high as 30 percent.¹⁴ And because most cases of celiac are clinically silent, the prevalence of the disease itself is now recognized to be twenty times higher than it was thought to be two decades ago. Let me share what Dr. Rodney Ford of the Children's Gastroenterology and Allergy Clinic in New Zealand proposed in his 2009 article aptly titled "The Gluten Syndrome: A Neurological Disease":¹⁵ The fundamental problem with gluten is its "interference with the body's neural networks ... gluten is linked to neurological harm in patients, both with and without evidence of celiac disease." He added, "Evidence points to the nervous system as the prime site of gluten damage," and he boldly concluded that "the implication of gluten causing neurologic network damage is

immense. With estimates that at least one in ten people are affected by gluten, the health impact is enormous. Understanding the gluten syndrome is important for the health of the global community.”

Although you may not be sensitive to gluten in the same way an individual with celiac is, I’ve inundated you with data for good reason: It goes to show that we may all be sensitive to gluten from a neurological standpoint. We just don’t know it yet because there are no outward signs or clues to a problem happening deep within the quiet confines of our nervous system and brain. Remember, at the heart of virtually every disorder and disease is inflammation. When we introduce anything to the body that triggers an inflammatory response, we set ourselves up for taking on much greater risk for a medley of health challenges, from chronic daily nuisances like headaches and brain fog to serious ailments such as depression and Alzheimer’s. We can even make a case for linking gluten sensitivity with some of the most mysterious brain disorders that have eluded doctors for millennia, such as schizophrenia, epilepsy, depression, bipolar disorder, and, more recently, autism and ADHD.

I’ll be covering these connections later in the book. For now, I want you to get a scope of the problem, with a firm understanding that gluten can exert effects not only on the normal brain but also on the vulnerable abnormal brain. It’s also important to keep in mind that each one of us is unique in terms of our genotype (DNA) and phenotype (how genes express themselves in their environment). Unchecked inflammation in me could result in obesity and heart disease, whereas the same condition in you could translate to an autoimmune disorder.

Once again, it helps to turn to the literature on celiac disease, since celiac reflects an extreme case; it allows us to identify patterns in the course of the disorder that can have implications for anyone who consumes gluten, regardless of celiac. Multiple studies, for example, have shown that people with celiac have significantly increased production of free radicals, and they exhibit free radical damage to their fat, protein, and even DNA.¹⁶ In addition, they also lose their ability to produce antioxidant substances in the body as a result of the immune system’s response to gluten. In particular, they have reduced levels of glutathione, an important antioxidant in the brain, as well as vitamin E, retinol, and vitamin C in their blood — all of which are key players in keeping the body’s free radicals in check. It’s as if the presence of gluten disables the immune system to such a degree that it cannot fully support the body’s natural defenses. My question is, if gluten sensitivity can compromise the immune system, what else does it open the door to?

Research has also shown that the immune system's reaction to gluten leads to activation of signaling molecules that basically turn on inflammation and induce what's called the COX-2 enzyme, which leads to increased production of inflammatory chemicals.¹⁷ If you're familiar with drugs like Celebrex, ibuprofen, or even aspirin, you're already familiar with the COX-2 enzyme, which is responsible for inflammation and pain in the body. These drugs effectively block that enzyme's actions, thus reducing inflammation. High levels of another inflammatory molecule called TNF alpha have also been seen in celiac patients. Elevations of this cytokine are among the hallmarks of Alzheimer's disease and virtually every other neurodegenerative condition. Bottom line: *Gluten sensitivity — with or without the presence of celiac — increases the production of inflammatory cytokines, and these inflammatory cytokines are pivotal players in neurodegenerative conditions.* Moreover, no organ is more susceptible to the deleterious effects of inflammation than the brain. It's one of the most active organs in the body, yet it lacks bulletproof protective factors. Although the blood-brain barrier acts as a gatekeeper of sorts to keep certain molecules from crossing over from the bloodstream into our brain, it's not a foolproof system. Plenty of substances sneak past this portal and provoke undesirable effects. (Later in the book I'll go into richer detail about these inflammatory molecules and the ways in which we can use the power of food to combat them.)

It's time we created new standards for what it means to be "gluten sensitive." The problem with gluten is far more serious than anyone ever imagined, and its impact on society is far greater than we've ever estimated.

A GLUT OF GLUTEN IN MODERN FOOD

If gluten is so bad, how have we managed to survive so long while eating it? The quick answer is that we haven't been eating the same kind of gluten since our ancestors first figured out how to farm and mill wheat. The grains we eat today bear little resemblance to the grains that entered our diet about ten thousand years ago. Ever since the seventeenth century, when Gregor Mendel described his famous studies of crossing different plants to arrive at new varieties, we've gotten good at mixing and matching strains to create some wild progeny in the grain department. And while our genetic makeup and physiology haven't changed much since the time of our ancestors, our food chain has had a rapid makeover during the past fifty years. Modern food manufacturing, including bioengineering and specifically hybridization, have allowed us to grow structurally-modified grains that contain gluten that's less tolerable than the gluten that's found in grains cultivated just a few decades

ago.¹⁸ Whether this has been intentional to increase yield, appeal to people's palates, or both is anyone's guess. But one thing we do know: Modern gluten-containing grains are more problematic than ever.

If you've ever felt a rush of euphoric pleasure following the consumption of a bagel, scone, doughnut, or croissant, you're not imagining it and you're not alone. We've known since the late 1970s that gluten breaks down in the stomach to become a mix of polypeptides that can cross the blood-brain barrier. Once they gain entry, they can then bind to the brain's morphine receptor to produce a sensorial high. This is the same receptor to which opiate drugs bind, creating their pleasurable, albeit addicting, effect. The original scientists who discovered this activity, Dr. Christine Zioudrou and her colleagues at the National Institutes of Health, named these brain-busting polypeptides exorphins, which is short for exogenous morphine-like compounds, distinguishing them from endorphins, the body's naturally produced painkillers.¹⁹ What's most interesting about these exorphins, and further confirms their impact on the brain, is that we know they can be stopped by opiate-blocking drugs like naloxone and naltrexone — the same drugs used to reverse the action of opiate drugs such as heroine, morphine, and oxycodone. Dr. William Davis describes this phenomenon well in his book *Wheat Belly*: "So this is your brain on wheat: Digestion yields morphine-like compounds that bind to the brain's opiate receptors. It induces a form of reward, a mild euphoria. When the effect is blocked or no exorphin-yielding foods are consumed, some people experience a distinctly unpleasant withdrawal."²⁰

Given what I just explained, is it any wonder that food manufacturers try to pack as much gluten into their products as possible? And is it any surprise to find so many people addicted to gluten-filled foods today — fanning the flames of not just inflammation but the obesity epidemic? I think not. Most of us have known and accepted the fact that sugar and alcohol can have feel-good properties that entice us to come back for more. But gluten-containing foods? Your whole-wheat bread and instant oatmeal? The idea that gluten can change our biochemistry down to our brain's pleasure and addiction center is remarkable. And scary. It means we need to re-think how we categorize these foods if they are indeed the mind-altering agents that science proves they are.

When I watch people devour gluten-laden carbohydrates, it's like watching them pour themselves a cocktail of gasoline. Gluten is our generation's tobacco. Gluten sensitivity is far more prevalent than we realize — potentially harming all of us to some degree without our knowing it — and gluten is hiding where you least suspect it. It's in our seasonings, condiments, and cocktails, and even in cosmetics, hand cream, and ice cream. It's disguised in

soups, sweeteners, and soy products. It's tucked into our nutritional supplements and brand-name pharmaceuticals. The term "gluten-free" is becoming just as vague and diluted as "organic" and "all natural" have become. For me, it's no longer a mystery why going gluten-free can have such a positive impact on the body.

For the greater part of the past 2.6 million years, our ancestors' diets consisted of wild game, seasonal plants and vegetables, and the occasional berries. As we saw in the previous chapter, today most people's diets are centered on grains and carbs — many of which contain gluten. But even casting the gluten factor aside, I should point out that one of the main reasons why consuming so many grains and carbs can be so harmful is that they raise blood sugar in ways other foods, such as meat, fish, poultry, and vegetables, do not.

High blood sugar, you'll recall, produces high insulin, which is released by the pancreas to move sugar into the body's cells. The higher the blood sugar, the more insulin must be pumped from the pancreas to deal with the sugar. And as the insulin increases, cells become less and less sensitive to the insulin signal. Basically, cells cannot hear insulin's message. What the pancreas does, as anyone would do if a person couldn't hear your message, is speak louder — that is, it increases its insulin output, creating a life-threatening feed-forward process. Higher levels of insulin cause the cells to become even less responsive to the insulin signal, and in order to deal with lowering the blood sugar, the pancreas works overtime, increasing its insulin output further, again to maintain a normal blood sugar. Even though the blood sugar is normal, the insulin level is climbing.

Since cells are resistant to the insulin signal, we use the term "insulin resistance" to characterize this condition. As the situation progresses, the pancreas finally maximizes its output of insulin, but it's still not enough. At that point, cells lose their ability to respond to the insulin signal, and ultimately, blood sugar begins to rise, resulting in type 2 diabetes. The system has essentially broken down and now requires an outside source (i.e., diabetes drugs) to keep the body's blood sugars balanced. Remember, though, that you don't have to be diabetic to suffer from chronic high blood sugar.

When I give lectures to members of the medical community, one of my favorite slides is a photo of four common foods: (1) a slice of whole-wheat bread, (2) a Snickers bar, (3) a tablespoon of pure white sugar, and (4) a banana. I then ask the audience to guess which one produces the greatest surge in blood sugar — or which has the highest glycemic index (GI), a numerical rating that reflects a measure of how quickly blood sugar levels rise after eating a particular type of food. The glycemic index encompasses a scale

of 0 to 100, with higher values given to foods that cause the most rapid rise in blood sugar. The reference point is pure glucose, which has a GI of 100.

Nine times out of ten, people pick the wrong food. No, it's not the sugar (GI = 68), it's not the candy bar (GI = 55), and it's not the banana (GI = 54). It's the whole-wheat bread at a whopping GI of 71, putting it on par with white bread (so much for thinking whole wheat is better than white). We've known for more than thirty years that wheat increases blood sugar more than table sugar, but we still somehow think that's not possible. It seems counterintuitive. But it's a fact that few foods produce as much of a surge in blood glucose as those made with wheat.

It's important to note that the rise in gluten sensitivity is not only the outcome of hyper-exposure to gluten in today's engineered foods. It's also the result of too much sugar and too many pro-inflammatory foods. We can also make a case for the impact of environmental toxins, which can change how our genes express themselves and whether or not autoimmune signals start to fire. Each of these ingredients — gluten, sugar, pro-inflammatory foods, and environmental toxins — combines to create a perfect storm in the body, and especially the brain.

If any food that foment a biological storm — despite the presence of gluten — is hazardous to our health, then we must raise another critically important question in terms of brain health: *Are carbs — even “good carbs” — killing us?* After all, carbs are often the main source of these antagonizing ingredients. Any conversation about blood sugar balance, gluten sensitivity, and inflammation has to revolve around the impact carbohydrates can have on the body and brain. In the next chapter, we'll look at how carbs in general raise risk factors for neurological disorders, often at the expense of our brain's real lover: fat. When we consume too many carbs, we eat less fat — the very ingredient our brain demands for health.

SIGNS OF GLUTEN SENSITIVITY

The best way to know if you're sensitive to gluten is to get tested. Unfortunately, traditional blood tests and small-intestine biopsies are not nearly as accurate as the newer tests that can identify gluten antibodies just as well as genetic testing. Below is a list of symptoms and illnesses associated with gluten sensitivity. Even if you don't have any of these conditions, I urge you to employ the latest testing technology (see [here](#)).

ADHD
alcoholism
ALS
anxiety
ataxia, loss of balance

depression
digestive disturbances
(gas, bloating, diarrhea,
constipation, cramping,
etc.)

autism	heart disease
autoimmune disorders	hives/rashes
(diabetes, Hashimoto's	infertility
thyroiditis, rheumatoid	irritable bowel syndrome
arthritis, to name a	malabsorption of food
few)	migraines
bone pain/osteopenia/	miscarriages
osteoporosis	nausea/vomiting
brain fog	neurological disorders
cancer	(dementia, Alzheimer's,
chest pain	schizophrenia, etc.)
constantly getting sick	parkinsonism
dairy intolerance	seizures/epilepsy
delayed growth	sugar cravings

THE GLUTEN POLICE

The following grains and starches contain gluten:

barley	rye
bulgur	semolina
couscous	spelt
farina	triticale
graham flour	wheat
kamut	wheat germ
matzo	

The following grains and starches are gluten-free:

amaranth	quinoa
arrowroot	rice
buckwheat	sorghum
corn	soy
millet	tapioca
potato	teff

The following foods often contain gluten:

baked beans (canned)	with flour before freezing)
beer	fried vegetables/tempura
blue cheeses	fruit fillings and puddings
bouillons/broths	gravy
(commercially prepared)	hot dogs
breaded foods	ice cream
cereals	imitation crabmeat, bacon,
chocolate milk	etc.
(commercially prepared)	instant hot drinks
cold cuts	ketchup

communion wafers
egg substitute
energy bars
flavored coffees and teas
French fries (often dusted
non-dairy creamer
oat bran (unless certified
gluten-free)
oats (unless certified
gluten-free)
processed cheese (e.g.,
Velveeta)
roasted nuts
root beer
salad dressings
sausage

malt/malt flavoring
malt vinegar
marinades
mayonnaise
meatballs/meatloaf
seitan
soups
soy sauce and teriyaki
sauces
syrups
tabbouleh
trail mix
veggie burgers
vodka
wheatgrass
wine coolers

The following are miscellaneous sources of gluten:

cosmetics
lipsticks/lip balm
medications
non-self-adhesive stamps
and envelopes

Play-Doh
shampoos/conditioners
vitamins and supplements
(check label)

The following ingredients are often code for gluten:

amino peptide complex
Avena sativa
brown rice syrup
caramel color (frequently
made from barley)
cyclodextrin
dextrin
fermented grain
extract
Hordeum distichon
Hordeum vulgare
hydrolysate
hydrolyzed malt
extract

hydrolyzed vegetable
protein
maltodextrin
modified food starch
natural flavoring
phytosphingosine
extract
Secale cereale
soy protein
Triticum aestivum
Triticum vulgare
vegetable protein (HVP)
yeast extract

CHAPTER 3

Attention, Carboholics and Fat Phobics

Surprising Truths About Your Brain's Real Enemies and Lovers

No diet will remove all the fat from your body because the brain is entirely fat. Without a brain, you might look good, but all you could do is run for public office.

— GEORGE BERNARD SHAW

SOME OF MY MOST REMARKABLE CASE STUDIES involve people transforming their lives and health through the total elimination of gluten from their diets and a new appreciation for fats instead of carbs. I've watched this single dietary shift lift depression, relieve chronic fatigue, reverse type 2 diabetes, extinguish obsessive-compulsive behavior, and cure many neurological challenges, from brain fog to bipolar disorder.

But apart from gluten, there's much more to the story of carbohydrates in general and their impact on brain health. Gluten isn't the only villain. To shift your body's biochemistry to one that burns fat (including the kind that "never goes away"), tames inflammation, and prevents illness and mental dysfunction, you need to factor in another big piece of the equation: carbs versus fats. In this chapter, I'll take you on a tour of why an extremely low-carb and high-fat diet is what your body fundamentally craves and needs. I'll also explain why consuming excess carbohydrates — even those that don't contain gluten — can be just as harmful as eating a gluten-laden diet.

Ironically, ever since we "scientized" nutrition, the state of our health has declined. Decisions about what to eat and drink have gone from habits of culture and heritage to calculated choices based on shortsighted nutritional theories, with little consideration of how human beings reached modernity in the first place. And we can't forget about all the commercial interest out there. Do you think the makers of high-carbohydrate breakfast cereals (read: the entire aisle in your grocery store devoted to boxed cereals) truly have your health in mind?

One of the most profitable businesses for food manufacturers is cereal. It's one of the only industries that can turn an inexpensive ingredient (i.e., processed grains) into a pricey commodity. The R&D department for General Mills, called the Institute of Cereal Technology and located in Minneapolis, is home to hundreds of scientists whose sole purpose is to design new and tasty cereals that can command a high price and last for a long time on the shelves.[1](#)

Consider what you've experienced in just the past few decades. You've witnessed an untold number of ideas on what you should consume to fuel your metabolism, only to learn the opposite could be true. Take eggs, for instance. Eggs were thought to be good for you; then they were deemed to be bad for you because of their saturated fat content; and then you were exceedingly confused by messages implying that "More evidence is needed to determine the health effect of eggs." It's unfair, I know. With all of this white noise, it's no wonder that people feel endlessly frustrated.

This chapter should make you rejoice. I'm going to rescue you from a lifetime of trying to avoid eating fat and cholesterol and prove how these delicious ingredients preserve the highest functioning of your brain. We've developed a taste for fat for good reason: It's our brain's secret love. But in the last several decades it's been demonized as an unhealthy nutritional source, and we've regrettably become a fat-phobic, carb-addicted society (and it doesn't help that we automatically lower our intake of healthy fat when we eat lots of carbs). Advertisements, weight-loss companies, grocery stores, and popular books are touting the idea that we should be on a low-fat or as close to a no-fat, low-cholesterol diet as humanly possible. True, there are certain types of fat that are associated with health issues, and no one can deny the health threat linked squarely with commercially modified fats and oils. There is compelling scientific support that "trans fats" are toxic and are clearly linked to any number of chronic diseases. But the missing message is simple: Our bodies thrive when given "good fats," and cholesterol is one of these. And we don't do so well with copious amounts of carbohydrates, even if those carbs are gluten-free, whole grain, and high in fiber.

Interestingly, the human dietary requirement for carbohydrate is virtually zero; we can survive on a minimal amount of carbohydrate, which can be furnished by the liver as needed. But we can't go long without fat. Unfortunately, most of us equate the idea of eating fat to *being* fat, when in reality, obesity — and its metabolic consequences — has almost nothing to do with dietary fat consumption and everything to do with our addiction to carbs. The same is true about cholesterol: Eating high-cholesterol foods has no

impact on our actual cholesterol levels, and the alleged correlation between higher cholesterol and higher cardiac risk is an absolute fallacy.

FAT GENES AND PHAT SCIENCE

Of all the lessons in this book, the one I hope you take seriously is the following: Respect your genome. Fat — not carbohydrate — is the preferred fuel of human metabolism and has been for all of human evolution. We have consumed a high-fat diet for the past two million years, and it is only since the advent of agriculture about ten thousand years ago that carbohydrates have become abundant in our food supply. We still have a hunter-gatherer genome; it's thrifty in the sense that it's programmed to make us fat during times of abundance. The thrifty gene hypothesis was first described by geneticist James Neel in 1962 to help explain why type 2 diabetes has such a strong genetic basis and results in such negative effects favored by natural selection. According to the theory, the genes that predispose someone to diabetes — “thrifty genes” — were historically advantageous. They helped one fatten up quickly when food was available, since long stretches of food scarcity were inevitable. But once modern society changed our access to food, the thrifty genes were no longer needed but were still active — essentially preparing us for a famine that never comes. It is believed that our thrifty genes are responsible for the obesity epidemic, too, which is closely tied to diabetes.

Unfortunately, it takes forty thousand to seventy thousand years for any significant changes to take place in the genome that might allow us to adapt to such a drastic change in our diet and for our thrifty genes to even think about ignoring the instructions that say “store fat.” While some of us like to believe we're plagued with genes that promote fat growth and retention, thus making weight loss and maintenance hard, the truth is we all carry the “fat gene.” It's part of our human constitution and, for the majority of our existence on the planet, has kept us alive.

Our forebears could not have had any meaningful exposure to carbohydrates, except perhaps in the late summer when fruit ripened. Interestingly, this type of carbohydrate would have tended to increase fat creation and deposition so we could get through the winter when food and calories were less available. Now, however, we signal our bodies to store fat 365 days a year. And through science we are learning about the consequences.

The Framingham Heart Study referenced in the first chapter, which identified a linear association between total cholesterol and cognitive performance, is just the tip of the iceberg. In the fall of 2012, a report in the

Journal of Alzheimer's Disease published research from the Mayo Clinic revealing that older people who fill their plates with carbohydrates have nearly *four times* the risk of developing mild cognitive impairment (MCI), generally considered a precursor to Alzheimer's disease. Signs of MCI include problems with memory, language, thinking, and judgment. This particular study found that those whose diets were highest in healthy fats were 42 percent less likely to experience cognitive impairment; people who had the highest intake of protein from healthy sources like chicken, meat, and fish enjoyed a reduced risk of 21 percent.²

Earlier studies examining patterns in diet and risk for dementia unveiled similar findings. One of the first studies to really compare the difference in fat content between an Alzheimer's brain and a healthy brain was published in 1998.³ In this post-mortem study, researchers in the Netherlands found that the Alzheimer's patients had significantly reduced amounts of fats, notably cholesterol and free fatty acids, in their cerebrospinal fluid than did the controls. This was true regardless of whether the Alzheimer's patients had the defective gene — known as APOE ε4 — that predisposes people to the disease.

In 2007, the journal *Neurology* published a study that looked at more than eight thousand participants who were sixty-five years or older and had totally normal brain function. The study followed them for up to four years, during which some 280 people developed a form of dementia (most of the 280 were diagnosed with Alzheimer's).⁴ The researchers aimed to identify patterns in their dietary habits, homing in on their consumption of fish, which contains lots of brain- and heart-healthy omega-3 fats. For people who never consumed fish, the risk of dementia and Alzheimer's disease during the four-year follow-up period was increased by 37 percent. In those individuals who consumed fish on a daily basis, risk for these diseases was reduced by 44 percent. Regular users of butter had no significant change in their risk for dementia or Alzheimer's, but people who regularly consumed omega-3-rich oils, such as olive, flaxseed, and walnut oil, were 60 percent less likely to develop dementia than those who did not regularly consume such oils. The researchers also found that people who regularly ate omega-6-rich oils — typical in the American diet — but not omega-3-rich oils or fish were twice as likely to develop dementia as people who didn't eat omega-6-rich oils. (See the sidebar below for a more in-depth explanation of these fats.)

Interestingly, the report showed that consumption of omega-3 oils actually counterbalanced the detrimental effect of the omega-6 oils, and cautioned against eating omega-6 oils in the absence of omega-3. I find results like these to be quite stunning, and informative.

THE OH-SO-MANY OMEGAS: WHICH ONES ARE GOOD?

We hear so much these days about omega-3 and omega-6 fats. Overall, omega-6 fats fall under the “bad fat” category; they are somewhat pro-inflammatory, and there is evidence that higher consumption of these fats is related to brain disorders. Unfortunately, the American diet is extremely high in omega-6 fats, which are found in many vegetable oils, including safflower oil, corn oil, canola oil, sunflower oil, and soybean oil; vegetable oil represents the number one source of fat in the American diet. According to anthropological research, our hunter-gatherer ancestors consumed omega-6 and omega-3 fats in a ratio of roughly 1:1.⁵ Today we consume ten to twenty-five times more omega-6 fats than evolutionary norms, and we’ve dramatically reduced our intake of healthy, brain-boosting omega-3 fats (some experts believe our increased consumption of brain-healthy omega-3 fatty acids was responsible for the threefold increase in the size of the human brain). The following chart lists the omega-6 and omega-3 content of various vegetable oils.

Oil	Omega-6 Content	Omega-3 Content
canola	20%	9%
corn	54%	0%
cottonseed	50%	0%
fish	0%	100%
flaxseed	14%	57%
peanut	32%	0%
safflower	75%	0%
sesame	42%	0%
soybean	51%	7%
sunflower	65%	0%
walnut	52%	10%

Seafood is a wonderful source of omega-3 fatty acids, and even wild meat like beef, lamb, venison, and buffalo contain this fab fat. But a caveat to consider: If animals are fed grains (usually corn and soybeans), then they will not have adequate omega-3 in their diets and their meat will be deficient in these vital nutrients. Hence the call for consuming grass-fed beef and wild fish.

Beyond dementia, other neurological issues have been associated with low fat intake and cholesterol levels in particular. In a recent report published by the National Institutes of Health, researchers compared memory function in elderly individuals to cholesterol levels. They found that the people who did not suffer from dementia had much better memory function if they had higher levels of cholesterol. The conclusion of the report crisply stated: “High cholesterol is associated with better memory function.” In the discussion that followed, the researchers indicated: “It is possible that individuals who survived beyond age eighty-five, especially those with high cholesterol, may be more robust.”⁶

Parkinson’s disease is also strongly related to lower levels of cholesterol. Researchers in the Netherlands writing in the *American Journal of*

Epidemiology published a report in 2006 demonstrating that “higher serum levels of total cholesterol were associated with a significantly decreased risk of Parkinson’s disease with evidence of a dose effect relation.”⁷ In fact, more recent research in 2008 published in the journal *Movement Disorders* showed that people with the lowest LDL cholesterol (the so-called bad cholesterol) were at increased risk for Parkinson’s disease by approximately 350 percent!⁸

To understand how this could possibly be true, it helps to recall what I hinted at in the first chapter about LDL being a carrier protein that’s not necessarily bad. The fundamental role of LDL in the brain is to capture life-giving cholesterol and transport it to the neuron where it performs critically important functions. As we have now seen, when cholesterol levels are low, the brain simply doesn’t work well, and individuals are at a significantly increased risk for neurological problems as a consequence. But a caveat: Once free radicals damage the LDL molecule, it’s rendered much less capable of delivering cholesterol to the brain. In addition to oxidation destroying the LDL’s function, sugar can also render it dysfunctional by binding to it and accelerating oxidation. And when that happens, LDL is no longer able to enter the astrocyte, a cell charged with nourishing neurons. In the last ten years new research has shown that oxidized LDL is a key factor in the development of atherosclerosis. Hence, we should do everything we can to reduce the risk of LDL oxidation — not necessarily levels of LDL itself. A principal player in that risk of oxidation is higher levels of glucose; LDL is far more likely to become oxidized in the presence of sugar molecules that will bind to it and change its shape. Glycosylated proteins, which are the products of these reactions between proteins and sugar molecules, are associated with a fiftyfold increase in free radical formation as compared to non-glycosylated proteins. LDL is not the enemy. The problems occur when a higher-carbohydrate diet yields oxidized LDL and an increased risk of atherosclerosis. In addition, if and when LDL becomes a glycosylated molecule, it cannot present cholesterol to brain cells, and brain function suffers.

Somehow we have been led to believe that dietary fat will raise our cholesterol, which will in turn increase our risk for heart attacks and strokes. This notion continues to prevail despite research from nineteen years ago that proved otherwise. In 1994, the *Journal of the American Medical Association* published a trial that compared older adults with high cholesterol (levels above 240 mg/dl) to those with normal levels (below 200 mg/dl).⁹ Over the course of four years, researchers at Yale University measured total cholesterol and high-density lipoprotein (HDL) in almost one thousand participants; they also tracked hospitalizations for heart attack and unstable angina and the rates

of death from heart disease and from any other cause. No differences were found between the two groups. People with low total cholesterol had as many heart attacks and died just as frequently as those with high total cholesterol. And reviews of multiple large studies have routinely failed to find correlation between cholesterol levels and heart disease.^{[10](#)} Mounting research like this has prompted Dr. George Mann, a researcher with the Framingham Heart Study, to go on record stating:

The diet heart hypothesis that suggests that a high intake of fat or cholesterol causes heart disease has been repeatedly shown to be wrong, and yet, for complicated reasons of pride, profit, and prejudice, the hypothesis continues to be exploited by scientists, fund-raising enterprise, food companies, and even governmental agencies. The public is being deceived by the greatest health scam of the century.^{[11](#)}

Nothing could be further from the truth than the myth that if we lower our cholesterol levels we might have a greater chance of living longer and healthier lives. In a recent report appearing in the prestigious medical journal the *Lancet*, researchers from the Netherlands studied 724 elderly individuals whose average age was eighty-nine years and followed them for ten years.^{[12](#)} What they found was truly extraordinary. During the study, 642 participants died. Each thirty-nine-point increase in total cholesterol corresponded to a 15 percent decrease in mortality risk. In the study, there was absolutely no difference in the risk of dying from coronary artery disease between the high-versus low-cholesterol groups, which is incredible when you consider the number of elderly folks who are taking powerful cholesterol-lowering drugs. Other common causes of death in the elderly were found to be dramatically associated with lower cholesterol. The authors reported: “Mortality from cancer and infection was significantly lower among the participants in the highest total cholesterol category than in the other categories, which largely explains the lower all-cause mortality in this category.” In other words, people with the highest total cholesterol were less likely to die from cancer and infections — common fatal illnesses in older folks — than those with the lowest cholesterol levels. In fact, when you compare the lowest- and highest-cholesterol groups, the risk of dying during the study was reduced by a breathtaking 48 percent in those who had the highest cholesterol. High cholesterol can extend longevity.

Perhaps one of the most extraordinary studies performed on the positive impact of cholesterol on the entire neurological system is a 2008 report published in the journal *Neurology*, which describes high cholesterol as a protective factor in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS, also known as Lou Gehrig’s disease).^{[13](#)} There is no meaningful treatment for ALS, a devastating disease that I deal with in my medical practice on a daily basis. ALS is a

chronic degenerative disorder of the body's motor neurons that leads to death within two to five years of onset. The FDA has approved one medication, Rilutek, that may extend life by approximately three months, at best. But it's very expensive and toxic to the liver; most patients refuse to take it. In this study from French investigators, however, it was shown that those individuals with considerably higher cholesterol ratios lived, on average, one year longer than patients with lower levels, when compared with normal controls. As the authors stated: "Hyperlipidemia (high levels of cholesterol) is a significant prognostic factor for survival of patients with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. This finding highlights the importance of nutritional intervention strategies on disease progression and claims our attention when treating these patients with lipid lowering drugs."

As the infomercials say, "But wait, there's more!" We can't limit our talk about fat to just brain health. Volumes have been written in the scientific literature about fat and heart health as well — but not in the context I know you're thinking about. In 2010, the *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* published an astonishing study that revealed the truth behind urban legends about fat, especially the saturated kind, and heart disease.¹⁴ The study was a retrospective evaluation of twenty-one previous medical reports involving more than three hundred forty thousand subjects followed from periods of five to twenty-three years. It concluded that "intake of saturated fat was not associated with an increased risk of coronary heart disease, stroke, or cardiovascular disease." In comparing the lowest to the highest consumption of saturated fat, the actual risk for coronary heart disease was 19 percent lower in the group consuming the highest amount of saturated fat. The authors also stated: "Our results suggested a publication bias, such that studies with significant associations tended to be received more favorably for publication." What the authors are implying is that when other studies presented conclusions that were more familiar to the mainstream (i.e., fat causes heart disease), not to mention more attractive to Big Pharma, they were more likely to get published. The truth is we thrive on saturated fats. In the words of Michael Gurr, PhD, author of *Lipid Biochemistry: An Introduction*, "Whatever causes coronary heart disease, it is not primarily a high intake of saturated fatty acids."¹⁵

In a subsequent report from the *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, a panel of leading researchers in the field of nutrition from around the globe clearly stated: "At present there is no clear relation of saturated fatty acid intake to these outcomes [of obesity, cardiovascular disease, incidence of cancer and osteoporosis]." The researchers went on to say that research should be directed at "biological interactions between insulin resistance,

reflected by obesity and physical inactivity, and carbohydrate quality and quantity.”¹⁶

Before we look at more studies showing the benefits of fat, especially cholesterol-rich foods, let’s consider how we got to the point where we reject the very foods that can feed our healthy brains and keep us supercharged for a long, vibrant life. This will require a short detour to the relationship between dietary fat and heart health, but the story ties directly into brain health.

A LITTLE HISTORY

If you’re like most Americans, at some time in your life you’ve eaten more margarine than butter, felt like you were splurging when you polished off a plate of red meat, eggs, and cheese, and gravitated toward products that said “low-fat,” “non-fat,” or “cholesterol-free.” I don’t blame you for making these choices. We are all members of the same society that relies on “experts” to tell us what’s good and, conversely, bad for us. We’ve lived through historic events in our understanding of human health over the past several generations, as well as momentous discoveries about what makes us sick and prone to disease. In fact, the turn of the twentieth century marked the very beginning of a huge shift in American life due to advances in technology and medicine. Within the span of a few decades, we had widespread access to antibiotics, vaccines, and public health services. Common childhood illnesses that once gravely lowered the average life span were vanishing, or at least coming under better control. More people moved into cities and left their agrarian lifestyles behind. We became more educated, better informed, and ever more sophisticated. But in a lot of ways, we also became more easily tantalized and deceived by information that wasn’t fully deciphered and proven yet. You might not remember the days when doctors endorsed smoking cigarettes, for instance, but this same kind of ignorance has happened on a much subtler scale in the world of dieting. And sadly, much of it continues today.

In 1900, the typical city dweller consumed about 2,900 calories per day, with 40 percent of these calories coming from equal parts saturated and unsaturated fat. (Rural families living and working on farms probably ate more calories.) Theirs was a diet filled with butter, eggs, meats, grains, and seasonable fruits and vegetables. Few Americans were overweight, and the three most common causes of death were pneumonia, tuberculosis, and diarrhea and enteritis.

It was also around the turn of the twentieth century that the Department of Agriculture began to keep track of food trends, noting a change in the

consumption of the kind of fats Americans were eating. People were beginning to use vegetable oils instead of butter, which prompted food manufacturers to create hardened oils through the hydrogenated process so they resembled butter. By 1950 we had gone from eating about eighteen pounds of butter and a little under three pounds of vegetable oil each year to just over ten pounds of butter and more than ten pounds of vegetable oil. Margarine was rapidly gaining ground in our diets, too; at the turn of the century people consumed only two pounds per person per year, but by midcentury, people were eating around eight pounds.

Although the so-called lipid hypothesis had been around since the mid-nineteenth century, it wasn't until the mid-twentieth century that scientists tried to correlate a fatty diet to fatty arteries, as deaths from coronary artery disease (CAD) began to climb. According to the hypothesis, saturated animal fat raises blood cholesterol levels and leads to the deposition of cholesterol and other fats as plaques in the arteries. To bolster this theory, a University of Minnesota public health researcher named Ancel Keys showed a nearly direct correlation between calories from fat in the diet and deaths from heart disease among populations across seven countries. (He ignored countries that didn't fit this pattern, including many where people eat a lot of fat but don't get heart disease and others where the diets are low in fat yet their populations have a high incidence of fatal heart attacks.) The Japanese, whose diets have only 10 percent of calories coming from fat, showed the lowest CAD mortality — less than 1 in 1,000. The United States, on the other hand, had the highest CAD mortality — 7 in 1,000 — with 40 percent of its calories coming from fat.¹⁷ On the surface, it would seem that these patterns point directly to the idea that fat is bad, and that fat causes heart disease. Little did scientists know then that these numbers weren't telling the whole story.

This erroneous thinking persisted, however, for the next several decades as researchers looked for more proof, which included the Framingham Heart Study, which found that people with higher cholesterol were more likely to be diagnosed with CAD and die from it. In 1956, the American Heart Association began pushing the “prudent diet,” which called for replacing butter, lard, eggs, and beef with margarine, corn oil, chicken, and cold cereal. By the 1970s, the lipid hypothesis had become well established. At the heart of this hypothesis was the unyielding claim that cholesterol caused coronary artery disease.

This naturally motivated the government to do something, which led to the release of “Dietary Goals for the United States” by the Senate's Select Committee on Nutrition and Human Needs in 1977. As you can imagine, the goals aimed to lower fat intake and avoid foods high in cholesterol. “Artery-

clogging” saturated fats were deemed especially bad. So down went meat, milk, eggs, butter, cheese, and tropical oils such as coconut and palm oil. This perspective also paved the way for the billion-dollar drug industry’s focus on lipid-lowering medications. At the same time, health authorities began to advise people to replace these now-bad fats with carbohydrates and processed polyunsaturated vegetable oils, including soybean, corn, cottonseed, canola, peanut, safflower, and sunflower oils. Fast-food restaurants followed suit in the mid-1980s, switching from beef fat and palm oil to partially hydrogenated (trans fat) vegetable oil to fry their foods. Even though the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) has since converted its food guide from a pyramid to a plate, it still communicates the idea that “fat is bad” and “carbs are good.” In fact, the new “My Plate” doesn’t feature fats at all, making it very confusing for consumers to know how fats fit into a healthy diet, and which kind.¹⁸

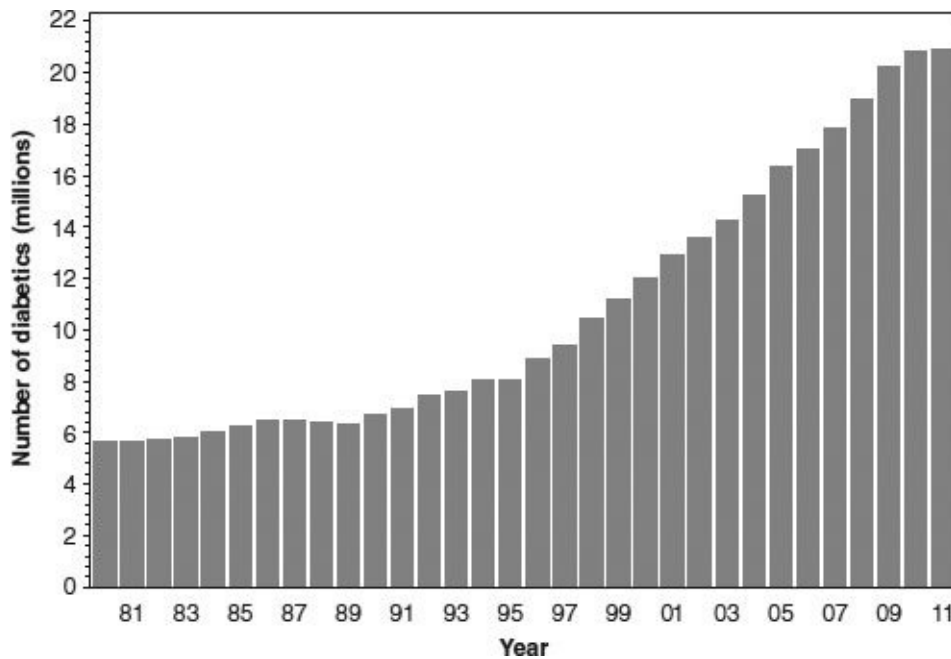
Dr. Donald W. Miller, cardiac surgeon and professor of surgery at the University of Washington, stated it perfectly in his 2010 essay entitled “Health Benefits of a Low-Carbohydrate, High-Saturated-Fat Diet”:¹⁹ “The sixty-year reign of the low-fat, high-carbohydrate diet will end. This will happen when the health-destroying effects of excess carbohydrates in the diet become more widely recognized and the health benefits of saturated fats are better appreciated.” The lipid hypothesis has dominated cardiovascular circles for decades despite the fact that the number of contradictory studies exceeds those that are supportive. There hasn’t been a published study in the last thirty years that has unequivocally demonstrated that lowering serum cholesterol by eating a “low-fat, low-cholesterol diet” prevents or reduces heart attack or death rate. And as Dr. Miller points out, population studies from around the world do not support the lipid hypothesis. We can even go as far back as 1968 to find studies that flatly dispel the notion of a low-fat diet as ideal. That year, the International Atherosclerosis Project examined twenty-two thousand corpses from fourteen nations and found that it didn’t matter whether people ate large amounts of fatty animal products or followed a mostly vegetarian diet — the prevalence of arterial plaque was the same in all parts of the world, both in those with high rates of heart disease and in populations with little to no heart disease.²⁰ Which means that the thickening of the arterial wall could just be an unavoidable process of aging that doesn’t necessarily correlate with clinical heart disease.

So if eating saturated fat doesn’t cause heart disease, then what does? Now let’s look at these circumstances from the perspective of the brain, and then we’ll circle back to matters of the heart. You’ll soon be able to understand the root cause of both obesity and brain disease.

As I've already detailed, one of the ways in which grains and carbs set fire to the brain is through surges in blood sugar; this has direct negative effects on the brain that in turn start the inflammatory cascade. The science really comes down to your body's neurotransmitters. Neurotransmitters are your main mood and brain regulators, and when your blood sugar increases, there's an immediate depletion of the neurotransmitters serotonin, epinephrine, norepinephrine, GABA, and dopamine. At the same time, B-complex vitamins, which are needed to make those neurotransmitters (and a few hundred other things), get used up. Magnesium levels also diminish, and this handicaps both your nervous system and liver. In addition, high blood sugar triggers a reaction called "glycation," which we'll explore in detail in the next chapter. In simplest terms, glycation is the biological process whereby glucose, proteins, and certain fats become tangled together, causing tissues and cells to become stiff and inflexible, including those in the brain. More specifically, sugar molecules and brain proteins combine to create deadly new structures that contribute more than any other factor to the degeneration of the brain and its functioning. The brain is tremendously vulnerable to the glycating ravages of glucose, and this is made worse when powerful antigens like gluten accelerate the damage. In neurological terms, glycation can contribute to the shrinking of critical brain tissue.

Aside from sweetened beverages, grain-based foods are responsible for the bulk of carbohydrate calories in the American diet. Whether from pasta, cookies, cakes, bagels, or the seemingly healthful "whole-grain bread," the carbohydrate load induced by our food choices ultimately doesn't serve us well when trying to optimize brain health and function. When you add to this list the potpourri of other high-carbohydrate foods like potatoes, corn, fruit, and rice, it's no wonder that Americans are now rightly called "carboholics." It's also not surprising that we have an epidemic of metabolic dysfunction and diabetes in our culture.

The data confirming the relationship between high carbohydrate consumption and diabetes is clear and profound, and it's compelling to note that in 1994, when the American Diabetes Association recommended that Americans should consume 60 to 70 percent of their calories from carbohydrates, rates of diabetes exploded. In fact, the number of cases of diabetes in this country actually *doubled* between 1997 and 2007.^{[21](#)} Take a look at the rapid upward slope from 1980 through 2011, during which the number of Americans diagnosed with diabetes more than tripled:



In 1992, the U.S. government endorsed a high-carb, low-fat diet. The American Diabetes Association and the American Heart Association followed suit with similar recommendations in 1994. Notice the sharp incline thereafter as more people became diabetic (and obese).

This is significant since, as you already know, becoming a diabetic doubles your risk of Alzheimer's disease. Even being "pre-diabetic," when blood sugar issues are just beginning, is associated with a decline in brain function and shrinkage of the brain's memory center; it is also an independent risk factor for full-blown Alzheimer's disease.

It's hard to believe that we couldn't have known about this connection between diabetes and dementia sooner, but it's taken us a long time to connect the dots and conduct the kind of longitudinal studies that such a conclusion requires. It's also taken us time to figure out the obvious question that stems from this link: How does diabetes contribute to dementia? First, if you're insulin resistant, your body may not be able to break down a protein (amyloid) that forms brain plaques associated with brain disease. Second, high blood sugar provokes menacing biological reactions that injure the body, by producing certain oxygen-containing molecules that damage cells and causing inflammation that can result in hardening and narrowing of the arteries in the brain (not to mention elsewhere in the body). This condition, known as atherosclerosis, can lead to vascular dementia, which occurs when blockages and strokes kill brain tissue. We tend to think about atherosclerosis in terms of the heart, but the brain can be equally affected by changes in its arteries' walls. Back in 2004, Australian researchers boldly stated in a review paper that "there is now a consensus that atherosclerosis represents a state of heightened oxidative stress characterized by lipid and protein oxidation in the

vascular wall.”²² They also pointed out that such oxidation is a response to inflammation.

A most disturbing finding was made by Japanese researchers in 2011 when they looked at 1,000 men and women over age sixty and found that “people with diabetes were twice as likely as the other study participants to develop Alzheimer’s disease within fifteen years. They were also 1.75 times more likely to develop dementia of any kind.”²³ This link remained true even after they took into account several factors associated with both diabetes and dementia risk, such as age, sex, blood pressure, and body mass index. Now they and other researchers are documenting how controlling blood sugar and reducing risk factors for type 2 diabetes also reduces dementia risk.

GET THE FACTS ON FAT: YOUR BRAIN’S BEST FRIEND

To fully grasp the bane of carbs and the benefits of fats, it helps to understand some basic biology. In the body, dietary carbohydrates, including sugars and starches, are converted to glucose, which you know by now tells the pancreas to release insulin into the blood. Insulin shuffles glucose into cells and stores glucose as glycogen in the liver and muscles. It’s also the body’s chief fat-building catalyst, converting glucose to body fat when the liver and muscles have no more room for glycogen. Carbohydrates — not dietary fats — are the primary cause of weight gain. (Think about it: Many farmers fatten animals destined for the butcher block with carbohydrates like corn and grain, not fats and proteins. You can see the difference just by comparing, for example, a cut of grain-fed New York strip steak and a grass-fed one: the grain-fed cut will contain a lot more fat.) This partly explains why one of the major health effects of a low-carbohydrate diet is weight loss. Moreover, a low-carb diet decreases blood sugar in diabetics and improves insulin sensitivity. In fact, replacing carbohydrates with fat is increasingly becoming the preferred method for treating type 2 diabetes.

When your diet is continuously rich in carbohydrates, which in effect keep your insulin pumps on, you severely limit (if not completely halt) the breakdown of your body fat for fuel. Your body gets addicted to that glucose. You may even use up your glucose but still suffer from a lockdown of available fat for fuel due to high volumes of insulin. In essence, the body becomes physically starved due to your carb-based diet. This is why many obese individuals cannot lose weight while continuing to eat carbs. Their insulin levels hold those fat stores hostage.

Now let’s turn to dietary fat. Fat is and always has been a fundamental pillar of our nutrition. Beyond the fact that the human brain consists of more

than 70 percent fat, fat plays a pivotal role in regulating the immune system. Simply stated, good fats like omega-3s and monounsaturated fats reduce inflammation, while modified hydrogenated fats, so common in commercially prepared foods, dramatically increase inflammation. Certain vitamins, notably A, D, E, and K, require fat to get absorbed properly in the body, which is why dietary fat is necessary to transport these “fat-soluble” vitamins. Because these vitamins do not dissolve in water, they can only be absorbed from your small intestine in combination with fat. Deficiencies due to incomplete absorption of these vitally important vitamins are always serious, and any such deficiency can be linked to brain illness, among many other conditions. Without enough vitamin K, for instance, you won’t be able to form blood clots upon injury and can even suffer from spontaneous bleeding (imagine that problem in the brain). Vitamin K also contributes to both brain and eye health, helping reduce the risk of age-related dementia and macular degeneration (and dietary fat is good for macular degeneration). Without adequate vitamin A, your brain won’t develop properly; you will go blind and become exceptionally vulnerable to infections. A lack of vitamin D is known to be associated with increased susceptibility to several chronic diseases, including schizophrenia, Alzheimer’s, Parkinson’s, depression, seasonal affective disorders, and a number of autoimmune diseases such as type 1 diabetes.

If you follow today’s conventional wisdom, you know that you’re supposed to limit your total fat intake to no more than 20 percent of your calories (and when it comes to saturated fat, that percentage goes down to less than 10). You also know that this is difficult to achieve. (You can breathe a sigh of relief: It’s misguided advice, and on my program you won’t have to worry about counting fat grams or overall percentages.) However, while the synthetic trans fats found in margarine and processed foods are poisonous, we know now that monounsaturated fats — such as the fat found in avocados, olives, and nuts — are healthy. We also know that the polyunsaturated omega-3 fatty acids in cold-water fish (e.g., salmon) and some plants (e.g., flaxseed oil) are deemed “good.” But what about natural saturated fats such as those found in meat, egg yolks, cheese, and butter? As I’ve been detailing, saturated fat has gotten a bad rap. Most of us don’t even question why these particular fats are unhealthy anymore; we just assume that the purported science is true. Or we erroneously place these fats in the same category as trans fats. But we need saturated fat, and our body has long been designed to handle the consumption of natural sources of it — even in high amounts.

Few people understand that saturated fat plays a pivotal role in a lot of biochemical equations that keep us healthy. If you were breast-fed as a baby,

then saturated fats were your staple, as they make up 54 percent of the fat in breast milk. Every cell in your body requires saturated fats; they comprise 50 percent of the cellular membrane. They also contribute to the structure and function of your lungs, heart, bones, liver, and immune system. In your lungs, one particular saturated fat — 16-palmitic acid — creates lung surfactant, reducing surface tension so that your alveoli — the tiny air sacs that capture oxygen from your inhalations and allow it to be absorbed into your bloodstream — are able to expand. Without surfactant, you would not be able to breathe because the wet surfaces of your lungs' alveoli would stick together and prevent your lungs from expanding. Having healthy lung surfactant prevents asthma and other breathing disorders.

Heart muscle cells prefer a type of saturated fat for nourishment, and bones require saturated fats to assimilate calcium effectively. With the help of saturated fats, your liver clears out fat and protects you from the adverse effects of toxins, including alcohol and compounds in medications. The white blood cells of your immune system partly owe their ability to recognize and destroy invading germs, as well as to fight tumors, to the fats found in butter and coconut oil. Even your endocrine system relies on saturated fatty acids to communicate the need to manufacture certain hormones, including insulin. And they help tell your brain when you are full so you can pull away from the table. I don't expect you to remember all this biology. I mention it as a way of emphatically expressing to you the biological necessity of saturated fat. For a complete list of where these good fats can be found (and where the bad fats lurk), see [here](#)–[here](#).

THE CASE FOR CHOLESTEROL

If you've had your cholesterol levels tested, you've probably lumped HDL (high-density lipoprotein) and LDL (low-density lipoprotein) into two different categories — one “good” and one “bad.” I've already mentioned these two labels for cholesterol in passing. But contrary to what you might think, they are not two different kinds of cholesterol. HDL and LDL reflect two different containers for cholesterol and fats, each of which serves a different role in the body. Several other lipoproteins also exist, such as VLDL (very low) and IDL (intermediate). And as I've already begun to outline, cholesterol — no matter which “kind” — is not as terrible as you've been taught to believe. Some of the most remarkable studies of late on the biological value of cholesterol — and for brain health in particular — clue us in on how the pieces to this puzzle fit together and tell a coherent story. As we've seen, science is only recently discovering that both fat and cholesterol

are severely deficient in diseased brains and that high total cholesterol levels in late life are associated with increased longevity.²⁴ The brain holds only 2 percent of the body's mass but contains 25 percent of the total cholesterol, which supports brain function and development. One-fifth of the brain by weight is cholesterol!

Cholesterol forms membranes surrounding cells, keeps cell membranes permeable, and maintains cellular “waterproofing” so different chemical reactions can take place inside and outside the cell. We’ve actually determined that the ability to grow new synapses in the brain depends on the availability of cholesterol, which latches cell membranes together so that signals can easily jump across the synapse. It’s also a crucial component in the myelin coating around the neuron, allowing quick transmission of information. A neuron that can’t transmit messages is useless, and it only makes sense to cast it aside like junk — the debris of which is the hallmark of brain disease. In essence, cholesterol acts as a facilitator for the brain to communicate and function properly.

Moreover, cholesterol in the brain serves as a powerful antioxidant. It protects the brain against the damaging effects of free radicals. Cholesterol is a precursor for the steroid hormones like estrogen and the androgens, as well as for vitamin D, a critically important fat-soluble antioxidant. Vitamin D is also a powerful anti-inflammatory, helping to rid the body of infectious agents that can lead to life-threatening diseases. Vitamin D is not really a vitamin; it acts more like a steroid in the body or a hormone. Given that vitamin D is directly formed from cholesterol, you won’t be surprised to hear that vitamin D levels are low in people with a variety of neurodegenerative diseases like Parkinson’s, Alzheimer’s, and multiple sclerosis. As we age, natural cholesterol levels generally increase in the body. This is good because as we age our production of free radicals increases. Cholesterol can offer a level of protection against these free radicals.

And beyond the brain, cholesterol plays other vital roles in human health and physiology. The bile salts secreted by the gallbladder, which are needed for the digestion of fat and, therefore, the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins like A, D, and K, are made of cholesterol. Having a low cholesterol level in the body would therefore compromise a person’s ability to digest fat. It would also jeopardize your body’s electrolyte balance since cholesterol helps manage that delicate equilibrium. In fact, cholesterol is regarded by the body as such an important collaborator that every cell has a way to make its own supply.

So what does this mean for dietary recommendations? For years we have been told to focus on “low-cholesterol” foods, but foods rich in cholesterol,

such as eggs, are very helpful and should be considered “brain food.” We have eaten cholesterol-rich foods for more than two million years. As you now know, the real culprits when it comes to decreased brain function and health are foods that are high on the glycemic index — basically, high in carbohydrate.

One of the most pervasive myths I’m constantly debunking is the notion that the brain prefers glucose for fuel. This also couldn’t be further from the truth. The brain uses fat exceptionally well; it is considered a brain “superfuel.” This is why we use a fat-based diet as therapy for all manner of neurodegenerative diseases (in [chapter 7](#), I describe in detail how the brain accesses fat for fuel and what this means for health and for tailoring the perfect diet).

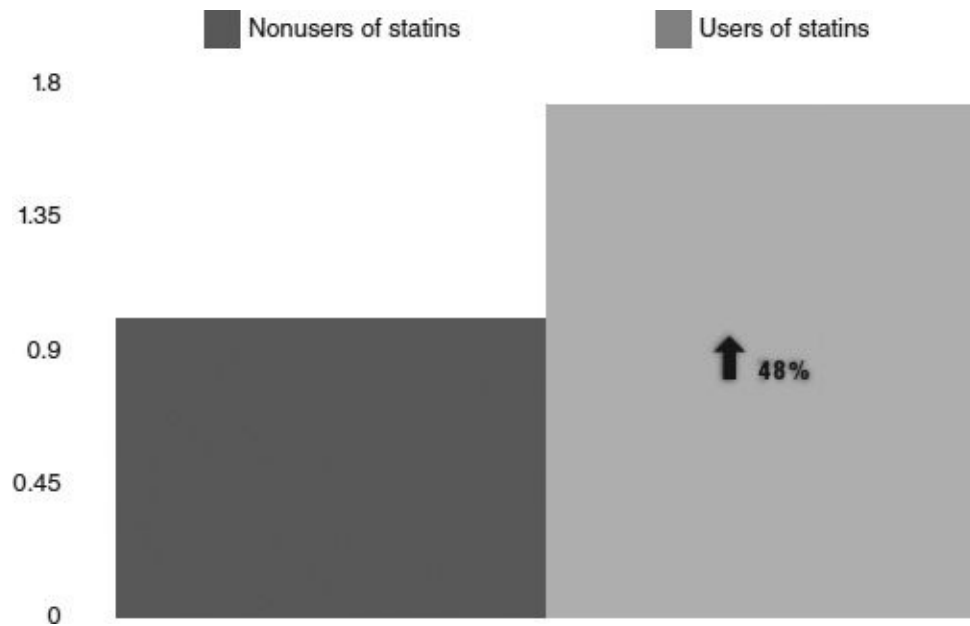
Part of the reason I am focusing on fats, and cholesterol in particular, is not only because these ingredients have everything to do with brain health, but also because we live in a society that continues to demonize them, and the huge pharmaceutical industry preys on the public’s misinformation and perpetuates falsehoods, many of which could physically destroy us. To really understand where I’m going with this, let’s look at one problematic area: the statin epidemic.

THE STATIN EPIDEMIC AND THE LINK TO BRAIN DYSFUNCTION

Our understanding of how cholesterol is critical for brain health has brought me and many others in my field to believe that statins — the blockbuster drugs prescribed to millions of Americans to lower cholesterol — may cause or exacerbate brain disorders and disease.

Memory dysfunction is a known side effect of statins. Dr. Duane Graveline, a former doctor to NASA astronauts who earned the nickname “Spacedoc,” has been a strong opponent of statins. Ever since he experienced total memory loss that he believed was caused by the statins he was taking at the time, he has been collecting evidence of their side effects from people around the world. Today he has written three books on the matter, the most famous of which is *Lipitor, Thief of Memory*.^{[25](#)}

In February 2012, the FDA released a statement indicating that statin drugs could cause cognitive side effects such as memory lapses and confusion. One recent study performed by the American Medical Association and published in the *Archives of Internal Medicine* in January 2012 demonstrated an astounding 48 percent increased risk of diabetes among women taking statin medications.^{[26](#)}



Risk of type 2 diabetes in women using statin drugs

This study involved big numbers — more than one hundred sixty thousand postmenopausal women — making it hard to ignore its significance and gravity. Recognizing that type 2 diabetes is a powerful risk factor for Alzheimer’s disease, a relationship between statin drugs and cognitive decline or cognitive dysfunction is certainly understandable.

In 2009, Stephanie Seneff, a senior research scientist in the Computer Science and Artificial Intelligence Laboratory at MIT who recently became interested in the effects of drugs and diet on health and nutrition, wrote a compelling essay explaining why low-fat diets and statins may cause Alzheimer’s.[27](#) In it, she chronicles our knowledge of statins’ side effects and paints a stunning portrait of how the brain suffers in their presence. She also synthesizes the latest science and input from other experts in the field. As Dr. Seneff explains, one of the main reasons statins promote brain disorder is that they handicap the liver’s ability to make cholesterol. Consequently, the level of LDL in the blood drops significantly. As I’ve just detailed, cholesterol plays a vital role in the brain, enabling communication between neurons and encouraging the growth of new brain cells. In an ironic twist, the statin industry advertises its products by saying that they interfere with cholesterol production in the brain as well as in the liver.

Professor of Biophysics at Iowa State University Dr. Yeon-Kyun Shin is a noted authority on how cholesterol functions within neural networks to transmit messages. He put it bluntly in an interview for a *ScienceDaily* reporter:[28](#)

If you deprive cholesterol from the brain, then you directly affect the machinery that triggers the release of neurotransmitters. Neurotransmitters affect the data-processing and memory functions. In other words — how smart you are and how well you remember things. If you try to lower the cholesterol by taking medication that is attacking the machinery of cholesterol synthesis in the liver, that medicine goes to the brain too. And then it reduces the synthesis of cholesterol, which is necessary in the brain. Our study shows there is a direct link between cholesterol and the neurotransmitter release, and we know exactly the molecular mechanics of what happens in the cells. Cholesterol changes the shape of the proteins to stimulate thinking and memory.

In 2009, an updated review of two major studies completed in 2001 of statin medications used by more than twenty-six thousand individuals at risk for dementia and Alzheimer's disease showed that statins are not protective against Alzheimer's, which contradicted previous thinking. The lead author of the study, Bernadette McGuinness, was quoted by *ScienceDaily* as saying, "From these trials, which contained very large numbers and were the gold standard — it appears that statins given in late life to individuals at risk of vascular disease do not prevent against dementia."²⁹ When asked to comment on the results, UCLA researcher Beatrice Golomb said, "Regarding statins as preventive medicines, there are a number of individual cases in case reports and case series where cognition is clearly and reproducibly adversely affected by statins."³⁰ Golomb further added that various studies have demonstrated that statins either negatively affected cognition or were neutral, and that no trial has ever shown a positive outcome.

Besides statins' direct impact on cholesterol, they have an indirect effect on the supply of fatty acids and antioxidants. They not only reduce the amount of cholesterol contained in LDL particles, but also diminish the actual number of LDL particles. So in addition to depleting cholesterol, they limit the stash available to the brain of both fatty acids and antioxidants, which are also carried in the LDL particles. Proper brain functioning depends on all three of these substances³¹ (and later on, you'll read about the importance of boosting the body's own natural production of antioxidants).

Another way in which statins may contribute to Alzheimer's, beautifully described by Dr. Seneff,³² is by paralyzing cells' ability to make coenzyme Q10, a vitamin-like substance found throughout the body, where it serves an important role as an antioxidant and in producing energy for cells. Because coenzyme Q10 shares the same metabolic pathway as cholesterol, its synthesis is disrupted by statins, and the body and brain are deprived of it. Some of the side effects listed for statins, such as fatigue, shortness of breath, problems with mobility and balance, and muscular pain, weakness, and atrophy, are related to the loss of coQ10 in muscles and a reduced capacity for energy production. At the extreme, people who experience severe reactions to

statins suffer from serious damage to their skeletal muscles. A deficiency in coQ10 also has been linked to heart failure, hypertension, and Parkinson's disease. Given all these effects, it's logical to see why coQ10 has been proposed as an actual treatment for Alzheimer's disease.

Finally, statins could have an indirect effect on vitamin D. The body makes vitamin D from cholesterol in the skin upon exposure to UV rays from the sun. If you were to look at the chemical formula for vitamin D, you'd have a hard time distinguishing it from cholesterol's formula; they look virtually identical. "If LDL levels are kept artificially low," writes Dr. Seneff, "then the body will be unable to resupply adequate amounts of cholesterol to replenish the stores in the skin once they have been depleted. This would lead to vitamin D deficiency, which is a widespread problem in America."³³ Vitamin D deficiency is not just about an increased risk for weak, soft bones and, at the extreme end, rickets; it's associated with many conditions that heighten one's risk for dementia, such as diabetes, depression, and cardiovascular disease. If the brain didn't demand vitamin D for proper development and function, then it wouldn't have widespread receptors for it.

The benefits of statins are questionable, and major studies have failed to show how they protect the body from illness. Although numerous studies do point to the positive effects statins have on reducing mortality rates in people with coronary artery disease, new research reveals that these outcomes have little to do with the cholesterol-lowering activity of these drugs and more likely reflect the fact that they reduce inflammation, a mainspring of the disease. But that doesn't mean that the trade-offs for taking a statin merit their seal of approval. For some, the risk of negative side effects is just too great. People with a low risk of heart disease but a high risk for other ailments would be putting themselves in harm's way if they chose to take a statin.

Studies dating back to the mid-1990s reveal a link between statin use and an increased risk of certain cancers, not to mention a long list of side effects from digestive challenges to asthma, impotence, inflammation of the pancreas, and liver damage.³⁴ A trial published in January 2010 in the *American Journal of Cardiology* found that statin medications actually increased the risk of death. Researchers in Israel followed nearly 300 adults diagnosed with heart failure for an average of 3.7 years, and in some cases up to 11.5 years. Those who were taking statin drugs and had the lowest levels of low-density lipoprotein (LDL) were found to have the highest rates of mortality. Conversely, people with higher levels of cholesterol had a lower risk of death.³⁵

HOW CARBS — NOT CHOLESTEROL — CAUSE HIGH CHOLESTEROL

If you can limit carb intake to a range that is absolutely necessary (the details of which are in [chapter 10](#)) and make up the difference with delicious fats and protein, you can literally reprogram your genes back to the factory setting you had at birth. This is the setting that affords you the ability to be a mentally sharp, fat-burning machine.

It's important to understand that when you have a blood cholesterol test, the number that is represented is actually 75 to 80 percent derived from what your body manufactures and not necessarily what you've eaten. In fact, foods that are high in cholesterol actually decrease the body's production of cholesterol. We all make up to 2,000 grams of cholesterol every day because we desperately need it, and this is several times the amount found in our diets. But despite this amazing ability, it's critical to obtain cholesterol from dietary sources. Our bodies much prefer that we "spoon-feed" our cholesterol from the foods we eat rather than manufacture it internally, which is a complex multistep biological process that taxes the liver. Dietary cholesterol is so important that your body absorbs as much as it can for use.

So what happens if you restrict your cholesterol intake, as so many people do today? The body sends out an alarm that indicates crisis (famine). Your liver senses this signal and begins to produce an enzyme called HMG-CoA reductase, which helps make up for the deficit by using carbohydrates in the diet to produce an excess supply of cholesterol. (This is the same enzyme that statins target.) As you can likely predict, it's a Molotov cocktail in the works: As you eat excessive carbohydrates while lowering your cholesterol intake, you incite a steady and punishing overproduction of cholesterol in the body. The only way to stop this internal pathway run amok is to consume an adequate amount of dietary cholesterol and back way off on carbs. Which explains why my "high-cholesterol" patients who go on my diet can safely return their levels to normal without drugs while enjoying cholesterol-rich foods.

IS THERE SUCH A THING AS DANGEROUSLY "HIGH CHOLESTEROL"?

Cholesterol is at most a minor player in coronary heart disease and represents an extremely poor predictor of heart attack risk. Over half of all patients hospitalized with a heart attack have cholesterol levels in the "normal" range. The idea that aggressively lowering cholesterol levels will somehow magically and dramatically reduce heart attack risk has now been fully and categorically refuted. The most important modifiable risk factors related to heart attack risk include smoking, excess alcohol consumption, lack of aerobic exercise, overweight, and a diet high in carbohydrates.

So when I see patients with cholesterol levels of, say, 240 mg/dl or higher, it's almost a given that they will have received a prescription for a cholesterol-lowering medication from their general practitioners. This is wrong in thought and action. As discussed, cholesterol is one of the most critical chemicals in human physiology, especially as it relates to brain health. The

best lab report to refer to in determining one's health status is hemoglobin A1C, not cholesterol levels. It is rarely, if ever, appropriate to consider high cholesterol alone to be a significant threat to health.

A good question: Who suffers from high cholesterol? Thirty years ago, the answer was anyone whose cholesterol level was more than 240 and who had other risk factors, such as being overweight and smoking. The definition changed after the Cholesterol Consensus Conference in 1984; then it became anyone with a cholesterol level over 200, regardless of other risk factors. Today, the threshold is down to 180. And if you've had a heart attack, you're in a totally different category: No matter how low your cholesterol level is, you'll likely be prescribed a cholesterol-lowering medicine and told to maintain a low-fat diet.

SEX ED: IT'S ALL IN YOUR HEAD

Okay. So cholesterol is a good thing. But it's not just about your brain's wit, physical health, and future longevity. It's also about a very important part of your lifestyle that typically gets shoved under the carpet in serious health books. I'm talking about your sex life. How sparky is it?

Although I'm a neurologist, I treat a fair share of people who suffer from sexual dysfunction and are either impotent and avoid sex altogether or who hoard bottles of pills to help them out. You know about these pills — the ones that get advertised like candy on the evening news and promise to transform your sex life. My patients with sexual health woes obviously don't come to me for that specifically, but it's a noted problem when I ask them about that part of their life in addition to any neurological issues I am addressing.

A quick anecdote. A seventy-five-year-old retired engineer came to see me with a variety of complaints, including insomnia and depression. He had been taking sleeping pills for the past forty years, and his depression had worsened in the two to three months prior to his appointment. At the time I saw him, he was actually taking a few drugs: an antidepressant, a medication for anxiety, and Viagra for erectile dysfunction. I first checked him for gluten sensitivity and discovered, to his surprise, a positive panel. He agreed to adopt a gluten-free, high-fat diet, and we next communicated by telephone after about one month. That's when he had magnificent news: His depression had improved, and he no longer needed to take Viagra in order to have sex with his wife. He thanked me very much.

Most everyone can agree that sex has everything to do with what's going on in the brain. It's an act that's deeply tied to emotions, impulses, and thoughts. But it's also inexorably connected to hormones and blood

chemistry. Without question, if you're depressed and not sleeping well, like my engineer patient, sex is the last thing on your mind. But one of the most common reasons for impotence is actually neither of these two conditions. It's what I've been talking about through much of this chapter: abysmally low cholesterol levels. And the studies to date have achieved proof of concept: Unless you have healthy testosterone levels (this goes for both men and women), you're not going to have a hot sex life, if any at all. And what makes testosterone? Cholesterol. What are millions of Americans doing today? Lowering their cholesterol levels through diet and/or taking statins. In the meanwhile, they are lowering their libido and ability to perform. Is it any wonder there's an epidemic of erectile dysfunction (ED) and demand for ED drugs today, not to mention (perhaps ironically) testosterone replacement therapy?

Plenty of studies have confirmed these connections.³⁶ Decreased libido is one of the most common complaints among those taking statins, and lab reports have repeatedly demonstrated low testosterone in statin consumers.³⁷ Those on statins are twice as likely to have low testosterone levels. Luckily, this condition is reversible by stopping the statin and increasing cholesterol intake. There are actually two ways that statins can lower testosterone. The first is by directly lowering levels of cholesterol. The second is by interfering with the enzymes that create active testosterone.

One study that came out in the United Kingdom in 2010 looked at 930 men with coronary heart disease and measured their testosterone levels.³⁸ Low testosterone was found in 24 percent of the patients, and the risk of dying was 12 percent in those with normal testosterone but 21 percent in those with low testosterone. The conclusion was staring them in the face: If you have coronary disease and low testosterone, you're at much greater risk of dying. So again we are giving statin medications to lower cholesterol, which lowers testosterone ... and lower testosterone increases the risk of dying. Is this crazy or what?

I rest my case.

THE SWEET TRUTH

I've covered a lot of ground in this chapter, mostly dealing with the role of fats on the brain. But we now have to ask ourselves the following: What happens when you inundate the brain with sugar instead? I started this chapter by addressing the ills of carbohydrates on our bodies, but I've saved the conversation about this particularly devastating carbohydrate for its own chapter. Unfortunately, this is a subject area that's gotten remarkably little

attention in the press. We increasingly hear about the relationship between sugar and “diabesity,” sugar and heart disease, sugar and fatty livers, sugar and metabolic syndrome, sugar and risk for cancer, etc. ... but sugar and brain dysfunction? It’s time you got up close and personal with your brain on sugar.

CHAPTER 4

Not a Fruitful Union

This Is Your Brain on Sugar (Natural or Not)

Evolutionarily, sugar was available to our ancestors as fruit for only a few months a year (at harvest time), or as honey, which was guarded by bees. But in recent years, sugar has been added to nearly all processed foods, limiting consumer choice. Nature made sugar hard to get; man made it easy.

— DR. ROBERT LUSTIG ET AL.^{[1](#)}

SUGAR. WHETHER IT'S FROM A LOLLIPOP, Lucky Charms, or a slice of cinnamon-raisin bread, we all know that this particular carbohydrate is not the healthiest of ingredients, especially when it's consumed in excess or comes from refined or processed forms such as high-fructose corn syrup. We also know that sugar is partly to blame for challenges with our waistlines, appetites, blood sugar control, obesity, type 2 diabetes, and insulin resistance. But what about sugar and the brain?

In 2011, Gary Taubes, the author of *Good Calories, Bad Calories*,^{[2](#)} wrote an excellent piece for the *New York Times* titled “Is Sugar Toxic?”^{[3](#)} In it, he chronicles not just the history of sugar in our lives and food products, but the evolving science behind understanding how sugar affects our bodies. In particular, he showcases the work of Robert Lustig, a specialist in pediatric hormone disorders and the leading expert in childhood obesity at the University of California, San Francisco, School of Medicine, who makes a case for sugar being a “toxin” or a “poison.” But Lustig doesn't harp so much on the consumption of these “empty calories”; his issue with sugar is that it has unique characteristics, specifically in the way the various kinds of sugar are metabolized by the human body.

Lustig likes to use the phrase “isocaloric but not isometabolic” when he describes the difference between pure glucose, the simplest form of sugar, and table sugar, which is a combination of glucose and fructose. (Fructose, which I'll get to in a moment, is a type of naturally occurring sugar found exclusively in fruit and honey.) When we eat 100 calories of glucose from a

potato, for instance, our bodies metabolize it differently — and experience different effects — than if we were to eat 100 calories of sugar comprising half glucose and half fructose. Here's why.

Your liver takes care of the fructose component of sugar. Glucose from other carbs and starches, on the other hand, is processed by every cell in the body. So consuming both types of sugar (fructose and glucose) at the same time means your liver has to work harder than if you ate the same number of calories from glucose alone. And your liver will also be taxed if it's hit with liquid forms of these sugars, those found in soda or fruit juices. Drinking liquid sugar is not the same as eating, say, an equivalent dose of sugar in whole apples. Fructose, by the way, is the sweetest of all naturally occurring carbohydrates, which probably explains why we love it so much. But contrary to what you might think, it has the lowest glycemic index of all the natural sugars. The reason is simple: Because the liver metabolizes most of the fructose, it has no immediate effect on our blood sugar and insulin levels, unlike sugar or high-fructose corn syrup, whose glucose ends up in general circulation and raises blood sugar levels. Don't let that fact fool you, however. While fructose may not have an immediate effect, it has more long-term effects when it's consumed in sufficient quantities from unnatural sources. And the science is well documented: Consuming fructose is associated with impaired glucose tolerance, insulin resistance, high blood fats, and hypertension. And because it does not trigger the production of insulin and leptin, two key hormones in regulating our metabolism, diets high in fructose lead to obesity and its metabolic repercussions. (I will clarify later what this means for those who enjoy eating lots of fruit. Fortunately, for the most part, you can have your fruit and eat it, too. The quantity of fructose in most whole fruit pales in comparison to the levels of fructose in processed foods.)

We hear about sugar and its effects on virtually every other part of the body *except for the brain*. This, again, is a subject area that's gotten remarkably little attention in the press. The questions to ask, and which I'll answer in this chapter, are:

- What does excess sugar consumption do to the brain?
- Can the brain distinguish between different types of sugar? Does it "metabolize" sugar differently depending on where it's coming from?

If I were you, I'd put down that biscuit or biscotti you're having with your coffee and buckle up. After reading this chapter, you'll never look at a piece of fruit or sugary treat in quite the same way.

Let me begin by defining a few terms. What, exactly, is the difference between table sugar, fruit sugar, high-fructose corn syrup, and the like? Good question. As I've said, fructose is a type of sugar naturally found in fruit and honey. It's a monosaccharide just like glucose, whereas table sugar (sucrose) — the white granulated stuff we sprinkle in coffee or dump into a bowl of cookie batter — is a combination of glucose and fructose, thus making it a *disaccharide* (two molecules linked together). High-fructose corn syrup, which is what we find in our sodas, juices, and many processed foods, is yet another combination of molecules dominated by fructose — it's 55 percent fructose, 42 percent glucose, and 3 percent other carbohydrates.

High-fructose corn syrup was introduced in 1978 as a cheap replacement for table sugar in beverages and food products. No doubt you've heard about it in the media, which has attacked this artificially manufactured ingredient for being the root cause of our obesity epidemic. But this misses the point. While it's true we can blame our bulging waistlines and diagnoses of related conditions such as obesity and diabetes on our consumption of high-fructose corn syrup, we can also point to all other sugars as well since they are all carbohydrates, a class of biomolecules that share similar characteristics. Carbohydrates are simply long chains of sugar molecules, as distinguished from fat (chains of fatty acids), proteins (chains of amino acids), and DNA. But you already know that not all carbohydrates are created equal. And not all carbohydrates are treated equally by the body. The differentiating feature is how much a certain carbohydrate will raise blood sugar and, in effect, insulin. Meals that are higher in carbohydrate, and especially those that are higher in simple glucose, cause the pancreas to increase its insulin output in order to store the blood sugar in cells. During the course of digestion, carbohydrates are broken down and sugar is liberated into the bloodstream, again causing the pancreas to increase its output of insulin so glucose can penetrate cells. Over time, higher levels of blood sugar will cause increased production of insulin output from the pancreas.

The carbs that trigger the biggest surge in blood sugar are typically the most fattening for that very reason. They include anything made with refined flour (breads, cereals, pastas); starches such as rice, potatoes, and corn; and liquid carbs like soda, beer, and fruit juice. They all get digested quickly because they flood the bloodstream with glucose and stimulate a surge in insulin, which then packs away the excess calories as fat. What about the carbs in a vegetable? Those carbs, especially the ones in leafy green vegetables such as broccoli and spinach, are tied up with indigestible fiber, so they take longer to break down. The fiber essentially slows down the process, causing a slower funneling of glucose into the bloodstream. Plus, vegetables

contain more water relative to their weight than starches, and this further dampens the blood sugar response. When we eat whole fruits, which obviously contain fruit sugar, the water and fiber will also “dilute” the blood sugar effect. If you take, for instance, a peach and a baked potato of equal weight, the potato will have a much bigger effect on blood sugar than the watery, fibrous peach. That’s not to say the peach, or any other fruit for that matter, won’t cause problems.⁴

Our caveman ancestors did in fact eat fruit, but not every day of the year. We haven’t yet evolved to be able to handle the copious amounts of fructose we consume today — especially when we get our fructose from manufactured sources. Natural fruit has relatively little sugar, when compared to, say, a can of regular soda, which has a massive amount. A medium-sized apple contains about 44 calories of sugar in a fiber-rich blend thanks to the pectin; conversely, a 12-ounce can of Coke or Pepsi contains nearly twice that — 80 calories of sugar. If you juice several apples and concentrate the liquid down to a 12-ounce beverage (thereby losing the fiber), lo and behold you get a blast of 85 sugar calories that could just as well have come from a soda. When that fructose hits the liver, most of it gets converted to fat and sent to our fat cells. No wonder fructose was called the most fattening carbohydrate more than forty years ago by biochemists. And when our bodies get used to performing this simple conversion with every meal, we can fall into a trap in which even our muscle tissue becomes resistant to insulin. Gary Taubes describes this domino effect brilliantly in *Why We Get Fat*: “So, even though fructose has no immediate effect on blood sugar and insulin, over time — maybe a few years — it is a likely cause of insulin resistance and thus the increased storage of calories as fat. The needle on our fuel-partitioning gauge will point toward fat storage, even if it didn’t start out that way.”⁵

The most disturbing fact about our addiction to sugar is that when we combine fructose and glucose (which we often do when we eat foods made with table sugar), the fructose might not do much to our blood sugar right away, but the accompanying glucose takes care of that — stimulating insulin secretion and alerting the fat cells to prepare for more storage. The more sugars we eat, the more we tell our bodies to transfer them to fat. This happens not only in the liver, leading to a condition called fatty liver disease, but elsewhere in the body as well. Hello, love handles, muffin tops, beer bellies, and the worst kind of fat of all — invisible visceral fat that hugs our vital organs.

I love how Taubes draws a parallel between the cause-and-effect relationship uniting carbohydrates and obesity, and the link between smoking and cancer: If the world had never invented cigarettes, lung cancer would be a

rare disease. Likewise, if we didn't eat such high-carb diets, obesity would be a rare condition.⁶ I'd bet that other related conditions would be uncommon as well, including diabetes, heart disease, dementia, and cancer. And if I had to name the kingpin here in terms of avoiding all manner of disease, I'd say "diabetes." That is to say, don't become diabetic.

THE DEATH KNELL IN DIABETES

I cannot reiterate enough the importance of avoiding the path to diabetes, and if diabetes is already a card you're playing with, then keeping blood sugars balanced is key. In the United States there are close to 11 million adults sixty-five years or older with type 2 diabetes, which speaks volumes to the magnitude of the potential catastrophe on our hands if all of these individuals — plus the ones who haven't been officially diagnosed yet — develop Alzheimer's. The data that supports the relationship between diabetes and Alzheimer's disease is profound, but it's important to understand that diabetes is a powerful risk factor for simple cognitive decline. This is especially true in individuals whose diabetes is under poor control. Case in point: In June 2012, the *Archives of Neurology* published an analysis of 3,069 elderly adults to determine if diabetes increased the risk of cognitive decline and if poor blood sugar control was related to worse cognitive performance.⁷ When first evaluated, about 23 percent of the participants actually had diabetes, while the remaining 77 percent did not (the researchers intentionally chose a "diverse group of well-functioning older adults"). A small percentage, however, of that 77 percent went on to develop diabetes during the nine-year study. At the beginning of the study a panel of cognitive tests was performed, and over the next nine years these tests were repeated.

The conclusion stated the following: "Among well-functioning older adults, DM [diabetes mellitus] and poor glucose control among those with DM are associated with worse cognitive function and greater decline. This suggests that severity of DM may contribute to accelerated cognitive aging." The researchers demonstrated a fairly dramatic difference in the rate of mental decline among those with diabetes as compared to the non-diabetics. More interesting still, they also noted that even at the start of the study, baseline cognitive scores of the diabetics were already lower than the controls.' The study also found a direct relationship between the rate of cognitive decline and higher levels of hemoglobin A1C, a marker of blood glucose control. The authors stated, "Hyperglycemia (elevated blood sugar) has been proposed as a mechanism that may contribute to the association between diabetes and reduced cognitive function." They went on to state that

“hyperglycemia may contribute to cognitive impairment through such mechanisms as the formation of advanced glycation end products, inflammation, and microvascular disease.”

Before I get to explaining what advanced glycation end products are and how they are formed, let's turn to one more study done earlier, in 2008. This one, from the Mayo Clinic and published in the *Archives of Neurology*, looked at the effects of the duration of diabetes. In other words, does how long one has diabetes play into the severity of cognitive decline? You bet. The numbers are eye-popping: According to the Mayo's findings, if diabetes began before a person was sixty-five years old, the risk for mild cognitive impairment was increased by a whopping 220 percent. And the risk of mild cognitive impairment in individuals who had diabetes for ten years or longer was increased by 176 percent. If people were taking insulin, their risk was increased by 200 percent. The authors described a proposed mechanism to explain the connection between persistent high blood sugar and Alzheimer's disease: “increased production of advanced glycation end products.”⁸ Just what are these glycation end products cropping up in the medical literature in reference to cognitive decline and accelerated aging? I mentioned them briefly in the previous chapter, and I will explain their significance in the next section.

ONE MAD COW AND MANY CLUES TO NEUROLOGICAL DISORDERS

I remember the hysteria that swept the globe in the mid-1990s when fears of mad cow disease spread quickly as people in Britain began to document evidence of transmission of the disease from cattle to humans. In the summer of 1996, Peter Hall, a twenty-year-old vegetarian, died of the human form of mad cow, called variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. He'd contracted it from eating beef burgers as a child. Soon thereafter, other cases were confirmed, and countries, including the United States, started banning beef imports from Britain. Even McDonald's stopped serving burgers momentarily in some areas until scientists could ferret out the origins of the outbreak and measures were taken to eradicate the problem. Mad cow disease, also called bovine spongiform encephalopathy, is a rare bovine disorder that infects cattle; the nickname comes from the odd behavior sick cows express when infected. Both forms are types of prion diseases, which are caused by deviant proteins that inflict damage as they spread aggressively from cell to cell.

While mad cow disease isn't usually classified with classic neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's, Parkinson's, and Lou Gehrig's disease, all the conditions have a similar deformation in the structure

of proteins needed for normal, healthy functioning. Granted, Alzheimer's, Parkinson's, and Lou Gehrig's disease are not transmissible to people like mad cow is, but they nevertheless result in similar features that scientists are just beginning to understand. And it all boils down to deformed proteins.

Much in the way we now know that dozens of degenerative diseases are linked by inflammation, we also know that dozens of those same diseases — including type 2 diabetes, cataracts, atherosclerosis, emphysema, and dementia — are linked to deformed proteins. What makes prion diseases so unique is the ability of those abnormal proteins to confiscate the health of other cells, turning normal cells into misfits that lead to brain damage and dementia. It's similar to cancer in that one cell hijacks the normal regulation of another cell and creates a new tribe of cells that don't act like healthy ones. Working in laboratories with mice, scientists are finally collecting evidence to show that major neurodegenerative conditions follow parallel patterns.⁹

Proteins are among the most important structures in the body — they practically form and shape the entire body itself, carrying out functions and acting like master switches to our operating manual. Our genetic material, or DNA, codes for our proteins, which are then produced as a string of amino acids. They need to achieve a three-dimensional shape to carry out their tasks, such as regulating the body's processes and guarding against infection. Proteins gain their shape through a special folding technique; in the end, each protein achieves a distinctive shape that helps determine its unique function.

Obviously, deformed proteins cannot serve their function well or at all, and unfortunately, mutant proteins cannot be fixed. If they fail to fold properly into their correct shape, at best they are inactive and at worst, toxic. Usually cells have built-in technology to extinguish deformed proteins, but aging and other factors can interfere with this process. When a toxic protein is capable of inducing other cells to create mis-folded proteins, the result can be disastrous. Which is why the goal for many scientists today is to find a way to stop the cell-to-cell spread of misshapen proteins and literally halt these diseases in their tracks.

Stanley Prusiner, the director of the Institute for Neurodegenerative Diseases at the University of California, San Francisco, discovered prions, which earned him the Nobel Prize in 1997. In 2012, he was part of a team of researchers who authored a landmark paper presented in the *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* that showed that amyloid-beta protein associated with Alzheimer's shares prion-like characteristics.¹⁰ In their experiment, they were able to follow the progression of disease by injecting amyloid-beta protein into one side of mice's brains and observing its effects. Using a light-generating molecule, they could see the marauding proteins

collect as the mice's brains lit up — a toxic chain of events that's similar to what happens in the Alzheimer's brain.

This discovery holds clues to more than brain disease. Scientists who focus on other areas of the body also have been looking at the impact of shape-shifting proteins. In fact, “mad” proteins may play a role in a range of diseases. Type 2 diabetes, for example, can be seen from this perspective when we consider the fact that people with diabetes have demented proteins in their pancreas that can negatively affect insulin production (which begs the question: Does chronic high blood sugar cause the deformation?). In atherosclerosis, the cholesterol buildup typical of the disease could be caused by protein mis-folding. People with cataracts have rogue proteins that collect in the eye lens. Cystic fibrosis, a hereditary disorder caused by a defect on the DNA, is characterized by improper folding of the CFTR protein. And even a type of emphysema owes its devastation to abnormal proteins that build up in the liver and never reach the lungs.

Okay, so now that we've established that wayward proteins play a role in disease and especially neurological degeneration, the next question is, *what causes the proteins to mis-fold?* With a condition like cystic fibrosis, the answer is more clear-cut because we have identified a specific genetic defect. But what about other ailments that have mysterious origins, or that don't manifest until later in life? Let's turn to those glycation end products.

Glycation is the biochemical term for the bonding of sugar molecules to proteins, fats, and amino acids; the spontaneous reaction that causes the sugar molecule to attach itself is sometimes referred to as the Maillard reaction. Louis Camille Maillard first described this process in the early 1900s.^{[11](#)} Although he predicted that this reaction could have an important impact on medicine, not until 1980 did medical scientists turn to it when trying to understand diabetic complications and aging.

This process forms advanced glycation end products (commonly shortened, appropriately, to AGEs), which cause protein fibers to become misshapen and inflexible. To get a glimpse of AGEs in action, simply look at someone who is prematurely aging — someone with a lot of wrinkles, sagginess, discolored skin, and a loss of radiance for their age. What you're seeing is the physical effect of proteins hooking up with renegade sugars, which explains why AGEs are now considered key players in skin aging.^{[12](#)} Or check out a chain-smoker: The yellowing of the skin is another hallmark of glycation. Smokers have fewer antioxidants in their skin, and the smoking itself increases oxidation in their bodies and skin. So they cannot combat the by-products of normal processes like glycation because their bodies' antioxidant potential is severely weakened and, frankly, overpowered by the volume of oxidation. For

most of us, the external signs of glycation show up in our thirties, when we've accumulated enough hormonal changes and environmental oxidative stress, including sun damage.

Glycation is an inevitable fact of life, just like inflammation and free radical production to some degree. It's a product of our normal metabolism and fundamental in the aging process. We can even measure glycation using technology that illuminates the bonds formed between sugars and proteins. In fact, dermatologists are well versed in this process. With Visia complexion-analysis cameras, they can capture the difference between youth and age just by taking a fluorescent image of children and comparing it to the faces of older adults. The children's faces will come out very dark, indicating a lack of AGEs, whereas the adults' will beam brightly as all those glycation bonds light up.

Clearly, the goal is to limit or slow down the glycation process. Many anti-aging schemes are now focused on how to reduce glycation and even break those toxic bonds. But this cannot happen when we consume a high-carb diet, which speeds up the glycation process. Sugars in particular are rapid stimulators of glycation, as they easily attach themselves to proteins in the body (and here's a good bit of trivia: The number one source of dietary calories in America comes from high-fructose corn syrup, which increases the rate of glycation by a factor of ten).

When proteins become glycated, at least two important things happen. First, they become much less functional. Second, once proteins become bonded to sugar, they tend to attach themselves to other similarly damaged proteins and form cross-linkages that further inhibit their ability to function. But perhaps far more important is that once a protein is glycated, it becomes the source of a dramatic increase in the production of free radicals. This leads to the destruction of tissues, damaging fat, other proteins, and even DNA. Again, glycation of proteins is a normal part of our metabolism. But when it's excessive, many problems arise. High levels of glycation have been associated with not only cognitive decline, but also kidney disease, diabetes, vascular disease, and, as mentioned, the actual process of aging itself.¹³ Keep in mind that any protein in the body is subject to being damaged by glycation and can become an AGE. Because of the significance of this process, medical researchers around the world are hard at work trying to develop various pharmaceutical ways to reduce AGE formation. But clearly, the best way to keep AGEs from forming is to reduce the availability of sugar in the first place.

Beyond just causing inflammation and free radical-mediated damage, AGEs are associated with damage to blood vessels and are thought to explain

the connection between diabetes and vascular issues. As I noted in the previous chapter, the risk of coronary artery disease is dramatically increased in diabetics, as is the risk of stroke. Many individuals with diabetes have significant damage to the blood vessels supplying the brain, and while they may not have Alzheimer's, they may suffer from dementia caused by this blood supply issue.

Earlier I explained that LDL — the so-called bad cholesterol — is an important carrier protein bringing vital cholesterol to brain cells. Only when it becomes oxidized does it wreak havoc on blood vessels. And we now understand that when LDL becomes *glycated* (it's a protein, after all), this dramatically increases its oxidation.

The link between oxidative stress and sugar cannot be overstated. When proteins are glycated, the amount of free radicals formed is increased fiftyfold; this leads to loss of cellular function and eventually cell death.

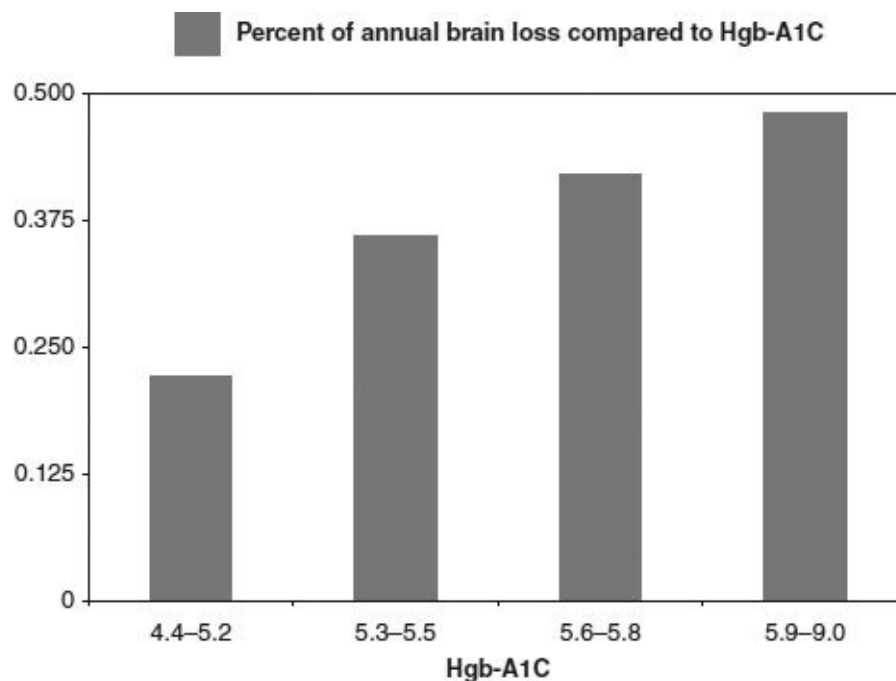
This calls our attention to the powerful relationship between free radical production, oxidative stress, and cognitive decline. We know that oxidative stress is directly related to brain degeneration.¹⁴ Studies show that damage to lipids, proteins, DNA, and RNA by free radicals happens early in the journey to cognitive impairment, and long before signs of serious neurological disorders such as Alzheimer's, Parkinson's, and Lou Gehrig's disease. Sadly, by the time a diagnosis is made, the damage is already done. The bottom line is that if you want to reduce oxidative stress and the action of free radicals harming your brain, you have to reduce the glycation of proteins. Which is to say, you have to diminish the availability of sugar. Pure and simple.

Most doctors employ a measurement of one glycated protein routinely in their medical practice. I've already mentioned it: hemoglobin A1C. This is the same standard laboratory measurement used to measure blood sugar control in diabetics. So, while your doctor may be measuring your hemoglobin A1C from time to time to get an understanding of your blood sugar control, the fact that it's glycated protein has vast and extremely important implications for your brain health. But hemoglobin A1C represents more than just a simple measurement of average blood sugar control over a 90- to 120-day period.

Hemoglobin A1C is the protein found in the red blood cell that carries oxygen and binds to blood sugar, and this binding is increased when blood sugar is elevated. While hemoglobin A1C doesn't give a moment-to-moment indication of what the blood sugar is, it is extremely useful in that it shows what the "average" blood sugar has been over the previous ninety days. This is why hemoglobin A1C is frequently used in studies that try to correlate blood sugar control to various disease processes like Alzheimer's, mild cognitive impairment, and coronary artery disease.

It's well documented that glycated hemoglobin is a powerful risk factor for diabetes, but it's also been correlated with risk for stroke, coronary heart disease, and death from other illnesses. These correlations have been shown to be strongest with any measurement of hemoglobin A1C above 6.0 percent.

We now have evidence to show that elevated hemoglobin A1C is associated with changes in brain size. In one particularly profound study, published in the journal *Neurology*, researchers looking at MRIs to determine which lab test correlated best with brain atrophy found that the hemoglobin A1C demonstrated the most powerful relationship.¹⁵ When comparing the degree of brain tissue loss in those individuals with the lowest hemoglobin A1C (4.4 to 5.2) to those having the highest hemoglobin A1C (5.9 to 9.0), the brain loss in those individuals with the highest hemoglobin A1C was almost doubled during a six-year period. So hemoglobin A1C is far more than just a marker of blood sugar balance — and it's absolutely under your control!



An ideal hemoglobin A1C would be in the 4.8 to 5.4 range. Keep in mind that reducing carbohydrate ingestion, weight loss, and physical exercise will ultimately improve insulin sensitivity and lead to a reduction of hemoglobin A1C.

You also should know that there's now documented evidence proving a direct relationship between hemoglobin A1C and the future risk of depression. One study looked at more than four thousand men and women whose average age was sixty-three years and showed a direct correlation between hemoglobin A1C and "depressive symptoms."¹⁶ Poor glucose metabolism was described as a risk factor for the development of depression

in these adults. The bottom line: The glycation of proteins is bad news for the brain.

EARLY ACTION

As I've already described, having normal blood sugar levels may mean that the pancreas is working overtime to keep that blood sugar normal. Based upon this understanding, you can see that high insulin levels will happen long before blood sugar rises and a person becomes diabetic. That's why it's so important to check not only your fasting blood sugar, but also your fasting insulin level. An elevated fasting insulin level is an indicator that your pancreas is trying hard to normalize your blood sugar. It's also a clear signal that you are consuming too much carbohydrate. And make no mistake about it: Even being insulin resistant is a powerful risk factor for brain degeneration and cognitive impairment. It's not good enough to look at the diabetes data as it relates to brain disease and be confident that your risk has been ameliorated because you are not diabetic. And if your blood sugar happens to be normal, the only way you will know if you are insulin resistant is to have your fasting blood insulin level checked. Period.

Need more evidence? Consider a study done a few years ago that looked at 523 people aged seventy to ninety years who did not have diabetes or even elevated blood sugar.¹⁷ Many of them were insulin resistant, however, as determined by their fasting insulin levels. The study revealed that those individuals who were insulin resistant had a dramatically increased risk of cognitive impairment compared to those within the normal range. Overall, the lower the insulin level, the better. The average insulin level in the United States is about 8.8 micro international units per milliliter (μIU/mL) for adult men and 8.4 for women. But with the degree of obesity and carbohydrate abuse in America, it's safe to say that these "average" values are likely much higher than what should be considered ideal. Patients who are being very careful about their carbohydrate intake might have insulin levels indicated on their lab report as less than 2.0. This is an ideal situation — a sign that the individual's pancreas is not being overworked, blood sugars are under excellent control, there is very low risk for diabetes, and there is no evidence of insulin resistance. The important point is that if your fasting insulin level is elevated — anything over five should be considered elevated — it can improve, and I will show you how to do that in [chapter 10](#).

THE FATTER YOU ARE, THE SMALLER YOUR BRAIN

Most everyone has a pretty good idea that carrying around extra weight is unhealthy. But if you needed just one more reason to drop the excess pounds, perhaps the fear of losing your mind — physically and literally — will help motivate you.

When I was studying to be a doctor, the prevailing wisdom was that fat cells were primarily storage bins where unwanted masses of excess could hang out silently on the sidelines. But that was a grossly misguided perspective. Today we know that fat cells do more than simply store calories; they are far more involved in human physiology. Masses of body fat form complex, sophisticated hormonal organs that are anything but passive. You read that right: Fat is an *organ*.^{[18](#)} And it could very well be one of the body's most industrious organs, serving a lot of functions beyond keeping us warm and insulated. This is especially true of visceral fat — the fat wrapped around our internal, “visceral” organs such as the liver, kidneys, pancreas, heart, and intestines. Visceral fat has also gotten a lot of press lately: We know now that this type of fat is the most devastating to our health. We may lament our thunder thighs, under-arm curtains, love handles, cellulite, and big butts, but the worst kind of fat is the kind many of us cannot even see, feel, or touch. In extreme cases we do see it in the bulging bellies and muffin tops that are the outward signs of fat-enveloped internal organs belowdecks. (For this very reason, waist circumference is often a measurement of “health,” as it predicts future health challenges and mortality; the higher your waist circumference, the higher your risk for disease and death.^{[19](#)})

It's well documented that visceral fat is uniquely capable of triggering inflammatory pathways in the body as well as signaling molecules that disrupt the body's normal course of hormonal actions.^{[20](#)} This, in turn, keeps the cascade of negative effects from visceral fat going. In addition, visceral fat does more than just generate inflammation down the road through a chain of biological events; visceral fat itself becomes inflamed. This kind of fat houses tribes of inflammatory white blood cells. In fact, the hormonal and inflammatory molecules produced by visceral fat get dumped directly into the liver, which, as you can imagine, responds with another round of ammunition (i.e., inflammatory reactions and hormone-disrupting substances). Long story short: More than merely a predator lurking behind a tree, it is an enemy that is armed and dangerous. The number of health conditions now linked to visceral fat is tremendous, from the obvious ones such as obesity and metabolic syndrome to the not-so-obvious — cancer, autoimmune disorders, and brain disease.

The dots connecting excessive body fat, obesity, and brain dysfunction are not hard to follow given the information you've already learned in this book.

Excessive body fat increases not only insulin resistance, but also the production of inflammatory chemicals that play directly into brain degeneration.

In a 2005 study, the waist-to-hip ratios of more than 100 individuals were compared to structural changes in their brains.²¹ The study also looked at brain changes in relation to fasting blood sugar and insulin levels. What the authors wanted to determine was whether or not a relationship existed between the brain's structure and the size of a person's belly. And the results were striking. Essentially, the larger a person's waist-to-hip ratio (i.e., the bigger the belly), the smaller the brain's memory center, the hippocampus. The hippocampus plays a critical role in memory, and its function is absolutely dependent upon its size. As your hippocampus shrinks, your memory declines. More striking still, the researchers found that the higher the waist-to-hip ratio, the higher the risk for small strokes in the brain, also known to be associated with declining brain function. The authors stated: "These results are consistent with a growing body of evidence that links obesity, vascular disease, and inflammation to cognitive decline and dementia." Other studies since then have confirmed the finding: For every excess pound put on the body, the brain gets a little smaller. How ironic that the bigger the body gets, the smaller the brain gets.

In a joint research project between UCLA and the University of Pittsburgh, neuroscientists examined brain images of ninety-four people in their seventies who had participated in an earlier study of cardiovascular health and cognition.²² None of the participants had dementia or other cognitive impairments, and they were followed for five years. What these researchers found was that the brains of obese people — defined by having a body mass index above 30 — looked sixteen years older than their healthy counterparts of normal weight. And those who were overweight — defined by having a body mass index between 25 and 30 — looked eight years older than their leaner counterparts. More specifically, the clinically obese people had 8 percent less brain tissue, while the overweight had 4 percent less brain tissue compared to normal-weight individuals. Much of the tissue was lost in the frontal and temporal lobe regions of the brain, the place from which we make decisions and store memories, among other things. The authors of the study rightfully pointed out that their findings could have serious implications for aging, overweight, or obese individuals, including a heightened risk for Alzheimer's disease.

Without a doubt, vicious cycles are at play here, each of which is contributing to the other. Genetics could affect one's propensity to overeat and gain weight, and this then factors into activity levels, insulin resistance, and

risk for diabetes. Diabetes then affects weight control and blood sugar balance. Once a person becomes diabetic and sedentary, it's inevitable that a breakdown in tissues and organs occurs, and not just in the brain. What's more, once the brain begins to degenerate and physically shrink, it begins to lose its ability to function properly. That is to say, the brain's appetite and weight-control centers won't be firing on all cylinders and could actually be misfiring, and this again feeds the vicious cycle.

It is important to understand that weight loss needs to happen right now, as changes take place as soon as an individual begins to carry excess body fat. To some degree, we can predict whose brain will suffer thirty years from now simply by measuring body fat. In a 2008 report, California scientists combed through the records of more than sixty-five hundred people who were evaluated in the mid-1960s to 1970s.²³ They wanted to know: Who got dementia? When these folks were first evaluated an average of thirty-six years earlier, various measurements were made of their bodies to determine how much fat they had. These included the size of the belly, thigh circumference, and height and weight. Roughly three decades later, those individuals who had more body fat had a dramatically increased risk for dementia. Of the original group, 1,049 were diagnosed as having dementia. When the scientists compared the group with the least body fat to the group with the highest body fat, they found that those in the highest body fat group had an almost twofold increased risk of dementia. The authors reported, "As is the case for diabetes and cardiovascular disease, central obesity [belly fat] is also a risk factor for dementia."

THE POWER OF WEIGHT LOSS (BESIDES WHAT YOU ALREADY KNOW)

As study after study has proven, weight loss through dieting can have a dramatic effect on insulin signaling and insulin sensitivity. In one report, doctors evaluated 107 obese individuals at least sixty-five years of age over a one-year period and studied how they responded in terms of insulin to an oral dose of glucose.²⁴ The researchers wanted to measure the difference among three distinct groups: those who were put on a weight-loss program, those who were assigned an exercise program, and those put on a diet *and* exercise program. A fourth group of people was designated as the control for purposes of further comparison. The results six months later? People in the weight-loss group had a 40 percent increase in their insulin sensitivity. This also happened in the group that went on a weight-loss program and exercised. The group that didn't embark on a weight-loss program but did exercise, however, showed no change in insulin sensitivity. When the study was finally concluded after one

year, insulin sensitivity had improved by a whopping 70 percent in those who lost weight; people who were exercising while on a diet and lost weight had an 86 percent improvement in their sensitivity to insulin. But the third group, the one that engaged in physical activity without dieting and losing weight, remained far behind. Even after one year they had absolutely no change in their insulin sensitivity.

So the take-home lesson is clear: You can improve insulin sensitivity and reduce your risk of diabetes (not to mention all manner of brain diseases) simply by making lifestyle changes that melt that fat away. And if you add exercise to the dieting, you'll stand to gain even bigger benefits. By now you should know that I'm going to prescribe a low-carb diet rich in healthy fats, including cholesterol. And don't take my word for it. Just turn to the latest studies proving the power of this type of diet. Last year the *Journal of the American Medical Association* published the effects of three popular diets on a group of overweight or obese young adults.²⁵ Each of the participants tried each of the diets for a month — one was low-fat (60 percent of the calories came from carbohydrate, 20 percent from fat, and 20 percent from protein), one was low-glycemic (40 percent of the calories came from carbohydrate, 40 percent from fat, and 20 percent from protein), and the third was a very low carbohydrate diet (10 percent of the calories came from carbohydrates, 60 percent from fat, and 30 percent from protein). All of the diets provided the same number of calories, but those on the low-carb, high-fat diet burned the most calories. The study also looked at insulin sensitivity during the four-week period on each diet, finding that the low-carb diet triggered the biggest improvement in insulin sensitivity — almost twice that of the low-fat diet. Triglycerides, a powerful cardiovascular risk marker, averaged 66 in the low-carb group and 107 in the low-fat group. (As an aside, elevated triglyceride levels are also a hallmark of too many carbs in the diet.) The authors pointed out that the lab results they measured in the low-fat diet showed changes in people's blood chemistry that left them vulnerable to weight gain. Clearly, the best diet for maintaining weight loss is a low-carbohydrate, high-fat one.

Many other studies have arrived at the same conclusion: A low-carb, high-fat diet will outperform a low-fat, high-carb diet any day, and by virtually every measure in the body, from its internal chemistry to its external waistline. And when we consider all of the parameters that affect health, and specifically brain health, such as weight loss, insulin sensitivity, blood sugar control, and even C-reactive protein, a low-carbohydrate diet is substantially more effective than any other diet. Those other diets will result in outcomes that heighten your risk for a multitude of brain dysfunctions, from daily nuisances like headaches to chronic migraines, anxiety disorders, ADHD, and

depression. And if the thought of being as sharp as a whip until your last breath on earth isn't enough to motivate you, then consider all the benefits that your heart (and virtually every organ in your body) will gain by ditching a low-fat diet. In March 2013, the *New England Journal of Medicine* published a large landmark study showing that people age fifty-five to eighty who ate a Mediterranean diet were at lower risk of heart disease and stroke — by as much as 30 percent — than those on a typical low-fat diet.²⁶ The results were so profound that scientists halted the study early because the low-fat diet proved too damaging for the people eating lots of commercially baked goods rather than sources of healthy fats. The Mediterranean diet is famous for being rich in olive oil, nuts, beans, fish, fruits and vegetables, and even wine with meals. Although it does allow room for grains, it's very similar to my dietary protocol. In fact, if you modify the traditional Mediterranean diet by removing all gluten-containing foods and limiting sugary fruits and non-gluten carbs, you have yourself the perfect grain-brain-free diet.

AN APPLE A DAY?

No, an apple a day may not keep the doctor away. Now that I've held so many of your favorite foods in contempt, I can hear the uncertainty: "How can the body live on fat and never get fat?" Ah, it's an excellent question. I'm going to tackle that very conundrum shortly and settle any confusion about how you can live — and thrive — on fats. It sounds absurd to think we can live on virtually no carbs but copious amounts of fat and cholesterol in our diet. But we can, and we should if we're going to protect our genome. Despite what food marketers would have you believe, we've had a fat-based diet shaping our genome for the past 2.6 million years. Why change that? As you've already read, when we did we got *fat*.

The story of reversing this trend and gaining back the lean, toned, lithe bodies we're designed to have, and a sharp brain to boot, starts with a look at the brain's fundamental properties.

CHAPTER 5

The Gift of Neurogenesis and Controlling Master Switches

How to Change Your Genetic Destiny

The brain is a far more open system than we ever imagined, and nature has gone very far to help us perceive and take in the world around us. It has given us a brain that survives in a changing world by changing itself.

— DR. NORMAN DOIDGE (THE BRAIN THAT CHANGES ITSELF)

WE ARE DESIGNED to be smart people our entire lives. The brain is supposed to work well until our last breath. But most of us assume, wrongly, that with age comes cognitive decline. We think it's an inevitable part of aging, much like hearing loss or wrinkles. This impression is a pernicious fallacy. The truth is that we're living a life that's not suited to what we're genetically supposed to do. Period. The diseases we see nowadays are largely brought on by our lifestyle not being in harmony with our genetic predisposition. But we can change this and return our DNA back to its original programming. Better yet, we can re-program some of our DNA to function even more advantageously. And this isn't science fiction.

How often do we hear people say things like, "I'll probably get [insert disease here] because it runs in my family." No doubt our genetic heritage does play a role in determining our risk for various health conditions. But what leading-edge medical research now understands is that we have the power to change our genetic destiny.

One of the hottest areas of research currently gaining momentum is epigenetics, the study of particular sections of your DNA (called "marks") that essentially tell your genes when and how strongly to express themselves. Like conductors of an orchestra, these epigenetic marks are the remote control not only to your health and longevity but also to how you pass your genes on to future generations. Our day-to-day lifestyle choices have a profound effect on the activity of our genes. And this is empowering. We now know that the

food choices we make, the stress we experience or avoid, the exercise we get or avoid, the quality of our sleep, and even the relationships we choose actually choreograph to a significant degree which of our genes are active and which remain suppressed. Here's what is most compelling: We can change the expression of more than 70 percent of the genes that have a direct bearing on our health and longevity.

This chapter explains how we can enhance the expression of our “healthy genes” while turning off those genes that trigger such detrimental events as inflammation and the production of free radicals. The genes involved in causing inflammation and free radical production are strongly influenced by fat and carbohydrate dietary choices, and this information will further support the recommendations made in the upcoming chapters.

THE STORY OF NEUROGENESIS

Does every cocktail you drink really kill thousands of brain cells? As it turns out, we are not stuck with the number of neurons we're born with, or even those that develop in early childhood. We can grow new neurons throughout our entire lives. We can also fortify existing brain circuits and create entirely new and elaborate connections, too, with new brain cells. I've been lucky enough to participate in this discovery that has overturned generations of conventional wisdom in neuroscience, though many people still believe otherwise. During my college years I was given the opportunity to explore the brain using technology that was just in its infancy. It was in the early 1970s, and the Swiss had begun developing microscopes that could be used by neurosurgeons performing delicate brain procedures. While this technology was evolving and surgeons in the United States were eager to adopt this new approach to brain surgery, a problem soon became evident.

While learning to actually use the operating microscope was relatively easy, the neurosurgeons found that they were becoming somewhat lost in terms of understanding the anatomy of the brain from this new microscopic perspective. I was nineteen years old and just starting my junior year in college when I received a phone call from Dr. Albert Rhoton, chairman of the Department of Neurological Surgery at Shands Teaching Hospital in Gainesville, Florida. Dr. Rhoton was leading the way for expansion of the use of the operating microscope in the United States and wanted to create the first anatomy text of the brain as seen through the microscope. He invited me to spend the following summer studying and mapping the brain, and it was from this research that we eventually published a series of research papers and

book chapters that gave neurosurgeons the needed roadmap to more carefully operate on the brain.

In addition to anatomy, we also had the opportunity to explore and develop other aspects of microneurosurgery, including innovative instruments and procedures. Spending so much time behind the microscope, I had become quite adept at manipulating and repairing extremely small blood vessels that, prior to the use of the microscope, would have been destroyed during brain operations, often with dire consequences. Our lab had gained international recognition for its achievements in this new and exciting field and often attracted visiting professors from around the world. And it was soon after a delegation of Spanish neurosurgeons had visited that I found myself accepting an invitation to continue my research at the prestigious Centro Ramón y Cajal in Madrid, Spain. Their microneurosurgery program was in its infancy, but their team was dedicated, and I felt honored to be assisting them in their groundwork efforts, especially those dealing with understanding the brain's blood supply. The hospital was named in honor of Dr. Santiago Ramón y Cajal, a Spanish pathologist and neuroscientist working at the turn of the twentieth century, who is still regarded as the father of modern neurology; images of him on the walls were numerous and there was clearly a deep sense of pride among my Spanish colleagues that they could claim such an influential scientist as their own. In 1906 he won the Nobel Prize in medicine for his pioneering investigations of the microscopic structure of the brain. Today, hundreds of his handmade drawings are still used for educational purposes.

During my visit to Madrid I was compelled to learn more about Dr. Cajal and came to deeply respect his explorations of human brain anatomy and function. One of his major tenets held that brain neurons were unique compared to other cells of the body, not only because of their function, but also because they lacked the ability to regenerate. The liver, for example, perpetually regenerates by growing new liver cells, and similar regeneration of cells occurs in virtually all other tissues, including skin, blood, bone, and intestines.

I admit that I was pretty well sold on this theory that brain cells do not regenerate, but I did wonder back then why it wouldn't make sense for the brain to retain the ability to regenerate — to have the ability to grow new brain neurons. After all, researchers at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology had shown previously that neurogenesis, the growth of new brain neurons, occurred throughout the entire lifetime in rats. And so much about the human body is regeneration; it relies on continuous self-renewal to survive. For example, certain blood cells turn over every few hours, taste

receptor cells get replaced every ten days, skin cells turn over every month, and muscle cells take about fifteen years to completely renew themselves. In the last decade, scientists have determined that the heart muscle — an organ that we long thought was “fixed” since birth — does in fact experience cellular turnover as well.¹ When we’re twenty-five years old, about 1 percent of our heart muscle cells are replaced every year; but by the age of seventy-five, that rate has fallen to less than half a percent per year. Hard to believe that we’ve only recently come to identify and understand this phenomenon in the body’s blood-pumping machine. And now we’ve finally decoded the brain and discovered its self-renewing qualities.

Dr. Cajal couldn’t possibly have known just how malleable and “plastic” the brain could be given the technology he was working with. At that time, DNA hadn’t been decoded yet and there was little understanding of the impact genes could have on functionality. In his seminal 1928 book *Degeneration and Regeneration of the Nervous System*, Cajal stated: “In adult centers the nerve paths are something fixed, ended, immutable. Everything may die, nothing may be regenerated.”² If I could change his statement to reflect what we know today, I’d swap out the words *fixed*, *ended*, and *immutable* for the absolute opposite: *pliable*, *open-ended*, and *alterable*. I’d also say that brain cells may die, but they most certainly *can* be regenerated. Indeed, Cajal made great contributions to our knowledge of the brain and how neurons work; he was even ahead of his time in trying to understand the pathology of inflammation. But his belief that the brain was somehow stuck with its bill of goods is one that pervaded for most of human history — until modern science in the late twentieth century proved just how flexible the brain could be.

In my previous book, *Power Up Your Brain: The Neuroscience of Enlightenment*, Dr. Alberto Villoldo and I told the story of how science has come to understand the gift of neurogenesis in humans. Although scientists have long proven neurogenesis in various other animals, it wasn’t until the 1990s that scientists began focusing exclusively on trying to demonstrate neurogenesis in humans.³ In 1998, the journal *Nature Medicine* published a report by Swedish neurologist Peter Eriksson in which he claimed that within our brains exists a population of neural stem cells that are continually replenished and can differentiate into brain neurons.⁴ And indeed, he was right: We all experience brain “stem cell therapy” every minute of our lives. This has led to a new science called neuroplasticity.

The revelation that neurogenesis occurs in humans throughout our lifetimes has provided neuroscientists around the world an exciting new reference point, with implications spanning virtually the entire array of brain disorders.⁵ It also has instilled hope among those searching for clues to stopping,

reversing, or even curing progressive brain disease. The idea of regenerating brain neurons has established a new level of excitement in scientists dedicated to studying neurodegenerative disorders. It's also paved the way for novel treatments, transforming the lives of people who have suffered from serious brain injuries or disease. Look no further than Norman Doidge's *The Brain That Changes Itself: Stories of Personal Triumph from the Frontiers of Brain Science* to hear of real-life tales that prove just how pliable our brains — and our human potential — are.⁶ If stroke victims can learn to speak again and people born with partial brains can train their brains to rewire themselves to work as a whole, imagine the possibilities for those of us who just hope to preserve our mental faculties.

The burning question: How can we grow new brain neurons? In other words, what influences neurogenesis? And what can we do to enhance this natural process?

The process, as one might expect, is controlled by our DNA. Specifically, a gene located on chromosome 11 codes for the production of a protein called “brain-derived neurotrophic factor,” or BDNF. BDNF plays a key role in creating new neurons. But beyond its role in neurogenesis, BDNF protects existing neurons, ensuring their survivability while encouraging synapse formation, the connection of one neuron to another — a process vital for thinking, learning, and higher levels of brain function. Studies have demonstrated decreased levels of BDNF in Alzheimer's patients, which, based on an understanding of how BDNF works, should not come as a surprise.⁷ What is perhaps more surprising is the association of BDNF with a variety of neurological conditions, including epilepsy, anorexia nervosa, depression, schizophrenia, and obsessive-compulsive disorder.

We now have a firm understanding of the factors that influence our DNA to produce BDNF. And fortunately, these factors are mostly under our direct control. The gene that turns on BDNF is activated by a variety of lifestyle habits, including physical exercise, caloric restriction, following a ketogenic diet, and the addition of certain nutrients like curcumin and the omega-3 fat DHA.

This is an empowering lesson because all of these factors are within our grasp, representing choices we can make to flip the switch that spurs the growth of new brain cells. Let's explore them individually.

THIS IS YOUR (NEW) BRAIN ON EXERCISE

I'm going to save the bulk of this conversation for [chapter 8](#), which explores in great depth the role of exercise in preventing cognitive decline. The science

is stunning. Physical exercise is one of the most potent ways of changing your genes; put simply, when you exercise, you literally exercise your genes. Aerobic exercise in particular not only turns on genes linked to longevity, but also targets the BDNF gene, the brain's "growth hormone." More specifically, aerobic exercise has been shown to increase BDNF, reverse memory decline in elderly humans, and actually increase growth of new brain cells in the brain's memory center. Exercise isn't just for trim looks and a strong heart; perhaps its most powerful effects are going on silently in the upstairs room where our brains reside. The emerging scientific view of human evolution and role of physical activity gives a whole new meaning to the phrase "jog your memory." A million years ago, we triumphed over long distances because we could outrun and outwalk most other animals. This ultimately helped make us the clever human beings we are today. The more we moved, the fitter our brain became. And even today our brain's healthy functioning requires regular physical activity despite the passage of time and ills of the aging process.

CALORIC RESTRICTION

Another epigenetic factor that turns on the gene for BDNF production is calorie restriction. Extensive studies have clearly demonstrated that when animals are on a reduced-calorie diet (typically reduced by around 30 percent), their brain production of BDNF shoots up and they show dramatic improvements in memory and other cognitive functions. But it's one thing to read experimental research studies involving rats in a controlled environment and quite another to make recommendations to people based upon animal research. Fortunately, we finally have ample human studies demonstrating the powerful effect of reducing caloric intake on brain function, and many of these studies have been published in our most well-respected medical journals.⁸

In January 2009, for example, the *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* published a study in which German researchers compared two groups of elderly individuals — one that reduced their calories by 30 percent and another that was allowed to eat whatever they wanted. The researchers were interested in whether changes could be measured between the two groups' memory function. At the conclusion of the three-month study, those who were free to eat without restriction experienced a small, but clearly defined decline in memory function, while memory function in the group on the reduced-calorie diet actually increased, and profoundly so. Knowing that current pharmaceutical approaches to brain health are very limited, the authors

concluded, “The present findings may help to develop new prevention and treatment strategies for maintaining cognitive health into old age.”⁹

Further evidence supporting the role of calorie restriction in strengthening the brain and providing more resistance to degenerative disease comes from Dr. Mark P. Mattson at the National Institute on Aging, who reported,

Epidemiological data suggest that individuals with a low calorie intake may have a reduced risk of stroke and neurodegenerative disorders. There is a strong correlation between per capita food consumption and risk for Alzheimer's disease and stroke. Data from population-based case control studies showed that individuals with the lowest daily calorie intakes had the lowest risk of Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease.¹⁰

Mattson was referring to a population-based longitudinal prospective study of Nigerian families, in which some members moved to the United States. Many people believe that Alzheimer's disease is something you “get” from your DNA, but this particular study told a different story. It was shown that the incidence of Alzheimer's disease among Nigerian immigrants living in the United States was increased compared to their relatives who remained in Nigeria. Genetically, the Nigerians who moved to America were the same as their relatives who remained in Nigeria.¹¹ All that changed was their environment — specifically, their caloric intake. The research clearly focused on the detrimental effects that a higher caloric consumption has on brain health.

If the prospect of reducing your calorie intake by 30 percent seems daunting, consider the following: On average, we consume 523 more calories a day than we did in 1970.¹² Based on data from the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, the average American adult consumes 3,770 calories daily.¹³ Most would consider “normal” calorie consumption to be around 2,000 calories daily for women and 2,550 for men (with higher requirements depending on level of activity/exercise). A 30 percent cut of calories from an average of 3,770 per day equals 2,640 calories.

We owe a lot of our increased calorie consumption to sugar. The average American consumes between 100 and 160 pounds of refined sugar annually — reflecting upwards of a 25 percent hike in just the last three decades.¹⁴ So focusing on just reducing sugar intake may go a long way toward achieving a meaningful reduction in calorie intake, and this would obviously help with weight loss. Indeed, obesity is associated with reduced levels of BDNF, as is elevation of blood sugar. Remember, too, that increasing BDNF provides the added benefit of actually reducing appetite. I call that a double bonus.

But if the figures above still aren't enough to motivate you toward a diet destined to help your brain, in many respects, the same pathway that turns on

BDNF production can be activated by intermittent fasting. We'll fully explore fasting in [chapter 7](#).

The beneficial effects in treating neurologic conditions using caloric restriction actually aren't news for modern science, though; they have been recognized since antiquity. Calorie restriction was the first effective treatment in medical history for epileptic seizures. But now we know how and why it's so effective. It confers profound neuroprotection, increases the growth of new brain cells, and allows existing neural networks to expand their sphere of influence (i.e., neuroplasticity).

While low caloric intake is well documented in relation to promoting longevity in a variety of species — including roundworms, rodents, and monkeys — research has also demonstrated that lower caloric intake is associated with a decreased incidence of Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease. And the mechanisms by which we think this happens are via improved mitochondrial function and controlling gene expression.

Consuming fewer calories decreases the generation of free radicals while at the same time enhancing energy production from the mitochondria, the tiny organelles in our cells that generate chemical energy in the form of ATP (adenosine triphosphate). Mitochondria have their own DNA, and we know now that they play a key role in degenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's and cancer. Caloric restriction also has a dramatic effect on reducing apoptosis, the process by which cells undergo self-destruction. Apoptosis happens when genetic mechanisms within cells are turned on that culminate in the death of that cell. While it may seem puzzling at first as to why this should be looked upon as a positive event, apoptosis is a critical cellular function for life as we know it. Pre-programmed cell death is a normal and vital part of all living tissues, but a balance must be struck between effective and destructive apoptosis. In addition, caloric restriction triggers a decrease in inflammatory factors and an increase in neuroprotective factors, specifically BDNF. It also has been demonstrated to increase the body's natural antioxidant defenses by boosting enzymes and molecules that are important in quenching excessive free radicals.

In 2008, Dr. Veronica Araya from the University of Chile in Santiago reported on a study she performed during which she placed overweight and obese subjects on a three-month calorie-restricted diet, with a total reduction of 25 percent of calories.¹⁵ She and her colleagues measured an exceptional increase in BDNF production, which led to notable reductions in appetite. It's also been shown that the opposite occurs: BDNF production is decreased in animals on a diet high in sugar.¹⁶

One of the most well-studied molecules associated with caloric restriction and the growth of new brain cells is sirtuin-1 (SIRT1), an enzyme that regulates gene expression. In monkeys, increased SIRT1 activation enhances an enzyme that degrades amyloid — the starch-like protein whose accumulation is the hallmark of diseases like Alzheimer's.[17](#) In addition, SIRT1 activation changes certain receptors on cells, leading to reactions that have the overall effect of reducing inflammation. Perhaps most important, activation of the sirtuin pathway by caloric restriction enhances BDNF. BDNF not only increases the number of brain cells, but also enhances their differentiation into functional neurons (again, because of caloric restriction). For this reason, we say that BDNF enhances learning and memory.[18](#)

THE BENEFITS OF A KETOGENIC DIET

While caloric restriction is able to activate these diverse pathways, which are not only protective of the brain but enhance the growth of new neuronal networks, the same pathway can be activated by the consumption of special fats called ketones. By far the most important fat for brain energy utilization is beta-hydroxybutyrate (beta-HBA), and we'll explore this unique fat in more detail in the next chapter. This is why the so-called ketogenic diet has been a treatment for epilepsy since the early 1920s and is now being reevaluated as a very powerful therapeutic option in the treatment of Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, ALS, and even autism.[19](#), [20](#), [21](#) In one 2005 study, Parkinson's patients actually had a notable improvement in symptoms that rivaled medications and even brain surgery after being on a ketogenic diet for just twenty-eight days.[22](#) Specifically, consuming ketogenic fats (i.e., medium-chain triglycerides, or MCT oil) has been shown to impart significant improvement in cognitive function in Alzheimer's patients.[23](#) Coconut oil, from which we derive MCTs, is a rich source of an important precursor molecule for beta-hydroxybutyrate and is a helpful approach to treating Alzheimer's disease.[24](#) A ketogenic diet has also been shown to reduce amyloid in the brain,[25](#) and it increases glutathione, the body's natural brain-protective antioxidant, in the hippocampus.[26](#) What's more, it stimulates the growth of mitochondria and thus increases metabolic efficiency.[27](#)

While science typically has looked at the liver as the main source of ketone production in human physiology, it is now recognized that the brain can also produce ketones in special cells called astrocytes. These ketone bodies are profoundly neuroprotective. They decrease free radical production in the brain, increase mitochondrial biogenesis, and stimulate production of brain-

related antioxidants. Furthermore, ketones block the apoptotic pathway that would otherwise lead to self-destruction of brain cells.

Unfortunately, ketones have gotten a bad rap. I remember in my internship being awakened by a nurse to treat a patient in “diabetic ketoacidosis.” Physicians, medical students, and interns become fearful when challenged by a patient in such a state, and with good reason. It happens in insulin-dependent type 1 diabetics when not enough insulin is available to metabolize glucose for fuel. The body turns to fat, which produces these ketones in dangerously high quantities that become toxic as they accumulate in the blood. At the same time, there is a profound loss of bicarbonate, and this leads to significant lowering of the pH (acidosis). Typically, as a result, patients lose a lot of water due to their elevated blood sugars, and a medical emergency develops.

This condition is exceedingly rare, and again, it occurs in type 1 diabetics who fail to regulate their insulin levels. Our normal physiology has evolved to handle some level of ketones in the blood; in fact, we are fairly unique in this ability among our comrades in the animal kingdom, possibly because of our large brain-to-body weight ratio and the high-energy requirements of our brain. At rest, 20 percent of our oxygen consumption is used by the brain, which only represents 2 percent of the human body. In evolutionary terms, the ability to use ketones as fuel when blood sugar was exhausted and liver glycogen was no longer available (during starvation) became mandatory if we were to survive and continue hunting and gathering. Ketosis proved to be a critical step in human evolution, allowing us to persevere during times of food scarcity. To quote Gary Taubes, “In fact, we can define this mild ketosis as the normal state of human metabolism when we’re not eating the carbohydrates that didn’t exist in our diets for 99.9 percent of human history. As such, ketosis is arguably not just a natural condition but even a particularly healthful one.”²⁸

THE POWER OF MEDITATION

Meditating is far from a passive activity. Studies show that people who meditate are at much less risk of developing brain disease, among other maladies.²⁹ Learning to meditate takes time and practice, but it has multiple proven benefits, all of which play into our longevity. Visit my website at www.DrPerlmutter.com for resources on how to learn this technique.

CURCUMIN AND DHA

Curcumin, the main active ingredient in the spice turmeric, is currently the subject of intense scientific inquiry, especially as it relates to the brain. It has been used in traditional Chinese and Indian (ayurvedic) medicine for thousands of years. Although it is well known for its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-fungal, and antibacterial activities, its ability to increase BDNF in particular has attracted the interest of neuroscientists around the world, especially epidemiologists searching for clues to explain why the prevalence of dementia is markedly reduced in communities where turmeric is used in abundance. (More on curcumin in [chapter 7](#).)

Perhaps no other brain-boosting molecule is receiving as much attention lately as is docosahexaenoic acid (DHA). For the past several decades scientists have been aggressively studying this critical brain fat for at least three reasons. First, more than two-thirds of the dry weight of the human brain is fat, and of that fat, one quarter is DHA. Structurally, DHA is an important building block for the membranes surrounding brain cells, particularly the synapses, which lie at the heart of efficient brain function.

Second, DHA is an important regulator of inflammation. It naturally reduces the activity of the COX-2 enzyme, which turns on the production of damaging inflammatory chemicals. DHA also acts like a warrior in many ways when it enters hostile territory brought on by poor diet. It can fight back inflammation when a war ensues within the intestinal lining of a gut that is gluten sensitive. And it can block the damaging effects of a high-sugar diet, especially fructose, and help prevent metabolic dysfunctions in the brain that can result from too many carbs in the diet.

The third, and arguably most exciting, activity of DHA, is its role in regulating gene expression for the production of BDNF. Put simply, DHA helps orchestrate the production, connectivity, and viability of brain cells while at the same time enhancing function.

In a recently completed double-blind interventional trial, now known by its acronym MIDAS (Memory Improvement with DHA Study), a group of 485 individuals whose average age was seventy and who had mild memory problems were given a supplement containing DHA from marine algae or a placebo for six months.³⁰ At the end of the study, not only did blood DHA levels double in the group receiving the DHA, but the effects upon brain function were outstanding. Lead researcher of the study, Dr. Karin Yurko-Mauro, commented: “In our study, healthy people with memory complaints who took algal DHA capsules for six months had almost double the reduction in errors on a test that measures learning and memory performance versus those who took a placebo. ... The benefit is roughly equivalent to having the learning and memory skills of someone three years younger.”

Another study done of 815 individuals aged sixty-five to ninety-four years found that those who consumed the highest amount of DHA had a breathtaking 60 percent reduction in risk for developing Alzheimer's disease.³¹ This level of protection beats other popular fatty acids such as EPA and linolenic acid. The Framingham Heart Study pointed to a magnificent protective effect, too. When researchers compared blood levels of DHA in 899 men and women over a nearly ten-year period, during which some people developed dementia and Alzheimer's, they calculated a 47 percent lower risk for such diagnoses in those who maintained the highest levels of DHA in their blood.³² The researchers also found that consuming more than two servings of fish per week was associated with a 59 percent reduction in the occurrence of Alzheimer's disease.

When parents bring kids with behavioral problems to see me, I typically test their DHA levels in addition to looking for gluten sensitivity. Because of DHA's role in triggering BDNF, it is important in utero, as well as during infancy and childhood. But many kids today aren't getting enough DHA, and this is partly why we are seeing so many cases of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). I can't tell you how many times I've "cured" ADHD just by recommending a DHA supplement. In [chapter 10](#), I'll give you my dosage recommendations for this important supplement.

How can we increase our DHA? Our bodies can manufacture small amounts of DHA, and we are able to synthesize it from a common dietary omega-3 fat, alpha-linolenic acid. But it's hard to get all the DHA we need from the food we eat, and we can't rely on our body's natural production of it, either. We need at least 200 to 300 milligrams daily, but most Americans consume less than 25 percent of this target and would do well to go beyond this bare minimum. In [chapter 10](#), I'll offer my prescription for ensuring you're getting enough, and show you how to do so easily through dietary and supplementary sources.

INTELLECTUAL STIMULATION BOLSTERS NEW NETWORKS

If common knowledge didn't tell us that keeping the brain intellectually stimulated was a good thing for brain health, then crossword puzzles, continuing education courses, museum hunting, and even reading wouldn't be so popular. And, as it turns out, we know that challenging the mind fortifies new neural networks. Much in the way our muscles gain strength and functionality when physically challenged through exercise, the brain similarly rises to the challenges of intellectual stimulation. The brain becomes not only faster and more efficient in its processing capacity, but also better able to store

more information. Again, Dr. Mattson's summary of the proof from the literature is informative: "In regards to aging and age-related neurodegenerative disorders, the available data suggest that those behaviors that enhance dendritic complexity and synaptic plasticity also promote successful aging and decrease risk of neurodegenerative disorders."³³ He goes on to offer several examples. He notes that people with more education have a lower risk for Alzheimer's disease, and that protection from age-related neurodegenerative disorders in general likely begins during the first several decades of life. To this end, Dr. Mattson points to studies that show how individuals with the best linguistic abilities as young adults have a reduced risk for dementia. And he writes that "data from animal studies suggest that increased activity in neural circuits that results from intellectual activity stimulates the expression of genes that play a role in its neuroprotective effects."

THE ANTIOXIDANT HOAX³⁴

Advertisements proclaiming the virtues of an exotic fruit juice or extract that has the highest antioxidant content on earth are ubiquitous. You may wonder: Why all the hype? What is the benefit of ingesting an antioxidant? As you know by now, antioxidants help control marauding free radicals, and the brain generates tremendous amounts of free radicals but lacks the level of antioxidant protection found elsewhere in the body. Fortunately, we now understand how to compensate for this harmful disparity, but we can't do this by consuming antioxidants themselves. Our DNA can actually turn on the production of protective antioxidants in the presence of specific signals, and this internal antioxidant system is far more powerful than any nutritional supplement. So if you're eating exotic berries or downing vitamins E and C in a bid to outrun those free radicals, consider the following.

In 1956, Dr. Denham Harman demonstrated that free radicals are "quenched" by antioxidants, and the whole antioxidant industry was born.³⁵ His theories became more refined in 1972 when he recognized that mitochondria, the actual source of free radicals, are themselves most at risk of free radical damage, and that when mitochondrial function is compromised because of such damage, aging results.³⁶

Understanding the powerfully damaging effects of free radicals, especially as they relate to the brain, has encouraged researchers to seek out better antioxidants to provide the brain with a measure of protection in an attempt to not only stave off disease but also enhance function. For example, the relationship between mild cognitive impairment and free radicals was well

described in a 2007 report from Dr. William Markesbery of the University of Kentucky. In this report, Dr. Markesbery and colleagues demonstrated that cognitive function begins to decline early on — well before a brain disease is diagnosed. He also noted that elevated markers for oxidative damage to fat, protein, and even DNA correlate directly to the degree of mental impairment. Markesbery states, “These studies establish oxidative damage as an early event in the pathogenesis of Alzheimer’s disease that can serve as a therapeutic target to slow the progression or perhaps the onset of the disease.”³⁷

The authors continue, “Better antioxidants and agents used in combination to up-regulate defense mechanisms against oxidation will be required to neutralize the oxidative component of the pathogenesis of Alzheimer’s disease. It is most likely that to optimize these neuroprotective agents, they will have to be used in the pre-symptomatic phase of the disease.” In layman’s terms: We need to stimulate our body’s innate defense against free radicals long before the signs and symptoms of cognitive decline surface. And when we recognize that if we live to be eighty-five years or older, our risk for Alzheimer’s is an astounding 50 percent, there are a lot of people who should consider that they are “pre-symptomatic” right now.

So if our brain tissue is being assaulted by free radicals, does it make sense to load up on antioxidants? To answer the question, we need to consider our cells’ energy suppliers, the mitochondria. In the normal process of producing energy, each mitochondrion produces hundreds if not thousands of free radical molecules each day. Multiply that by the ten million billion mitochondria that we each possess and you come up with an unfathomable number, ten followed by eighteen zeros. So one might ask, how effective would, say, a vitamin E capsule or a tablet of vitamin C be when confronted by this onslaught of free radicals? Common antioxidants work by sacrificing themselves to become oxidized when faced with free radicals. Thus, one molecule of vitamin C is oxidized by one free radical. (This one-to-one chemistry is called a stoichiometric reaction by chemists.) Can you imagine how much vitamin C or other oral antioxidant it would take to neutralize the untold number of free radicals generated by the body on a daily basis?

Fortunately, and as one would expect, human physiology has developed its own biochemistry to create more protective antioxidants during times of high oxidative stress. Far from being entirely dependent on external food sources of antioxidants, our cells have their own innate ability to generate antioxidant enzymes on demand. High levels of free radicals turn on a specific protein in the nucleus called Nrf2, which essentially opens the door for the production of a vast array of not only our body’s most important antioxidants, but also

detoxification enzymes. So if excessive free radicals induce better antioxidant production through this pathway, then the next obvious question is, what else activates Nrf2?

Now this is where the story gets really exciting. New research has identified a variety of modifiable factors that can turn on the Nrf2 switch, activating genes that can produce powerful antioxidants and detoxification enzymes. Vanderbilt University's Dr. Ling Gao has found that when the omega-3 fats EPA and DHA are oxidized, they significantly activate the Nrf2 pathway. For years researchers have noted decreased levels of free radical damage in individuals who consume fish oil (the source of EPA and DHA), but with this new research, the relationship between fish oil and antioxidant protection is now clear. As Dr. Gao reported, "Our data support the hypothesis that the formation of ... compounds generated from oxidation of EPA and DHA in vivo can reach concentrations high enough to induce Nrf2-based antioxidant and ... detoxification defense systems."[38](#)

DETOXIFICATION: WHAT IT MEANS FOR BRAIN HEALTH

The human body produces an impressive array of enzymes that serve to combat the large number of toxins to which we are exposed in our external environments as well as those that are generated internally through the course of our normal metabolism. These enzymes are produced under the direction of our DNA and have evolved over hundreds of thousands of years.

Glutathione is regarded as one of the most important detoxification agents in the human brain. A fairly simple chemical, glutathione is a tripeptide, meaning it consists of only three amino acids. But despite its simplicity, glutathione has far-reaching roles in brain health. First, it serves as a major antioxidant in cellular physiology, not only helping to protect the cell from free radical damage, but also protecting the delicate and life-sustaining mitochondria. Glutathione is so important as an antioxidant that scientists often measure cellular glutathione levels as an overall indicator of cellular health. Glutathione is a powerful factor in detoxification chemistry as well, binding to various toxins to render them less noxious. Most important, glutathione serves as a substrate for the enzyme glutathione S-transferase, which is involved in transforming a multitude of toxins, making them more water soluble and thus more easily excreted. Deficiencies in the function of this enzyme are associated with a wide range of medical problems, including melanoma, diabetes, asthma, breast cancer, Alzheimer's disease, glaucoma, lung cancer, Lou Gehrig's disease, Parkinson's disease, and migraine headaches, to name a few. With this understanding of the cardinal roles of glutathione as both an antioxidant and a major player in detoxification, it makes sense to do everything possible to maintain and even enhance glutathione levels, which is exactly what my protocol will help you to achieve.

Not surprisingly, calorie restriction also has been demonstrated in a variety of laboratory models to induce Nrf2 activation. When calories are reduced in the diets of laboratory animals, they not only live longer (likely as a result of increased antioxidant protection), but also become remarkably resistant to the

development of several cancers. And it is this attribute that further supports the fasting program described in the next chapter.

Several natural compounds that turn on antioxidant and detoxification pathways through activation of the Nrf2 system have been identified. Among these are curcumin from turmeric, green tea extract, silymarin (milk thistle), bacopa extract, DHA, sulforaphane (contained in broccoli), and ashwagandha. Each of these substances is effective in turning on the body's innate production of key antioxidants, including glutathione. And if none of these compounds sounds like something you're used to having daily in your diet, then you'll be happy to know that coffee is one of the most powerful Nrf2 activators in nature. Several molecules in coffee, some of which are partly present in the raw material while others are generated during the roasting process, are responsible for this positive effect.[39](#)

Aside from antioxidant function, activation of the Nrf2 pathway turns on the genes to produce a vast array of protective chemicals that further support the body's detoxification pathways while dampening inflammation — all good things for brain health.

THE “ALZHEIMER’S GENE”

Since decoding the entire human genome more than a decade ago, we've managed to accumulate a great deal of evidence about which genes map to which outcomes, good or bad. If you were paying attention to the news in the early to mid-1990s, you probably learned that science had discovered an “Alzheimer's gene,” an association between a particular gene and the risk for Alzheimer's disease. And you wondered, *Do I have it?*

First, a quick lesson in biochemistry courtesy of the National Institutes of Health's Institute on Aging. Genetic mutations, or permanent changes in one or more specific genes, do not always cause disease. But some do, and if you inherit a disease-causing mutation, then you will likely develop the disease. Sickle cell anemia, Huntington's disease, and cystic fibrosis are examples of inherited genetic disorders. Sometimes, a genetic *variant* can occur whereby changes in a gene can lead to a disease, but not always. More often, the variant simply increases or decreases one's risk of developing a certain disease or condition. If a variant is known to increase risk but not necessarily trigger disease, it's called a genetic risk factor.[40](#)

To be clear, scientists have not identified a specific gene that causes Alzheimer's disease. But one genetic risk factor that appears to increase one's risk of developing the disease is associated with the apolipoprotein E (ApoE) gene on chromosome 19. It encodes the instructions for making a protein that

helps transport cholesterol and other types of fat in the bloodstream. It comes in several different forms, or alleles. The three main forms are ApoE ϵ 2, ApoE ϵ 3, and ApoE ϵ 4.

ApoE ϵ 2 is relatively rare, but if you inherit this allele, you're more likely to develop Alzheimer's disease later in life. ApoE ϵ 3 is the most common allele, but it's believed to neither increase nor decrease your risk. ApoE ϵ 4, however, is the one typically mentioned in the media and feared the most. In the general population, it's present in about 25 to 30 percent of people, and about 40 percent of all people with Alzheimer's carry this allele. So again, you're probably wondering if you carry this risk factor and what it can mean for you and your future.

Unfortunately, we don't know how this allele increases one's risk for Alzheimer's disease. The mechanism is poorly understood. People who are born with the ApoE ϵ 4 allele are more likely to develop the disease at an earlier age than those who do not carry it. It's important to remember that inheriting an ApoE ϵ 4 allele does not mean that your fate is sealed. You won't necessarily be stricken with Alzheimer's. Some people whose DNA contains the ApoE ϵ 4 allele never suffer from any cognitive decline. And there are plenty of people who develop Alzheimer's but who lack any of these genetic risk factors.

A simple DNA screening test can determine if you have this gene, but even if you do, there's something you can do about it. My protocol is all about taking charge of your brain's destiny, despite your DNA. I can't reiterate this enough: The fate of your health — and peace of mind, as the next chapter shows — is largely in your hands.

CHAPTER 6

Brain Drain

How Gluten Robs You and Your Children's Peace of Mind

As a rule, what is out of sight disturbs men's minds more seriously than what they see.

— JULIUS CAESAR

IF SUGARS AND GLUTEN-FILLED CARBS, including your daily whole-grain breads and favorite comfort foods, are slowly impinging on your brain's long-term health and functionality, what else can these ingredients do on a more short-term basis? Can they trigger changes in behavior, seize control of focus and concentration, and underlie some tic disorders and mood conditions like depression? Can they be the culprit in chronic headaches and even migraines?

Yes, they can. The facts of “grain brain” go far beyond just hampering neurogenesis and increasing your risk for cognitive challenges that will progress stealthily over time. As I've already hinted at throughout the previous chapters, a diet heavy in inflammatory carbs and low in healthy fats messes with the mind in more ways than one — affecting risk not just for dementia but for common neurological ailments such as ADHD, anxiety disorder, Tourette's syndrome, mental illness, migraines, and even autism.

Up until now, I've focused primarily on cognitive decline and dementia. Now, let's turn to gluten's destructive effects on the brain from the perspective of these common behavioral and psychological disorders. I'll start with the afflictions that are often diagnosed in young children, and then move on to cover a wider array of issues that are found in people of every age. One thing will be clear: The removal of gluten from the diet and the adoption of a grain-brain-free way of life is often the surest ticket to relief for these brain ailments that plague millions, and this simple “prescription” can often trump drug therapy.

GLUTEN'S ROLE IN BEHAVIORAL AND MOVEMENT DISORDERS

I first saw Stuart when he had just turned four years old. He was brought to my center by his mother, Nancy, whom I had known for several years; she was a physical therapist who had treated many of our patients. Nancy began by describing her concerns about Stuart and reported that although she really hadn't noticed anything wrong with her son, his preschool teacher felt he was unusually "active" and felt it would be a good idea to have him evaluated. I was not the first doctor to see him because of this concern. The week before visiting us, Stuart's mom had taken him to their pediatrician, who proclaimed that Stuart "was ADHD" and had written a prescription for Ritalin.

Nancy was rightfully concerned about placing her son on the drug, and this prompted her to look into other options. She began by explaining that her son had frequent anger outbursts and that he "shook uncontrollably when frustrated." She described how the preschool teacher complained that Stuart was unable to "stay on task," making me wonder exactly what tasks require undivided focus in a four-year-old.

Stuart's past medical history was revealing. He had suffered lots of ear infections and had been on countless rounds of antibiotics. At the time I evaluated him, he was on a six-month course of prophylactic antibiotics in hopes of reducing his risk for continued ear infections. But beyond the ear problems, Stuart persistently complained of joint pain, so much so that he was now also taking Naprosyn, a powerful anti-inflammatory, on a regular basis. I assumed Stuart hadn't been breast-fed and learned that my assumption was correct.

Three things of importance were noted during his examination. First, he was a mouth-breather, a sure indication of ongoing inflammation in the nasal passages. Second, his face demonstrated classic "allergic shiners," dark circles under the eyes that correlate with allergies. And third, he was indeed very active. He couldn't sit still for more than ten seconds, getting up to explore every inch of the exam room and tearing up the crinkly paper that adorns most doctors' examination tables.

Our laboratory evaluation wasn't extensive. We did a simple test for gluten sensitivity that measures the level of antibodies against gliadin, one of the wheat proteins. Not surprisingly, Stuart's level was 300 percent higher than the level considered normal by the laboratory.

Rather than reach for a drug to treat symptoms, we decided instead to target the cause of this child's issues, namely inflammation. Inflammation was playing a central role in virtually everything going on in this young boy's physiology, including his ear problems, joint issues, and inability to compose himself.

I explained to Nancy that we had to go gluten-free. And to help rebuild a healthy gut after his extensive antibiotic exposure, we needed to add some beneficial bacteria, probiotics, to his regimen. Finally, the omega-3 fat DHA was added to the list.

What happened next couldn't have been scripted any better. After two and a half weeks, Stuart's parents received a phone call from his preschool teacher thanking them for deciding to put him on medication as he had "vastly improved" in his demeanor. And his parents noted that he had become calm, more interactive, and was sleeping better. But his transformation wasn't due to medication. It was purely through diet that he was able to realize "vast" improvements in his health and attitude.

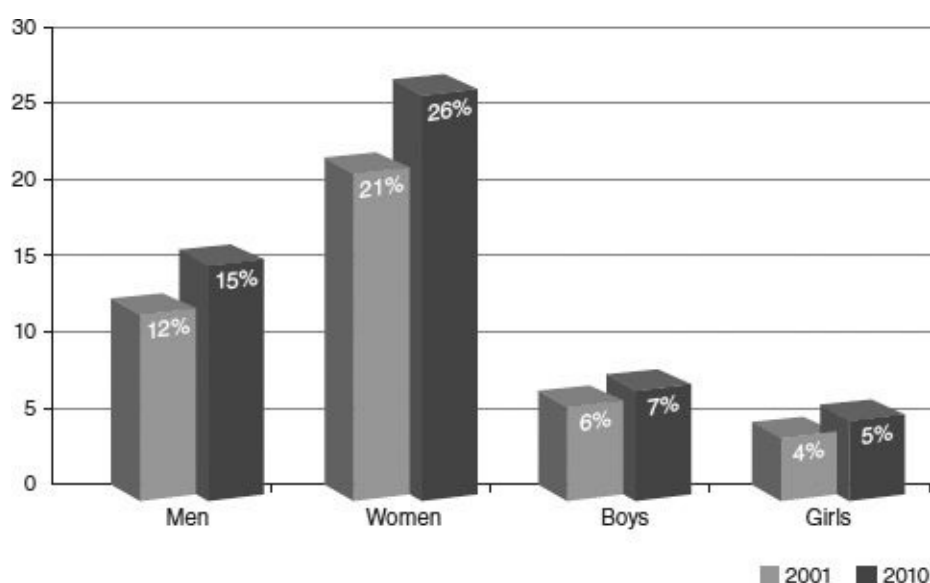
I received a note from Nancy two and a half years later stating: "We have been able to start him in school as the youngest student in the class. He has been able to excel in reading and math, and we do not anticipate any further problems with him being hyperactive. He has been growing so fast that he is one of the tallest kids in his class."

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is one of the most frequent diagnoses offered in the pediatrician's office. Parents of hyperactive children are led to believe that their children have some form of a disease that will limit their ability to learn. The medical establishment too often convinces parents that medication is the best "quick fix." The whole notion that ADHD is a specific disease easily remedied by a pill is convenient but alarming. In several schools throughout the United States as many as 25 percent of students are routinely receiving powerful, mind-altering medications, the long-term consequences of which have never been studied!

Although the American Psychiatric Association states in its *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* that 3 to 7 percent of school-aged children have ADHD, studies have estimated higher rates in community samples, and data from surveys of parents collected by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention paint a different picture.¹ According to new data from the CDC that came out in March 2013, nearly one in five high school-age boys in the United States and 11 percent of school-age children overall have been diagnosed with ADHD. That translates to an estimated 6.4 million children ages four through seventeen, reflecting a 16 percent increase since 2007 and a 53 percent rise in the past decade.² As reported by the *New York Times*, "About two-thirds of those with a current diagnosis receive prescriptions for stimulants like Ritalin or Adderall, which can drastically improve the lives of those with ADHD but can also lead to addiction, anxiety, and occasionally psychosis."³ This has prompted the American Psychiatric Association to consider changing its definition of ADHD so more people are

diagnosed ... and treated with drugs. Dr. Thomas R. Frieden, the director of the CDC, has said that the rising rates of stimulant prescriptions among children are like the overuse of pain medications and antibiotics in adults, and I agree. In the words of Dr. Jerome Groopman, a professor of medicine at Harvard Medical School and the author of *How Doctors Think*, who was interviewed for the *Times*, “There’s a tremendous push where if the kid’s behavior is thought to be quote-unquote abnormal — if they’re not sitting quietly at their desk — that’s pathological, instead of just childhood.”⁴ So what does it mean when our definition of childhood gets trampled by fuzzy diagnoses like ADHD?

Aside from the dramatic rise in the use of medications to treat ADHD over the past decade, the use of antianxiety drugs soared between 2001 and 2010: In children up to age nineteen, the use of antianxiety medication increased 45 percent in females and 37 percent in males. According to a report by Express Scripts called “America’s State of Mind,” the overall number of Americans taking mental health drugs to treat psychological and behavioral disorders has substantially increased since 2001. In 2010, the most recent data indicated that more than one in five adults was on at least one medication, up 22 percent from ten years earlier. Interestingly, women are far more likely to take a drug for a mental health condition than men. More than a quarter of the adult female population was on these drugs in 2010, as compared to just 15 percent of men.⁵ (Harvard researchers theorize that this could be due to hormonal changes in women that are linked to puberty, pregnancy, and menopause. Although depression can affect men and women equally, women are typically more likely to seek medical help.)



Percent of population using mental health medications 2001 vs. 2010

Eleven percent of Americans over age twelve take antidepressants, but the percentage skyrockets when you look at the number of women in their forties and fifties who have been prescribed antidepressants — a whopping 23 percent.

Given the soaring rates of mental and behavioral disorders for which powerful drugs are increasingly used, why isn't anyone drawing attention to the underlying reasons for this trend? And how can we propose solutions that don't entail hazardous pharmaceuticals? At the root of the problem? That sticky wheat protein, gluten. Although the jury is still out on the connections between gluten sensitivity and behavioral or psychological issues, we do know a few facts:

- People with celiac disease may be at increased risk for developmental delay, learning difficulties, tic disorders, and ADHD.[6](#)
- Depression and anxiety are often severe in patients with gluten sensitivity.[7](#), [8](#) This is primarily due to the cytokines that block production of critical brain neurotransmitters like serotonin, which is essential in regulating mood. With the elimination of gluten and often dairy, many patients have been freed from not just their mood disorders but other conditions caused by an overactive immune system, like allergies and arthritis.
- As many as 45 percent of people with autism spectrum disorders (ASD) have gastrointestinal problems.[9](#) Although not all gastrointestinal symptoms in ASD result from celiac disease, data shows an increased prevalence of celiac in pediatric cases of autism, compared to the general pediatric population.

The good news is that we can reverse many of the symptoms of neurological, psychological, and behavioral disorders just by going gluten-free and adding supplements like DHA and probiotics to our diet. And to illustrate the impact of such a simple, drug-free prescription, consider the story of KJ, whom I met more than a decade ago. She was five years old at the time and had been diagnosed with Tourette's syndrome, a type of tic spectrum disorder characterized by sudden, repetitive, non-rhythmic movements (motor tics) and verbal utterances that involve discrete muscle groups. Science says that the exact cause of this neurological anomaly is unknown, but we do know that, like many neuropsychiatric disorders, it has genetic roots that can be worsened by environmental factors. I think future research will bear out the truth behind many cases of Tourette's and show gluten sensitivity at play.

At KJ's initial office visit, her mother explained that in the previous year her daughter had developed involuntary contractions of her neck muscles for unknown reasons. She had received various types of massage therapy, which provided some improvement, but the problem would come and go. It eventually worsened to the point that KJ had aggressive movements in her

jaw, face, and neck. She also persistently cleared her throat and produced various grunting noises. Her primary doctor had diagnosed Tourette's syndrome.

When taking her history I noted that three years prior to the onset of her serious neurological symptoms, she'd begun to have bouts of diarrhea and chronic abdominal pain that were still with her. As you might expect, I ran a test for gluten sensitivity and indeed confirmed that this poor child had been living with undiagnosed sensitivity. Two days after starting a gluten-free diet, all of the abnormal movements, throat clearing, grunting sounds, and even abdominal pain had vanished. To this day, KJ is symptom-free and can no longer be considered a person with Tourette's syndrome. So compelling was her response that I often use this case when lecturing to health care professionals.

Warning: Drugs used to treat ADHD have resulted in cases of permanent Tourette's syndrome. Science has been documenting this since the early 1980s.[10](#) Now that we have the research to prove the powerful effect of going gluten-free, it's time we change — no, *make* — history.

Another case I'd like to share brings us back to ADHD. The parents of KM, a sweet nine-year-old girl, brought her to me because of classic signs of ADHD and "poor memory." What was interesting about her history was that her parents described her difficulties with thinking and focusing as "lasting for days," after which she would remain "fine" for several days. Academic evaluations indicated she was functioning at a mid-third-grade level. She seemed very composed and engaged, and when I reviewed her various achievement tests, I confirmed that she was indeed functioning at a mid-third-grade level, typical for her age.

Lab work identified two potential culprits in her challenges — gluten sensitivity and below-normal blood levels of DHA. I prescribed a strict gluten-free diet, 400 milligrams of supplemental DHA daily, and asked her to stop consuming aspartame, or NutraSweet, as she drank several diet sodas a day. Three months later, mom and dad were thrilled with her progress, and even KM was smiling ear to ear. New academic testing had her math calculation skills at the early fifth-grade level, overall academic skills at the mid-fourth-grade level, and story recall ability at the mid-eighth-grade level.

To quote a letter I received from her mother:

[KM] is completing third grade this year. Prior to removing gluten from her diet, academics, especially math, were difficult. As you can see, she is now soaring in math. Based upon this test, entering the fourth grade next year she would be at the top

of her class. The teacher indicated if she skipped fourth grade and went to fifth grade, she would be in the middle of the class. What an accomplishment!

Stories like this are commonplace in my practice. I've known about the "achievement effect" from going gluten-free for a long time, but thankfully the scientific proof is finally catching up to the anecdotal evidence. One study that really stood out for me was published in 2006; it documented a very revealing "before" and "after" story of people with ADHD who went gluten-free for six months. What I love about this particular study is that it examined a broad spectrum of individuals — from the age of three to fifty-seven years — and it employed a well-respected behavioral scale for ADHD called the Conner Scale Hypescheme. After six months, the improvements were significant:[11](#)

"No close attention to details" was reduced by 36 percent.

"Difficulty sustaining attention" was reduced by 12 percent.

"Fails to finish work" diminished by 30 percent.

"Easily distracted" diminished by 46 percent.

"Often blurts out answers and quotes" diminished by 11 percent.

The overall "average score" for those studied was lowered by 27 percent. My hope is that more people will join my crusade and take action to make us all healthier — and smarter.

HOW C-SECTIONS INCREASE RISK OF ADHD

Babies who are born via Cesarean section have a higher risk of developing ADHD, but why? Understanding the links in the chain give credence to the importance of healthy gut bacteria to sustain intestinal health and overall wellness. When a baby passes through the birth canal naturally, billions of healthy bacteria wash over the child, thereby inoculating the newborn with appropriate probiotics whose pro-health effects remain for life. If a child is born via C-section, however, he or she misses out on this shower of sorts, and this sets the stage for bowel inflammation and, therefore, an increased risk of sensitivity to gluten and ADHD later in life.[12](#)

New research is also giving moms another reason to breast-feed, as babies who are regularly breast-fed when they are first introduced to foods containing gluten have been shown to cut their risk of developing celiac disease by 52 percent, compared with those who are not being breast-fed.[13](#) One of the reasons for this might be that breast-feeding cuts the number of gastrointestinal infections, lowering the risk of a compromised lining of the bowel. It may also curb the immune response to gluten.

CAN AUTISM BE TREATED WITH A GLUTEN-FREE DIET?

I get a lot of questions about the possible relationship between gluten and autism. As many as 1 in 150 children born today will develop a form of the condition across a wide spectrum; in 2013, a new government report indicated that 1 in 50 school-age children today — or about a million children — have been diagnosed with some sort of autism.¹⁴ A neurological disorder that usually appears by the time a child is three years old, autism affects the development of social and communication skills. Scientists are trying to figure out the exact causes of autism, which is likely rooted in both genetic and environmental origins. A number of risk factors are being studied, including genetic, infectious, metabolic, nutritional, and environmental, but less than 10 to 12 percent of cases have specific causes that can be identified.

We know there is no magic-bullet cure for autism, just as there isn't for schizophrenia or bipolar disorder. These brain maladies are uniquely different, but they all share one underlying characteristic: inflammation, some of which could simply be the result of sensitivity to dietary choices. While it remains a topic of debate, some people who suffer from autism respond positively to the removal of gluten, sugar, and sometimes dairy from their diets. In one particularly dramatic case, a five-year-old diagnosed with severe autism was also found to have serious celiac disease that prevented him from absorbing nutrients. His autistic symptoms abated once he went gluten-free, prompting his doctors to recommend that all children with neurodevelopmental problems be assessed for nutritional deficiencies and malabsorption syndromes like celiac. In some cases, nutritional deficiencies that affect the nervous system may be the root cause of developmental delays that mirror autism.¹⁵

I'll admit that we lack the kind of gold-standard scientific research that we need to draw any conclusive connections, but it's worth taking a sweeping view of the topic and considering some logical inferences.

Let me begin by pointing out a parallel trend in the rise of autism and celiac disease. That is not to say the two are categorically linked, but it's interesting to note a similar pattern in sheer numbers. What these two conditions do indeed have in common, however, is the same fundamental feature: inflammation. As much as celiac is an inflammatory disorder of the gut, autism is an inflammatory disorder of the brain. It's well documented that autistic individuals have a higher level of inflammatory cytokines in their system. For this reason alone, it's worthwhile to ponder the effectiveness of reducing all antibody-antigen interactions in the body, including those involving gluten.

One study from the United Kingdom published in 1999 showed that when twenty-two autistic children on a gluten-free diet were monitored over a five-month period, a number of behavioral improvements were recorded. Most

alarming, when the children accidentally ingested gluten after they'd started their gluten-free diet, "the speed with which behavior changed as a result ... was dramatic and noticed by many parents."¹⁶ The study also noted that it took at least three months for the children to show an improvement in their behavior. For any parent regulating a child's diet, it's important to not lose hope early on if behavioral changes don't occur right away. Stay the course for three to six months before expecting any noticeable improvement.

Some experts have questioned whether or not gluten-containing foods and milk proteins can impart morphine-like compounds (exorphins) that stimulate various receptors in the brain and raise the risk not just for autism but for schizophrenia as well.¹⁷ More research is needed to flesh out these theories, but we can potentially reduce the risks of developing these conditions and better manage them.

Despite the lack of research, it is clear that the immune system plays a role in the development of autism, and that the same immune system connects gluten sensitivity to the brain. There's also something to be said for the "layering effect," where one biological issue ushers in another down a chain of events. If a child is sensitive to gluten, for instance, the immune response in the gut can lead to behavioral and psychological symptoms, and in autism this can lead to an "exacerbation of effects," as one team of researchers put it.¹⁸

DOWN AND OUT

It's a heartbreaking fact: Depression is the leading cause of disability worldwide. It's also the fourth leading contributor to the global burden of disease. The World Health Organization has estimated that by the year 2020, depression will become the second largest cause of suffering — next only to heart disease. In many developed countries, such as the United States, depression is already among the top causes of mortality.¹⁹

What's even more disquieting is the white elephant sitting in the medicine cabinets of many depressed people: the bottles of so-called antidepressants. Drugs like Prozac, Paxil, Zoloft, and countless others are by far the most common treatments for depression in the United States, despite the fact that they have been shown in many cases to be no more effective than a placebo and in some cases can be exceedingly dangerous and even lead to suicides. New science is starting to show just how murderous these drugs can be. To wit: When researchers in Boston looked at more than 136,000 women between the ages of fifty and seventy-nine, they discovered an undeniable link between those who were using antidepressants and their risk for strokes

and death in general. Women on antidepressants were 45 percent more likely to experience strokes and had a 32 percent higher risk of death from all causes.²⁰ The findings, published in the *Archives of Internal Medicine*, came out of the Women's Health Initiative, a major public health investigation focusing on women in the United States. And it didn't matter whether people were using newer forms of antidepressants, known as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), or older forms known as tricyclic antidepressants, such as Elavil. SSRIs are typically used as antidepressants, but they can be prescribed to treat anxiety disorders and some personality disorders. They work by preventing the brain from reabsorbing the neurotransmitter serotonin. By changing the balance of serotonin in the brain, neurons send and receive chemical messages better, which in turn boosts mood.

Unsettling studies have reached a tipping point, and some Big Pharma companies are backing away from antidepressant drug development (though they still make a lot of money in this department — to the tune of nearly 15 billion dollars a year). As recently reported in the *Journal of the American Medical Association*, “The magnitude of benefit of antidepressant medication compared with placebo increases with severity of depression symptoms and may be minimal or nonexistent, on average, in patients with mild or moderate symptoms.”²¹

This isn't to say that certain medications aren't helpful in some severe cases, but the implications are huge. Let's briefly review some other intriguing findings that will inspire anyone thinking of taking an antidepressant to try another route to happiness.

Low Mood and Low Cholesterol

I've already made my case for cholesterol in nourishing the brain's health. As it turns out, innumerable studies have demonstrated that depression runs much higher in people who have low cholesterol.²² And people who start taking cholesterol-lowering medication (i.e., statins) can become much more depressed.²³ I've witnessed this myself in my own practice. It's unclear if the depression is a direct result of the drug itself, or if it simply reflects a consequence of a lowered cholesterol level, which is the explanation I favor.

Studies dating back more than a decade show a connection between low total cholesterol and depression, not to mention impulsive behaviors including suicide and violence. Dr. James M. Greenblatt, a dually certified child and adult psychiatrist and author of *The Breakthrough Depression Solution*, wrote a beautiful article for *Psychology Today* in 2011 in which he summarized the evidence.²⁴ In 1993, elderly men with low cholesterol were found to have a

300 percent higher risk of depression than their counterparts with higher cholesterol.²⁵ A 1997 Swedish study identified a similar pattern: Among 300 otherwise healthy women aged thirty-one to sixty-five, those in the bottom tenth percentile for cholesterol levels experienced significantly more depressive symptoms than the others in the study with higher cholesterol levels.²⁶ In 2000, scientists in the Netherlands reported that men with long-term low total cholesterol levels experienced more depressive symptoms than those with higher cholesterol levels.²⁷ According to a 2008 report published in the *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, “low serum cholesterol may be associated with suicide attempt history.”²⁸ The researchers looked at a group of 417 patients who had attempted suicide — 138 men and 279 women — and compared them with 155 psychiatric patients who had not attempted suicide, as well as 358 healthy control patients. The study defined low serum cholesterol as less than 160. The results were quite dramatic. It showed that individuals in the low-cholesterol category were 200 percent more likely to have attempted suicide. And in 2009, the *Journal of Psychiatric Research* published a study that followed nearly forty-five hundred U.S. veterans for fifteen years.²⁹ Depressed men with low total cholesterol levels faced a sevenfold increased risk of dying prematurely from unnatural causes such as suicide and accidents than the others in the study. As noted earlier, suicide attempts have long been shown to run higher in people who have low total cholesterol.

I could go on and on showcasing studies from all around the world that arrive at the same conclusion for both men and women: If you’ve got low cholesterol, you’ve got a much higher risk of developing depression. And the lower you go, the closer you are to harboring thoughts of suicide. I don’t mean to say this in a casual manner, but we have documented proof now from many prestigious institutions of just how serious this cause-and-effect relationship is. This relationship is also well documented in the field of bipolar disorder.³⁰ Those who are bipolar are much more likely to attempt suicide if they have low cholesterol.

The Gluten Blues

Science has long observed an overlap between celiac disease and depression, much like the overlap between celiac and ADHD and other behavioral disorders. Reports of depression among celiac disease patients began appearing in the 1980s. In 1982 Swedish researchers reported that “depressive psychopathology is a feature of adult celiac disease.”³¹ A 1998 study

determined that about one-third of those with celiac disease also have depression.[32](#), [33](#)

In one particularly large study published in 2007, Swedish researchers again evaluated close to fourteen thousand celiac patients and compared them to more than sixty-six thousand healthy controls.[34](#) They wanted to know the risk of being depressed if you have celiac disease as well as the risk of having celiac disease if you are depressed. It turned out that celiac patients had an 80 percent higher risk of depression, and the risk of actually being diagnosed with celiac disease in individuals who were depressed was increased 230 percent. In 2011, another study from Sweden found that the risk of suicide among people with celiac disease was increased by 55 percent.[35](#) Yet another study done by a team of Italian researchers found that celiac disease ups one's risk of major depression by a stunning 270 percent.[36](#)

Today, depression is found in as many as 52 percent of gluten-sensitive individuals.[37](#) Adolescents with gluten sensitivity also face high rates of depression; those with celiac disease are particularly vulnerable, with a 31 percent risk of depression (only 7 percent of healthy adolescents face this risk).[38](#)

A logical question: How does depression relate to a damaged intestine? Once the lining of the gut is injured by celiac disease, it is ineffective at absorbing essential nutrients, many of which keep the brain healthy, such as zinc, tryptophan, and the B vitamins. What's more, these nutrients are necessary ingredients in the production of neurological chemicals such as serotonin. Also, the vast majority of feel-good hormones and chemicals are produced around your intestines by what scientists now call your "second brain."[39](#) The nerve cells in your gut are not only regulating muscles, immune cells, and hormones, but also manufacturing an estimated 80 to 90 percent of your body's serotonin. In fact, your intestinal brain makes more serotonin than the brain that rests in your skull.

Some of the more critical nutritional deficiencies that have been linked to depression include vitamin D and zinc. You already know the importance of vitamin D in a multitude of physiological processes, including mood regulation. Zinc similarly is a jack-of-all-trades in the body's mechanics. In addition to aiding the immune system and keeping memory sharp, zinc is required in the production and use of those mood-friendly neurotransmitters. This helps explain why supplemental zinc has been shown to enhance the effects of antidepressants in people with major depression. (Case in point: A 2009 study found people who hadn't been helped by antidepressants in the past finally reported improvements once they started to supplement with zinc.[40](#)) Dr. James M. Greenblatt, whom I mentioned earlier, has written

extensively on this topic and, like me, sees a lot of patients whose antidepressants have failed them. Once these patients avoid foods containing gluten, their psychological symptoms resolve. In another article for *Psychology Today*, Greenblatt writes: “Undiagnosed celiac disease can exacerbate symptoms of depression or may even be the underlying cause. Patients with depression should be tested for nutritional deficiencies. Who knows, celiac disease may be the correct diagnosis and not depression.”⁴¹ Many physicians ignore nutritional deficiencies and don’t think about testing for gluten sensitivity because they are so used to (and comfortable with) writing prescriptions for medication.

It’s important to note that a common thread in many of these studies is the length of time needed to turn things around in the brain. As with other behavioral disorders, such as ADHD and anxiety disorder, it can take at least three months for individuals to feel a total sense of relief. It’s critical to stay the course once embarking on a gluten-free diet. Don’t lose hope if you don’t have significant improvements right away. But do realize that you’re likely to experience a dramatic improvement in more ways than one. I once treated a professional tennis instructor who was crippled by depression and not improving despite the use of multiple antidepressant medications prescribed by other doctors. When I diagnosed his sensitivity to gluten and he adopted a gluten-free diet, he was transformed. His depressive symptoms evaporated, and he returned to peak performance on the court.

MENTAL STABILITY THROUGH DIET

All this talk about gluten’s insidious connection to common psychological disorders no doubt raises questions about gluten’s role in virtually every ailment that involves the mind, from the most common mental disorder in America — anxiety, which affects approximately forty million adults — to complex afflictions such as schizophrenia and bipolar disorder.

So what does the science say about gluten and our more perplexing mental illnesses such as schizophrenia and bipolar disorder? These are complicated maladies for which genetic and environmental factors are in play, but study after study demonstrates that people with these diagnoses often show gluten sensitivity as well. And if they have a history of celiac disease, they are at much higher risk of developing these psychiatric disorders than anyone else. What’s more, we now have documented evidence that mothers who are sensitive to gluten give birth to children who are nearly 50 percent more likely to develop schizophrenia later in life.

The study, published just last year in the *American Journal of Psychiatry*, adds to a growing body of evidence that many diseases that show up later in life originate before and shortly after birth. The authors of the study, who hail from Johns Hopkins and Sweden's Karolinska Institute, one of Europe's largest and most prestigious medical universities, stated the facts beautifully: "Lifestyle and genes are not the only factors that shape disease risk, and factors and exposures before, during, and after birth can help pre-program much of our adult health. Our study is an illustrative example suggesting that a dietary sensitivity before birth could be a catalyst in the development of schizophrenia or a similar condition twenty-five years later."[42](#)

If you're wondering how in the world they managed to make this connection, look no further than the details of their analyses, which entailed a look at birth records and neonatal blood samples of children born between 1975 and 1985 in Sweden. About 211 of the 764 kids examined developed mental disorders later in life characterized by a significant derangement of their personality and a loss of touch with reality. The team measured levels of IgG antibodies to milk and wheat in the blood samples to figure out that the "children born to mothers with abnormally high levels of antibodies to the wheat protein gluten were nearly 50 percent more likely to develop schizophrenia later in life than children born to mothers with normal levels of gluten antibodies."[43](#) This association remained true even after the scientists ruled out other factors known to increase the risk of developing schizophrenia, such as the mother's age during pregnancy and whether the child was born vaginally or via C-section (by and large, genetic factors and environmental impacts in utero weigh much more heavily into one's risk for schizophrenia than environmental factors encountered later in life). But children born to mothers with abnormally high levels of antibodies to milk protein didn't appear to be at an increased risk for psychiatric disorders.

The authors added a fascinating historical note to their paper as well. It wasn't until World War II that a suspicion about the connection between psychiatric disorders and maternal food sensitivity started to surface. U.S. Army researcher Dr. F. Curtis Dohan was among the first scientists to notice a relationship between postwar Europe's food scarcity (and, consequently, a lack of wheat in the diet) and considerably fewer hospitalizations for schizophrenia. Although the observation couldn't prove the association at the time, since then we've had the benefits of long-term studies and modern technologies to verify the case against gluten.

Studies have also shown that a low-carb, high-fat diet just like the one I outline in [chapter 7](#) can improve symptoms of not only depression but also schizophrenia. One woman who has been chronicled in the literature, known

by the initials CD, had a complete resolution of her schizophrenia symptoms when she adopted a gluten-free, low-carb diet.⁴⁴ She was first diagnosed at the age of seventeen, and experienced paranoia, disorganized speech, and daily hallucinations throughout her life. Before adopting a low-carb diet at the age of seventy, she'd been hospitalized multiple times for suicide attempts and increased psychotic symptoms. Medication failed to improve her symptoms. Within the first week on the new diet, CD reported feeling better and having more energy. And within three weeks, she was no longer hearing voices or "seeing skeletons." Over the course of a year, CD also lost weight, and even when she cheated once in a while by eating pasta, bread, or cake, her hallucinations never returned.

A FIX FOR THE COMMON HEADACHE?

I can't imagine what it would be like to suffer from daily headaches, but I've treated many patients who've shouldered the weight of that kind of suffering throughout their lives. Take, for example, a sixty-six-year-old gentleman whom I first saw in January of 2012. I'll call him Cliff.

Cliff had endured thirty long years with pretty much the same unrelenting headache, and he wins a gold medal for trying his best to extinguish the pain. His attempts included a litany of drugs from those designed for migraines, like Imitrex, to narcotic painkillers such as Vicodin, prescribed after consultations with top headache clinics — all to no avail. Aside from being ineffective, he found that many of these medications slowed him down significantly. Although Cliff mentioned that he thought his headaches were related to foods, he couldn't say this was always the case. Nothing in his medical history jumped out at me, but when we discussed his family history, he said that his sister also experienced ongoing headaches and had significant food intolerances. This bit of information led me to probe a little further. I learned that Cliff had a twenty-year history of muscle stiffness, and that his sister carried a specific antibody related to gluten sensitivity that is also associated with what is called "stiff-person syndrome."

When I checked Cliff's blood work for gluten sensitivity, several things stood out. He was highly reactive to eleven proteins related to gluten. Like his sister, he showed a strong reaction with respect to the antibody associated with stiff-person syndrome. I also noted that he was quite sensitive to cow's milk. As with so many of my patients, I placed him on a diet that restricted gluten and dairy. After three months, he told me that he hadn't needed to use Vicodin at all the previous month, and on a scale from 1 to 10 his worst headache was now a manageable 5 rather than a screaming 9. Best of all, his

headaches no longer lingered all day; they only lasted three or four hours. While Cliff was not totally cured, his relief was substantial and, for him, very gratifying. In fact, he was so pleased with his outcome that he has allowed me to use his photograph when I present his case, now published, to health care practitioners.

I've had plenty more patients come through my doors and leave with a pain-free head, thanks to the adoption of a gluten-free diet. One woman with a similar experience had been to countless doctors, tried innumerable prescription drugs, and undergone high-tech brain scans. Nothing worked until she met me and my prescription pad for a gluten sensitivity test. And lo and behold her villain — and cure — was identified.

Headaches are one of our most common maladies. In the United States alone, more than forty-five million people suffer from chronic headaches, twenty-eight million of whom suffer from migraines.⁴⁵ Incredibly, twenty-first-century medicine remains focused on treating *symptoms* for what is often a fully preventable problem. If you're a chronic headache sufferer, why not try a gluten-free diet? What have you got to lose?

Big Headaches in Brief

For purposes of this discussion I include all types of headaches in one category. So whether you're dealing with tension headaches, cluster headaches, sinus headaches, or migraines, for the most [part I](#) refer to headaches as a collective basket of conditions that share the same characteristic: pain in the head due to physical and biochemical changes in the brain. For the record, migraines tend to be the most painful kind and are often accompanied by nausea, vomiting, and sensitivity to light. But a headache is a headache, and if you've got one, your top priority is finding a solution. Once in a while, however, I will specifically refer to migraines.

An untold number of things can trigger a headache, from a bad night's sleep or changes in the weather to chemicals in foods, sinus congestion, head trauma, brain tumors, or too much alcohol. The exact biochemistry of headaches, especially migraines, is under active study. But we know a lot more today than we ever did before. And for those sufferers who can't nail down a reason (and thus a likely solution) for their headaches, my bet is that nine times out of ten that reason could be undiagnosed gluten sensitivity.

In 2012, researchers at Columbia University Medical Center in New York finished a yearlong study that documented chronic headaches among 56 percent of people who were gluten sensitive and 30 percent of those with celiac disease (the ones labeled as gluten sensitive had not tested positive for

celiac disease but reported symptoms when they ate foods with wheat).⁴⁶ They also found that 23 percent of those with inflammatory bowel disease also had chronic headaches. When the researchers teased out the prevalence of migraines, they found much higher percentages of sufferers among the celiac group (21 percent) and the inflammatory bowel disease group (14 percent) than in the control group (6 percent). When asked to explain the connection, the lead researcher, Dr. Alexandra Dimitrova, alluded to the ultimate perpetrator of all: inflammation. To quote Dr. Dimitrova:

It's possible the patients with [inflammatory bowel disease] have a generalized inflammatory response, and this may be similar in celiac disease patients, where the whole body, including the brain, is affected by inflammation. ... The other possibility is that there are antibodies in celiac disease that may ... attack the brain cells and membranes covering the nervous system and somehow cause headaches. What we know for sure is that there is a higher prevalence of headache of any kind, including migraine headaches, compared to healthy controls.

She went on to say that many of her patients report major improvements in the frequency and severity of their headaches once they adopt a gluten-free diet; for some, headaches completely vanish.

Dr. Marios Hadjivassiliou, whom I've referenced throughout this book, has done extensive studies on headaches and gluten sensitivity.⁴⁷ Among his most astonishing work are the brain MRI scans that show profound changes in the white matter of headache patients with gluten sensitivity. The abnormalities are indicative of the inflammatory process. Most of these patients were resistant to normal drug treatments for their headaches, yet once they adopted a gluten-free diet, they were relieved of their suffering.

Dr. Alessio Fasano, who heads the Center for Celiac Research at Massachusetts General Hospital, is a world-renowned pediatric gastroenterologist and a leading researcher in the area of gluten sensitivity.⁴⁸ When I met with him at a national conference on gluten sensitivity, where we both were speaking, he told me that it's no longer news to him that gluten-sensitive patients, including those with diagnosed celiac disease, frequently suffer from headaches. We lamented together how unfortunate it is that this type of gluten-triggered headache is misunderstood by the general public. It has such an easy fix, yet few of the afflicted know that they are sensitive to gluten.

When Italian researchers conducted a gluten-free trial experiment on eighty-eight children with celiac disease and chronic headaches, they found that 77.3 percent of them experienced significant improvement in headaches, and 27.3 percent of those who improved actually became headache-free when

they maintained a gluten-free diet. The study also found that 5 percent of the kids with headaches who were not previously diagnosed with celiac were indeed found to have celiac disease; this was a much larger percentage than the 0.6 percent researchers had documented in the general kids population studied. Thus the risk of headache in the celiac group was increased by 833 percent. The authors concluded, “We recorded — in our geographical area — a high frequency of headaches in patients with CD [celiac disease] and vice versa with a beneficial effect of a gluten-free diet. Screening for CD could be advised in the diagnostic workup of patients with headache.”[49](#)

The prevalence of migraine headache in the pediatric population is increasing. Prior to the onset of puberty, migraine affects girls and boys equally. Thereafter, females outnumber males by about three to one. Children with migraines have a 50 to 75 percent risk of becoming adult migraine sufferers, and the disease is inherited in 80 percent of cases. Childhood migraines represent the third leading cause of school absence.[50](#)

Is it coincidence that so many of these kids with chronic headaches also have a strong sensitivity to gluten? And is it fortuity that the removal of gluten from their diets magically ushered their headaches away? No. And no. Unfortunately, many children with chronic headaches are never tested for gluten sensitivity, and they are placed instead on powerful drugs. The standard approach to treating headaches in kids includes the use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications, aspirin-containing compounds, triptans, ergot alkaloids, and dopamine antagonists. To prevent headaches, some of the drugs used include tricyclic antidepressants; various anticonvulsants including divalproex sodium; and more recently, topiramate, antiserotonergic agents, beta blockers, calcium channel blockers, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications. Topiramate, which is used to treat epilepsy, comes with awful side effects that would alarm any parent and be distressing to a child. They include weight loss, anorexia, abdominal pain, difficulty concentrating, sedation, and paresthesia (the feeling of “pins and needles,” or of a limb “falling asleep”).[51](#) I don’t know about you, but I wouldn’t want my kid to experience these side effects, even if they are temporary, to manage a headache that has nothing to do with what the drug was designed for. In the last few years, numerous studies have emerged to show that, for the most part, anticonvulsants don’t alleviate headaches in kids any better than a placebo.[52](#) In fact, leading researchers in headaches have been pressing for more studies to be done on children because few drugs have been proven useful, effective, and safe to use. The focus on drugs rather than

dietary choices and nutritional supplementation sadly keeps us from addressing the underlying cause of the headache.

Big Bellies Make for Big Headaches

You already know belly fat is the worst, and that it raises your risk for a medley of health problems (heart disease, diabetes, dementia, to name a few). But people don't think about their increased risk for headaches just by virtue of their waist circumference. Surprise: Waist circumference is a better predictor of migraine activity than general obesity in both men and women up until age fifty-five. Only in the last couple of years have we been able to scientifically show how strong this link is, thanks in part to researchers from Philadelphia's Drexel University College of Medicine who mined data amassed from more than twenty-two thousand participants in the ongoing National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES).⁵³ The data included a wealth of valuable information to examine, from calculations of abdominal obesity (as measured by waist circumference) and overall obesity (as determined by body mass index) to people's reports on how often they experienced headaches and migraines. Even after controlling for overall obesity, the researchers determined that for both men and women between the ages of twenty and fifty-five — the age bracket when migraine is most common — excess belly fat was affiliated with a significant increase in migraine activity. Women carrying extra fat around their belly were 30 percent more likely to suffer from migraines than women without excess belly fat. This held true even when the researchers accounted for overall obesity, risk factors for heart disease, and demographic characteristics.

Plenty of other studies show the inexorable bond between obesity and risk for chronic headaches.⁵⁴ One particularly large study published in 2006 looked at more than thirty thousand people and found that chronic daily headaches were 28 percent higher in the obese group than in the healthy controls of normal weight. Those who were morbidly obese had a 74 percent increased risk of having a chronic daily headache. When the researchers took a closer look at those who suffered from migraines in particular, overweight people had a 40 percent increased risk, and the obese had a 70 percent increased risk.⁵⁵

By this point in the book you know that fat is a hugely powerful hormonal organ and system that can generate pro-inflammatory compounds. Fat cells secrete an enormous amount of cytokines that trigger inflammatory pathways. Headaches are, at their root, manifestations of inflammation, just like most of the other brain-related ailments we've been covering.

So it makes sense, then, that studies examining the relationship between lifestyle factors (e.g., overweight, low physical activity, and smoking) and recurrent headaches connect belly fat and chronic headaches. A few years ago, researchers in Norway interviewed 5,847 adolescent students about their headaches and had them complete a comprehensive questionnaire about their lifestyle habits in addition to a clinical examination.⁵⁶ Those who said they regularly engaged in physical activity and were not smokers were classified as having a good lifestyle status. These students were compared to those who were deemed to be less healthy due to one or more of the negative lifestyle habits.

The results? The kids who were overweight were 40 percent more likely to suffer from headaches; the risk was 20 percent higher in those who didn't exercise much; and the smokers had a 50 percent increased risk. These percentages, however, were compounded when a student could check off more than one risk factor. If a student was overweight and smoked and didn't exercise, he or she carried a much higher risk for chronic headaches. And again, the study pointed to the effects of inflammation in fueling the firestorm.

The bigger your belly, the more at risk you are for headaches. Seldom do we think about our lifestyle and diet when we get a headache. Instead, we turn to drugs and await the next pound in the head. All the studies to date, however, show how important lifestyle is when it comes to managing, treating, and permanently curing headaches. If you can reduce sources of inflammation (lose the extra weight, eliminate gluten, go low-carb and high good fat, and maintain healthy blood sugar balance), you can target and control headaches.

THE RX TO BE HEADACHE-FREE

Numerous things can trigger a headache. I cannot possibly list all of the potential offenders, but I can offer a few tips to end the suffering:

- Keep a very strict sleep-wake cycle. This is key to regulating your body's hormones and maintaining *homeostasis* — the body's preferred state of being, where its physiology is balanced.
- Lose the fat. The more you weigh, the more likely it is that you'll suffer from headaches.
- Stay active. Remaining sedentary breeds inflammation.
- Watch caffeine and alcohol use. Each of these in excess can stimulate a headache.
- Don't skip meals or keep erratic eating habits. As with sleep, your eating patterns control many hormonal processes that can affect your risk for a headache.

- Manage emotional stress, anxiety, worry, and even excitement. These emotions are among the most common triggers of headaches. Migraine sufferers are generally sensitive to stressful events, which prompt the release of certain chemicals in the brain that can provoke vascular changes and cause a migraine. Adding insult to injury, emotions such as anxiety and worry can increase muscle tension and dilate blood vessels, intensifying the severity of the migraine.
 - Go gluten-, preservative-, additive-, and processed-free. The low-glycemic, low-carb, high-healthy-fat diet outlined in [chapter 11](#) will go a long way to reducing your risk for headaches. Be especially careful about aged cheese, cured meats, and sources of monosodium glutamate (MSG, commonly found in Chinese food), as these ingredients may be responsible for triggering up to 30 percent of migraines.
 - Track the patterns in your headache experience. It helps to know when you're at a greater risk of getting one so you can pay extra attention during those times. Women, for example, can often trace patterns around their menstrual cycle. If you can define your patterns, you can better understand your unique headache and act accordingly.
-

The idea that we can treat — and in some cases, totally eliminate — common neurological ailments through diet alone is empowering. Most people immediately turn to drugs when seeking a solution, oblivious to the cure that awaits them in a few lifestyle shifts that are highly practical and absolutely free. Depending on my patients' unique circumstances, some of them need more short-term support for managing certain conditions, and this can come in the form of psychotherapy or even supplemental medication. But by and large many of them respond positively to simply cleaning up their diet and expelling nerve-racking (literally) ingredients from their lives. And those who do require additional medical help often find that they can eventually wean themselves from pharmaceuticals and welcome the rewards that a drug-free life has to offer. Remember, if you do nothing else recommended in this book but eliminate gluten and refined carbohydrates, you will experience profound positive effects beyond those described in this chapter. In addition to watching your mood brighten up, you'll watch your weight go down and your energy soar in just a few weeks. Your body's innate healing capacities will be in high gear, as will your brain's functionality.

PART II

GRAIN BRAIN REHAB

Now that you've gotten a panoramic picture of "grain brain," which actually encompasses more than just grains and includes virtually all carbohydrates, it's time to turn to the ways in which you can support the ideal health and function of your brain. In this section of the book, we examine three key habits: diet, exercise, and sleep. Each of these plays a significant role in whether or not your brain thrives or begins to falter. And with the lessons gleaned in this part, you'll be fully prepared to execute the four-week protocol outlined in part 3.

CHAPTER 7

Dietary Habits for an Optimal Brain

Hello, Fasting, Fats, and Essential Supplements

I fast for greater physical and mental efficiency.

— PLATO

THE SIZE OF OUR BRAIN IN COMPARISON to the rest of our body is one of the most important features distinguishing us from all other mammals. An elephant, for example, has a brain that weighs 7,500 grams, dwarfing our 1,400-gram brain. But its brain represents 1/550 of its total body weight, while our brain weighs 1/40 of our total body weight. So we can't make any comparisons about "brain power" or intelligence just based on brain size alone. It's the ratio of brain size to body size that's key when considering the brain's functional capacity.¹

But even more important than our impressive volume of brain matter is the fact that, gram for gram, our brain consumes a disproportionately huge amount of energy. It represents 2.5 percent of our total body weight but consumes an incredible 22 percent of our body's energy expenditure at rest. The human brain expends about 350 percent more energy than the brains of other anthropoids like gorillas, orangutans, and chimpanzees. So it takes a lot of dietary calories to keep our brains functioning. Fortunately for us, though, our large and powerful brains have allowed us to develop the skills and intelligence to survive extreme conditions like food scarcity. We can conceive of and plan for the future, a uniquely human trait. And having an understanding of our brain's amazing abilities can help inform the ways in which we can optimize our diet for a healthy, functioning brain.

THE POWER OF FASTING

One critical mechanism of the human body that I've already covered is its ability to convert fat into vital fuel during times of starvation. We can break down fat into specialized molecules called ketones, and one in particular that

I've already mentioned — beta-hydroxybutyrate (beta-HBA) — is a superior fuel for the brain. This not only provides a compelling case for the benefits of intermittent fasting to, as contradictory as this may seem, nourish the brain, but also serves as an explanation for one of the most hotly debated questions in anthropology: why our Neanderthal relatives disappeared between thirty and forty thousand years ago. While it's convenient and almost dogmatic to accept that Neanderthals were “wiped out” by clever *Homo sapiens*, many scientists now believe that food scarcity may have played a more prominent role in their disappearance. It may be that the Neanderthals didn't have the “mental endurance” to persevere because they lacked the biochemical pathway to utilize fat to feed the brain.

Unlike other mammals', our brain can use an alternative source of calories during times of starvation. Typically, our daily food consumption supplies our brain with glucose for fuel. In between meals, our brains are continually supplied with a steady stream of glucose that's made by breaking down glycogen, mostly from the liver and muscles. But glycogen stores can provide only so much glucose. Once our reserves are depleted, our metabolism shifts and we are able to create new molecules of glucose from amino acids taken from protein primarily found in muscle. This process is aptly named gluconeogenesis. On the plus side, this adds needed glucose to the system, but on the minus side, it sacrifices muscles. And muscle breakdown is not a good thing for a starving hunter-gatherer.

Luckily, human physiology offers one more pathway to power our brains. When food is no longer available, after about three days, the liver begins to use body fat to create those ketones. This is when beta-HBA serves as a highly efficient fuel source for the brain, allowing us to function cognitively for extended periods during food scarcity. Such an alternative fuel source helps reduce our dependence on gluconeogenesis and, therefore, preserves our muscle mass.

But more than this, as Harvard Medical School professor George F. Cahill stated, “Recent studies have shown that beta-hydroxybutyrate, the principal ketone, is not just a fuel, but a superfuel, more efficiently producing ATP energy than glucose. It has also protected neuronal cells in tissue cultures against exposure to toxins associated with Alzheimer's or Parkinson's.”²

Indeed, Dr. Cahill and other researchers have determined that beta-HBA, which is easily obtainable just by adding coconut oil to your diet, improves antioxidant function, increases the number of mitochondria, and stimulates the growth of new brain cells.

In [chapter 5](#) we explored the need to reduce caloric intake in order to increase BDNF as a means of stimulating the growth of new brain cells as

well as enhancing the function of existing neurons. The idea of substantially reducing your daily calorie intake does not appeal to many people, even though it's a powerful approach to not only brain enhancement, but also overall health. But intermittent fasting — a complete restriction of food for twenty-four to seventy-two hours at regular intervals throughout the year — is more manageable, and I recommend and outline a fasting protocol in [chapter 10](#). Research has demonstrated that many of the same health-providing and brain-enhancing genetic pathways activated by caloric restriction are similarly engaged by fasting, even for relatively short periods of time.³ This is counter to conventional wisdom that says fasting lowers the metabolism and forces the body to hold on to fat in a so-called starvation mode. Much to the contrary, fasting provides the body with benefits that can accelerate and enhance weight loss, not to mention boost brain health.

Fasting not only turns on the genetic machinery for the production of BDNF, but also powers up the Nrf2 pathway, leading to enhanced detoxification, reduction of inflammation, and increased production of brain-protective antioxidants. Fasting causes the brain to shift away from using glucose as fuel to using ketones manufactured in the liver. When the brain is metabolizing ketones as fuel, even the process of cell suicide (apoptosis) is reduced, while mitochondrial genes are turned on, leading to mitochondrial replication. Simply put, fasting enhances energy production and paves the way for better brain function and clarity.

Fasting in spiritual quests is an integral part of religious history. All major religions promote fasting as far more than a ceremonial act. Fasting has always been a fundamental part of the spiritual practice, as in the Muslim fast of Ramadan and the Jewish fast of Yom Kippur. Yogis practice austerity with their diets, and shamans fast during their vision quests. Fasting is also a common practice among devout Christians, and the Bible has examples of one-day, three-day, seven-day, and forty-day fasts.

WHAT FASTING AND KETOGENIC DIETS HAVE IN COMMON

What happens when you substantially reduce your carbohydrate intake and derive more of your calories from fat? I just finished explaining the benefits of fasting, which stimulates the brain to turn to fat for fuel in the form of ketones. A similar reaction takes place when you follow a diet low in carbohydrates and rich in healthy fats and proteins. This is the foundation of the *Grain Brain* dietary protocol.

Throughout our history we sought fat as a calorie-dense food source. It kept us lean and served us well in our hunter-gatherer days. As you already know, eating carbohydrates stimulates insulin production, which leads to fat

production, fat retention, and a reduced ability to burn fat. What's more, as we consume carbohydrates we stimulate an enzyme called lipoprotein lipase that tends to drive fat into the cell; the insulin secreted when we consume carbohydrates makes matters worse by triggering enzymes that lock fat tightly into our fat cells.

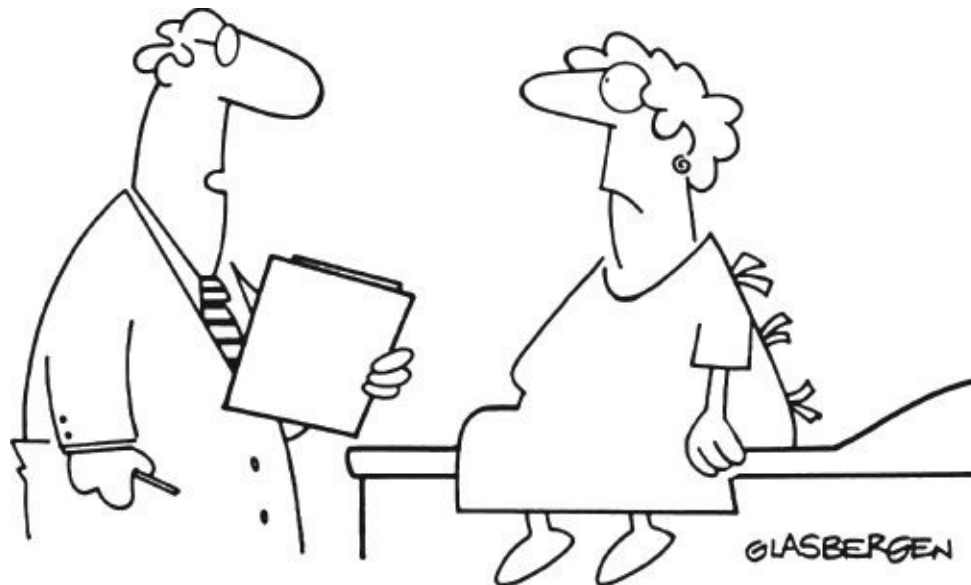
As I've also described, when we burn fat as opposed to carbohydrate, we enter ketosis. There's nothing inherently bad about it, and our bodies have been equipped for this activity for as long as we've roamed Earth. Being in a mild ketosis state is actually healthy. We are mildly ketotic when we first wake up in the morning, as our liver is mobilizing body fat to use as fuel. Both the heart and the brain run more efficiently on ketones than on blood sugar, by as much as 25 percent. Healthy, normal brain cells thrive when fueled by ketones. Certain brain tumor cells, however, can only use glucose as fuel. Standard treatment for glioblastoma, one of the most aggressive types of brain tumor, is surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy. But quite honestly, results from these approaches are fairly dismal. Taking advantage of the fact that glioblastoma cells can only use glucose, and not ketones, Dr. Giulio Zuccoli of the University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine reasoned that a ketogenic diet might actually prove effective in treating glioblastoma along with traditional treatments.⁴ And, in fact, he published a case report of treating a glioblastoma patient using a ketogenic diet with impressive results. If a ketogenic diet can prolong the life of a cancer patient, what can it do in a healthy individual?

A purely ketogenic diet is one that derives 80 to 90 percent of calories from fat, and the rest from carbohydrate and protein. Certainly this is extreme, but again, recognize that ketones are a far more effective fuel for the brain. In 1921, when the Mayo Clinic's Russell Wilder developed the ketogenic diet, it was basically an all-fat proposition. In the 1950s, we learned about medium-chain triglycerides (MCTs), which act as precursors in the body for beta-HBA and can be consumed through coconut oil.

The diet protocol outlined in [chapter 10](#) honors the main ketogenic principles of significantly reducing carbohydrates to the point that the body is pushed to burn fat while increasing dietary fat and adding nutrients to increase production of beta-HBA. You'll limit your consumption of carbohydrates to just 30 to 40 grams a day during the four weeks, after which you can increase that amount to 60 grams. The degree of ketosis that you're able to achieve can actually be measured with ketone test strips, which are typically used by diabetics and available at all pharmacies. They simply require a drop or two of urine and provide immediate information as to the level of ketosis that you've achieved. Look for trace to small levels of ketosis

in the neighborhood of 5 to 15; most ketone test strips such as Ketostix use color charts, and light pink usually indicates the presence of small, trace amounts. This means that your body is effectively using ketones as energy. If you follow my protocol, you can expect to become slightly ketotic after approximately the first week on the plan, and you may want to test yourself to see this effect. Some people feel better at higher levels of ketosis.

SEVEN BRAIN-BOOSTING SUPPLEMENTS



“The high-carb diet I put you on twenty years ago gave you diabetes, high blood pressure, and heart disease. Oops.”

I love a cartoon that offers a nugget of wisdom in a matter of eyebrow-raising seconds, the time it takes to absorb the image and caption. The one above caught my eye years ago; I only wish more doctors were as smart as cartoonist Randy Glasbergen. Given all the science we’ve accumulated since this cartoon was first published in 2004, we can add “and set you up for brain disease” to this caption.

The painful reality in today’s doctoring world is that you’re not likely to get a lot of useful advice about staving off brain disorders during an office visit to your internist. Nowadays, you get fewer than fifteen minutes (if that) with a doctor who may or may not be trained in all the latest knowledge about how to preserve your mental faculties. What’s more disturbing is that many of today’s physicians, originally trained decades ago, don’t have a firm grasp of nutrition and its effects on your health. I don’t say this to pooh-pooh my industry; I’m merely pointing out a truth that’s largely a consequence of economics. My hope is that our next generation of doctors will be better

equipped to swing the pendulum to the side of prevention rather than focus so much on treatment. Which brings me to my recommended supplements. (Refer to [here](#) for exact dosages and instructions on when to take each of these daily.)

DHA: As I mentioned earlier, docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) is a star in the supplement kingdom. DHA is an omega-3 fatty acid that represents more than 90 percent of the omega-3 fats in the brain. Fifty percent of the weight of a neuron's plasma membrane is composed of DHA. And it's a key component in heart tissue. I could write an entire chapter on DHA alone, but I'll spare you that level of detail. Suffice it to say, DHA is one of the most well-documented darlings in protecting the brain.

I often ask doctors in my lectures what they think the richest source of DHA is in nature. I hear all kinds of answers — cod-liver oil, salmon oil, anchovy oil. Some guess flaxseed oil or avocados, but those don't contain adequate DHA. The richest source of DHA in nature is human breast milk. Which explains why breast-feeding is continually touted as important for the neurologic health and long-term performance of a child.

Plenty of high-quality DHA supplements are available today, and there are more than 500 food products that are enriched with DHA. It doesn't really matter whether you buy DHA that's derived from fish oil or from algae. Opt for the algae-derived variety if you're a strict vegetarian.

Resveratrol: The magic behind the health benefits of drinking a glass of red wine a day has a lot to do with this natural compound found in grapes, which not only slows down the aging process, boosts blood flow to the brain, and promotes heart health, but also curbs fat cells by inhibiting their development. You can't get enough resveratrol in that glass of wine, though. Hence the need to supplement with higher doses to reap the benefits.

Because this so-called miracle molecule protects cells against a remarkable range of diseases, it's frequently touted as an assistant in the body's immune and defense system. Within the last decade we've come to learn just how this is possible, thanks largely to the work of Harvard's Dr. David Sinclair, who discovered the supplement's ability to activate certain genes called sirtuins, which affect longevity.⁵ In 2010, scientists at Northumbria University in the United Kingdom published a study in the *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* that discussed exactly why resveratrol can be so effective in optimizing brain function.⁶ In it, they explained that they gave twenty-four students resveratrol and recorded marked increases in blood flow in the brain

while they were performing mental tasks. And the harder the tasks, the greater resveratrol's effect.

Whether or not this means we all should be taking resveratrol before embarking on a serious undertaking like a test or interview is up for debate. But for now we know that we could do our brains well with the addition of a modest dose every day. And note I said modest. Although earlier research hinted that very large doses would be required to reap any benefits (doses equating to drinking hundreds of bottles of wine), newer studies clearly demonstrate that lower doses (as small as 4.9 milligrams per day) confer positive effects.

Turmeric: Turmeric (*Curcuma longa*), a member of the ginger family, is the subject of intense scientific research, much of it evaluating the anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activities that stem from its active ingredient, curcumin. Turmeric is the seasoning that gives curry powder its yellow color, and as I mentioned earlier, it has been used for thousands of years in Chinese and Indian medicine as a natural remedy for a variety of ailments. In a report for the *American Journal of Epidemiology*, researchers investigated the association between curry consumption level and cognitive function in elderly Asians.⁷ Those who ate curry “occasionally” and “often or very often” scored much better on specific tests designed to measure cognitive function than did people who “never or rarely” consumed curry.

One of curcumin's secret weapons is its ability to activate genes to produce a vast array of antioxidants that serve to protect our precious mitochondria. It also improves glucose metabolism. All of these properties help reduce risk for brain disease. Unless you make lots of curry dishes at home, you probably don't get a lot of turmeric in your diet on a regular basis.

Probiotics: Stunning new research in just the last few years has shown that eating foods rich in probiotics — live microorganisms that support our intestine's resident bacteria — can influence brain behavior and help alleviate stress, anxiety, and depression.^{8, 9, 10} These tribes of “good bacteria” that live in your intestines and help with digestion are enhanced and nourished by probiotics. They play a role in producing, absorbing, and transporting neurochemicals such as serotonin, dopamine, and nerve growth factor, which are essential for healthy brain and nerve function.

Understanding how this is possible requires a quick lesson in the science of your microflora–gut–brain communication.¹¹ It's true that your gut is your “second brain.”¹² This is an area of active, fascinating research, a large volume of which in recent years has demonstrated an intimate communication

highway between the brain and the digestive system. Through this two-way connection, the brain receives information about what's going on in your intestines as the central nervous system sends information back to your gut to ensure optimal functioning.

All this transmission back and forth makes it possible for us to control our eating behavior and digestion, and even find restful sleep at night. The gut also sends out hormonal signals that relay to the brain feelings of fullness, hunger, and even pain from intestinal inflammation. In diseases and illnesses that affect the intestines, such as uncontrolled celiac, IBS, or Crohn's disease, the gut can be a major influence on our well-being — how we feel, how well we sleep, what our energy level is, how much pain we experience, and even how we think. Researchers are currently looking at the possible role of some strains of intestinal bacteria in obesity, inflammatory and functional GI disorders, chronic pain, autism, and depression. They are also examining the role that these bacteria play in our emotions.[13](#)

So intricate and influential is this system that the health of our gut could be a much bigger player in our perception of overall health than we ever imagined. The information processed by the gut and sent up to the brain has everything to do with our sense of well-being. And if we can support this system just by consuming the gut's most important collaborators — healthy gut bacteria — then why not? Although lots of foods — such as yogurts and some beverages — are now fortified with probiotics, these products can often come with too much sugar. Ideally, get your probiotics through a supplement that offers a variety of strains (at least ten), including *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and bifidobacterium, and contains at least ten billion active bacteria per capsule.

Coconut oil: As I've already described, coconut oil can help prevent and treat neurodegenerative disease states. It's a superfuel for the brain and also reduces inflammation. You can drink a teaspoon of it straight or use it when you prepare meals. Coconut oil is heat stable, so you can cook with it at high temperatures. In the recipe section, I'll give you some ideas for working with coconut oil in the kitchen.

Alpha-lipoic acid: This fatty acid is found inside every cell in the body, where it's needed to produce the energy for the body's normal functions. It crosses the blood-brain barrier and acts as a powerful antioxidant in the brain in both watery and fatty tissues. Scientists are now investigating it as a potential treatment for strokes and other brain conditions involving free radical damage, such as dementia.[14](#) Although the body can produce adequate

supplies of this fatty acid, our modern lifestyles and inadequate diets often require supplementation.

Vitamin D: It's a misnomer to call vitamin D a "vitamin" because it's actually a fat-soluble steroid hormone. Although most people associate it strictly with bone health and calcium levels — hence its addition to milk — vitamin D has far-reaching effects on the body and especially on the brain. We know there are receptors for vitamin D throughout the entire central nervous system; we also know that vitamin D helps regulate enzymes in the brain and cerebrospinal fluid that are involved in manufacturing neurotransmitters and stimulating nerve growth. Both animal and laboratory studies have indicated that vitamin D protects neurons from the damaging effects of free radicals and reduces inflammation. Let me state a few key findings:[15](#)

- Reports have shown a 25 percent risk reduction in cognitive decline in individuals with higher levels of vitamin D (severely deficient individuals in one such study were 60 percent more likely to undergo cognitive decline over the six-year follow-up).[16](#)
- A study done over seven years among 498 women showed that those with the highest intake of vitamin D had a 77 percent risk reduction for developing Alzheimer's disease.[17](#)
- When the mental states of 858 adults were evaluated between 1998 and 2006, there was substantial decline in mental function in those individuals with severe vitamin D deficiency.[18](#)
- Multiple studies link low levels of vitamin D with risk for Parkinson's and relapse in multiple sclerosis patients. (As an aside: Studies have shown that each 5 ng/mL increase in vitamin D levels in the blood correlates with a 16 percent reduction in relapses in MS.)[19](#)
- Low vitamin D levels have long been shown in medical literature to contribute to depression and even chronic fatigue.[20](#) Adequate vitamin D is needed by the adrenal glands to help regulate an enzyme necessary for the production of dopamine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine — critical brain hormones that play a role in mood, stress management, and energy. People with mild to severe depression have been known to experience turnarounds and improvements through supplementation alone.

Correcting insufficient levels of vitamin D can take several months of supplementation, but doing so will significantly improve your entire body's chemistry — from bone health to brain health — and even its insulin sensitivity. My dietary protocol will also provide good sources of natural vitamin D found in nature, such as cold-water fish and mushrooms.

CHAPTER 8

Genetic Medicine

Jog Your Genes to Build a Better Brain

Old minds are like old horses; you must exercise them if you wish to keep them in working order.

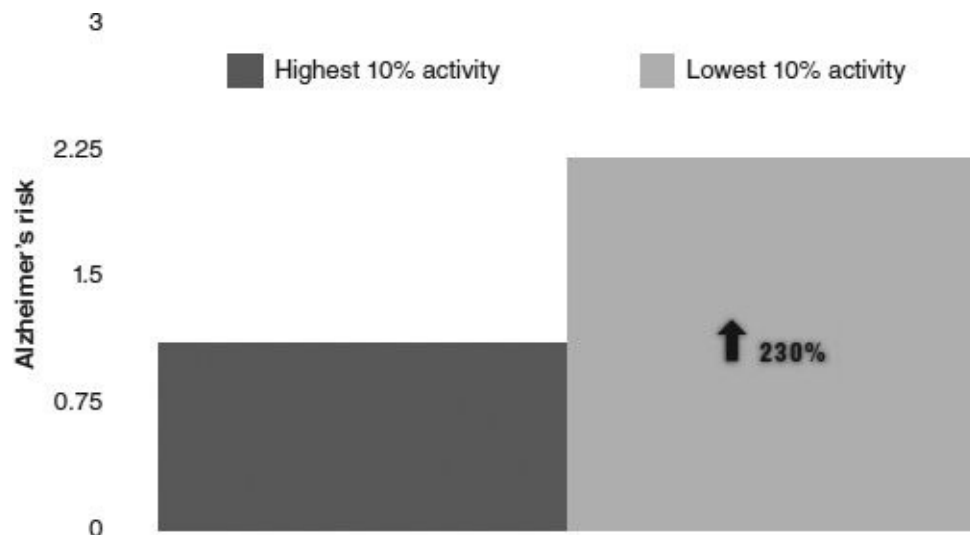
— JOHN ADAMS

POP QUIZ! WHAT'S GOING TO MAKE YOU SMARTER and less prone to brain diseases? Is it A. solving a complex brainteaser, or B. taking a walk? If you guessed A, I won't come down hard on you, but I will encourage you to go for a walk first (as fast as you can) and then sit down to work on a brainy puzzle. The answer, it turns out, is B. The simple act of moving your body will do more for your brain than any riddle, math equation, mystery book, or even thinking itself.

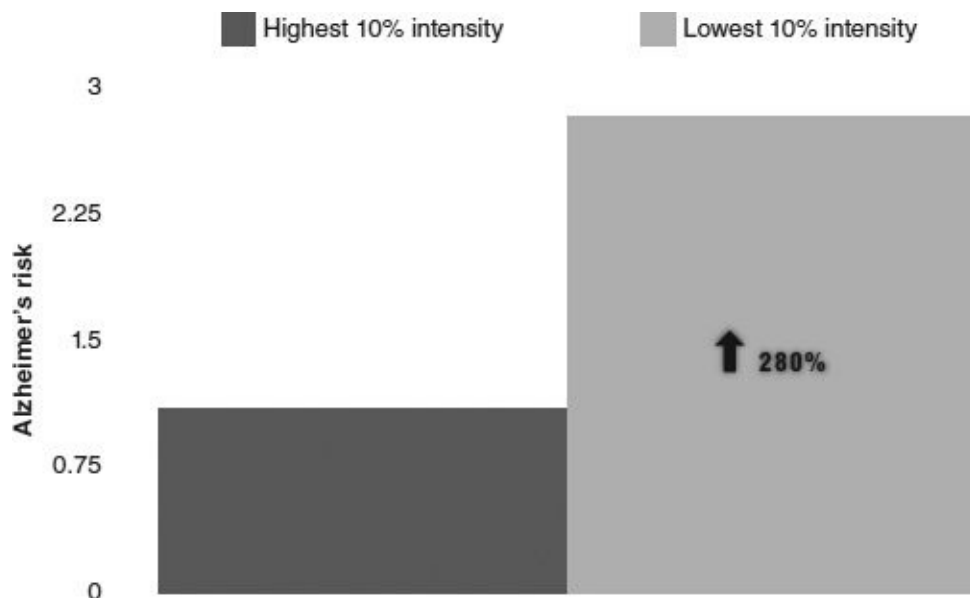
Exercise has numerous pro-health effects on the body — especially on the brain. It's a powerful player in the world of epigenetics. Put simply, when you exercise, you literally exercise your genetic makeup. Aerobic exercise not only turns on genes linked to longevity, but also targets the gene that codes for BDNF, the brain's "growth hormone." Aerobic exercise has been shown to reverse memory decline in the elderly and increase growth of new brain cells in the brain's memory center.

For a long time now, we've known that exercise is good for the brain, but only in the past decade have we really been able to quantify and qualify the extraordinary relationship between physical fitness and mental fitness.^{1, 2} It has taken the collective force of many inquisitive researchers working from different camps, including neuroscientists, physiologists, bioengineers, psychologists, anthropologists, and doctors from various other fields of medicine. It has also taken the development of many advanced technologies for us to be able to analyze and understand the inner workings of brain matter itself, including its individual neurons. The newest findings make it undeniably clear that the link between exercise and brain health isn't just a relationship. In the words of science writer Gretchen Reynolds for the *New*

York Times, “It is the relationship.”³ Exercise, according to the latest science, “appears to build a brain that resists physical shrinkage and enhances cognitive flexibility.” And this, my friends, may mean that there is no greater tool at our fingertips than physical movement. Take a look at the following two graphics, one showing the percentage difference in one’s risk for Alzheimer’s disease based on level of exercise, and another showing the difference based on intensity of exercise. I think these are quite telling:⁴



Alzheimer's risk compared to level of activity



Alzheimer's risk compared to intensity of activity

As humans we have always been physically active until only quite recently. Modern technology has afforded us the privilege of a sedentary existence; virtually anything we need these days is available without having to exert much effort, much less get out of bed. But our genome, over millions of years, evolved in a state of constant challenge, from a physical perspective, in our quest to find food. In fact, our genome expects frequent exercise — it *requires* regular aerobic exercise to sustain life. But unfortunately, too few of us respect that requirement today. And we have the chronic illness and high mortality rates to show for it.

The idea that exercise can make us smarter has intrigued not just traditional researchers in biomedical labs, but also anthropologists searching for clues to the shaping of humankind through millennia. In 2004, the journal *Nature* published an article by evolutionary biologists Daniel E. Lieberman of Harvard and Dennis M. Bramble of the University of Utah, who argue that we survived this long in history by virtue of our athletic prowess.⁵ It was our cavemen ancestors who were able to outpace predators and hunt down valuable prey for food that allowed for survival — producing meals and energy for mating. And those early endurance athletes passed on their genes. It's a beautiful hypothesis: We are designed to be athletes so that we can live long enough to procreate. Which is to say that natural selection drove early humans to evolve into supremely agile beings — developing longer legs, stubbier toes, and intricate inner ears to help us maintain better balance and coordination while standing and walking on just two feet as opposed to four.

For a long time, science couldn't explain why our brains had gotten so big — disproportionately so, when you consider our body's size in comparison to other animals'. Evolutionary scientists in the past liked to talk about our carnivore behaviors and need for social interaction, both of which demanded complicated thinking patterns (to hunt and kill, and to engage in relationships with others). But now science has another ingredient to add to the mix: physical activity. According to the latest research, we owe our tremendous brains to the need to think ... and the need to run.

To arrive at this conclusion, anthropologists examined patterns between the brain size and endurance capacity of many animals, from guinea pigs and mice to wolves and sheep.⁶ They noted that the species with the highest innate endurance capacity also had the highest brain volumes relative to their body size. Then the researchers took their experiment further by looking at mice and rats that were intentionally bred to be marathon runners. They created a line of lab animals that excelled at running by interbreeding those that ran the most in their cage's wheels. And then the truth began to emerge: Levels of BDNF and other substances that promote tissue growth and health

began to increase in these newly bred animals. BDNF is also known to drive brain growth, which is why the new thinking is that physical activity may have helped us to evolve into clever, quick-witted beings. David A. Raichlen, an anthropologist at the University of Arizona and leading scientist in the evolution of the human brain, summed up the concept brilliantly in his explanation to the *New York Times*, as reported and paraphrased by Gretchen Reynolds: “The more athletic and active survived and, as with the lab mice, passed along physiological characteristics that improved their endurance, including elevated levels of BDNF. Eventually, these early athletes had enough BDNF coursing through their bodies that some could migrate from the muscles to the brain, where it nudged the growth of brain tissue.”^{7, 8}

With an enhanced ability to think, reason, and plan, early humans could then sharpen the skills that they needed to survive, such as hunting and killing prey. They benefited from a positive feedback loop: Being in motion made them smarter, and sharper minds further allowed them to stay in motion and move more effectively. Over time, humans would come to engage in complex thinking and invent things like math, microscopes, and MacBooks.

The bottom line is that if physical activity helped us develop the brains we use today, then it’s safe to say we need exercise to maintain those brains (not to mention to continue to evolve into a smarter, faster, more clever species).

BE NIMBLE AND QUICK

The biology of how exercise can be so beneficial to brain health goes far beyond the argument that it promotes blood flow to the brain and thus delivers nutrients for cell growth and maintenance. Indeed, cerebral blood flow is a good thing. But that’s old news. The latest science behind the magic of movement in protecting and preserving brain function is stunning. It boils down to five benefits: controlling inflammation, increasing insulin sensitivity, influencing better blood sugar control, expanding the size of the memory center, and, as I’ve already mentioned, boosting levels of BDNF.

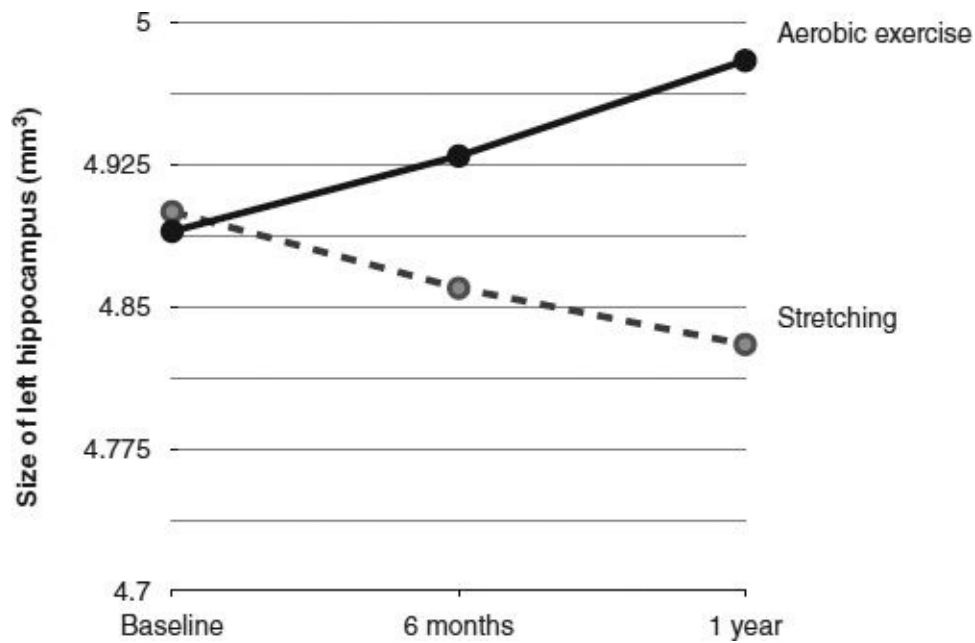
Some of the most compelling science has been performed in just the last couple of years.⁹ In 2011, Dr. Justin S. Rhodes and his team at the Beckman Institute for Advanced Science and Technology at the University of Illinois made discoveries using four groups of mice in four different living arrangements.¹⁰ One group lived in the lap of luxury in a setting that included lavish, mice-friendly meals (nuts, fruits and cheeses, and flavored waters) and lots of playful toys to explore, such as mirrors, balls, and tunnels. The second group of mice had access to the same treats and toys, but their living quarters included running wheels. A third group’s cages resembled a Motel 6; they

contained nothing extraordinary and the mice ate standard kibble. The fourth group of mice similarly lacked access to fancy amenities and food, but their home included running wheels.

At the start of the study, the mice underwent a series of cognitive tests and were injected with a substance that allowed the researchers to track changes in their brain structures. Over the next several months, the scientists let the mice do whatever they wanted in their respective homes, after which the researchers re-tested the mice's cognitive functions and examined their brain tissues.

The one variable that clearly stood out above all others was whether or not the mice had a running wheel. It didn't matter if they had things to play with in their cages. The animals that exercised were the ones who had healthier brains and outperformed on the cognitive tests. Those that didn't run, even if their world was otherwise stimulating, didn't improve cognitively. The researchers were specifically looking for cognitive improvements that implied a boost in complex thinking and problem solving. Only exercise proved key to that improvement.

We know that exercise spurs the generation of new brain cells. Scientists have actually measured this effect by comparing mice and rats that ran for a few weeks versus those that were sedentary. The running animals had about twice as many new neurons in their hippocampi as the couch potatoes. Other studies have looked at which types of exercise are the most effective. In 2011, when a group of 120 older men and women were split into two groups — one assigned to a walking program and the other to a stretching regimen — the walkers won over the stretchers.[11](#) They were the ones who showed larger hippocampi after a year and higher levels of BDNF in their bloodstreams. The stretchers, on the other hand, lost brain volume to normal atrophy and didn't perform as well on cognitive tests. Take a look at the results:



Change in size of the hippocampus over 1 year comparing aerobic exercisers to those doing stretching program

Whatever the activity, we have enough proof to confidently say that exercise needn't be exhausting to be effective for the brain.

GROW NEW NETWORKS

Exercise has been proven to induce growth of new neurons in the brain, but the real miracle is that it also has been shown to help build novel networks in the brain. It's one thing to give birth to brain cells, but another to organize those cells into a network that functions in harmony. We don't get "smarter" just by making new brain cells. We have to be able to interconnect those cells into the existing neural network, otherwise they will roam around aimlessly and eventually die. One way to do this is to learn something new. In a 2007 study, newborn neurons in mice became integrated into the animals' brain networks if the mice learned to navigate a water maze.¹² This is a task that requires more cognitive power than physical ability. The researchers also noted that the newbie cells were limited in what they could do; they couldn't, for example, help the mice perform other cognitive tasks beyond the maze. To do that, the mice would need to exert themselves physically, which would encourage those new cells to become spry and cognitively limber.

And therein lies the secret benefit of exercise: It makes neurons nimble and able to multitask. We don't know how exercise facilitates mental makeovers on a molecular level, but we do know that BDNF plays a role by strengthening cells and axons, fortifying the connections among neurons, and

sparkling neurogenesis. Neurogenesis increases the brain's ability to learn new things, which in turn strengthens those new brain cells and further fortifies the neural network. Remember, too, that higher levels of BDNF are associated with a decrease in appetite. So for those individuals who have trouble controlling their appetite, this provides yet another impetus to exercise.

With an understanding of the relationship of BDNF to exercise, researchers have been examining the effect of physical exercise in people at risk for or already suffering from brain disorder and disease. In a recent report in the *Journal of the American Medical Association*, Professor Nicola Lautenschlager of the University of Western Australia found that elderly individuals engaged in regular physical exercise for a twenty-four-week period had an 1,800 percent improvement on measures of memory, language ability, attention, and other important cognitive functions compared to a control group.¹³ The exercise group spent about 142 minutes in physical activity weekly, which averages about 20 minutes a day. The researchers attributed these improvements to better blood flow, the growth of new blood vessels, growth of new brain cells, and improved brain “plasticity.”

In a similar study, Harvard researchers identified a strong association between exercise and cognitive function in elderly women, concluding:

In this large, prospective study of older women, higher levels of long-term regular physical activity were strongly associated with higher levels of cognitive function and less cognitive decline. Specifically, the apparent cognitive benefits of greater physical activity were similar to being about three years younger in age and associated with a 20 percent lower risk of cognitive impairment.¹⁴

Multiple effects coalesce when the body is engaged in physical activity. Exercise is a potent anti-inflammatory. By activating the Nrf2 pathway I described earlier, physical exercise turns on the genes that suppress inflammation. And this can be measured in the laboratory. Scientists have documented time and time again that C-reactive protein — a commonly used laboratory marker of inflammation — is lower among people who keep an exercise routine. Exercise also improves insulin sensitivity. It helps manage blood sugar balance and reduce the glycation of proteins. We know this to be true from studies done on the effects of exercise on hemoglobin A1C. In one notable study, researchers told thirty participants to make no lifestyle changes while putting thirty-five others on an exercise program three days a week.¹⁵ The control group did not participate in any form of exercise. After the sixteenth week, hemoglobin A1C decreased by 0.73 in the exercise group but increased by 0.28 in the non-exercise group. To put these numbers in context, if your hemoglobin A1C was 6.0, a reduction of 0.73 brought on by exercise

represents a 12 percent reduction of hemoglobin A1C, and this rivals diabetes medications.

IT DOESN'T TAKE MUCH TO MAKE AN IMPACT

Okay, so exercise does a body and brain good. But how much? How rigorous? Do household chores and customary daily activities like gardening and taking out the trash count?

To answer this, let's turn to a study from Rush University's Memory and Aging Project — the study that led to the graphics I showcased [here](#) and [here](#). When Dr. Aron S. Buchman examined the effects of daily physical exercise on one's risk for Alzheimer's disease, he found dramatic differences between relatively sedentary people and those performing various types of activities, including simple acts like cooking, washing the dishes, playing cards, pushing a wheelchair, and cleaning. He managed to track people's activity levels using a novel device called an ActiGraph, which is worn on the wrist to detect and quantify movement. The average age of the individuals, who did not have dementia, was eighty-two years. Of the original 716, 71 participants developed full-blown Alzheimer's disease over the course of approximately 3.5 years of follow-up.¹⁶

The results of the study revealed that those individuals in the lowest 10 percent of daily physical activity had a 230 percent increased risk of developing Alzheimer's disease compared to those in the highest 10 percent of physical activity. When the data was evaluated in terms of intensity of physical activity, the results were even more compelling. Comparing the people in the bottom 10 percent of intensity of physical activity to the individuals in the top 10 percent, Dr. Buchman and his team found that the risk of Alzheimer's was nearly tripled in those who exerted themselves the least. Dr. Buchman rightfully articulated in his conclusions that we cannot underestimate the power of low-cost, easily accessible, and side-effect-free activities that may not entail formal exercise. The mere actions of daily living can provide brain-protective benefits at any age.

PICK A PLAY

Clearly, you don't need to set your sights on climbing Mt. Everest. Nor do you need to train for an endurance event. But regular exercise that gets your heart pumping is a must. Although a small number of studies have found cognitive benefits among older people who just lifted weights for a year, most studies to date, and all animal experiments, have involved running or other

aerobic activities such as swimming, bicycling, hiking, and brisk walking at least five days a week for at least twenty minutes per session.

I realize that exercise is not on most people's list of top priorities, but I hope the evidence I've provided in this chapter will encourage you to rethink your to-dos if you don't already maintain an exercise routine. I'll ask that you devote one week during the program to focus on this important area of your life and commence a regular workout if you don't already have one. And if you do, then you can use the week to increase the duration and intensity of your workouts, or try something new.

CHAPTER 9

Good Night, Brain

Leverage Your Leptin to Rule Your Hormonal Kingdom

Finish each day before you begin the next, and interpose a solid wall of sleep between the two.

— RALPH WALDO EMERSON

WHEN SAMUEL, A FORTY-EIGHT-YEAR-OLD STOCKBROKER, came to see me on a late-November day, he asked me to “optimize his health.” This wasn’t the first time someone had made such a blanket, somewhat vague request, but I knew what he really wanted: He wanted me to get to the bottom of his misery and deliver him to a place of vibrant health like he’d never felt before. A tall order for any doctor to fill, but something in his bloated face instantly clued me in to what could have been the problem. I started by getting to know his medical history and chief complaints. He had a history of low thyroid function, for which he was taking medication. He said his life was quite stressful, but rated his overall health as “good.” There wasn’t much to report as far as past medical problems, but interestingly enough, he mentioned that his son had been “sensitive” to solid foods during his infancy and was diagnosed as having gluten sensitivity. We discussed his thyroid issue further, and it turned out that he had an autoimmune disease called Hashimoto’s thyroiditis, which is caused by abnormal activation of the immune system that causes it to attack the thyroid gland.

I went ahead and ordered a gluten sensitivity test, which produced compelling results. He was indeed highly sensitive to gluten; only one of the twenty-four antibodies tested was in the normal range. He desperately needed to try a gluten-free diet.

His response to the diet was quite remarkable and, frankly, somewhat predictable in light of both his son’s experience and his off-the-charts test. Four months after he started the diet, I received a letter from him that made me smile. He admitted in writing just how bad his life had gotten by the time

he made his appointment to come see me. Evidently, he'd fibbed when he told me that his health was "good." It was far from that. He wrote:

Prior to diagnosing me as gluten sensitive, my health was in a downward spiral. ... Even though I was in my early forties and worked out daily, I was lethargic and struggled to make it through the day. ... I was becoming more moody and would easily snap at the smallest things. ... Depression set in, as I couldn't shake negative thoughts. I was convinced that I was dying. ... [Today] I am a new person. I am once again happy-go-lucky, and I have energy throughout the day. I'm sleeping through the night regularly, and my joint pain is gone. I'm able to think clearly and not get side-tracked on my tasks. The best part is that the stubborn fat around my midsection virtually melted off in two weeks. I thank you for helping me get my life back.

Even though Samuel didn't mention his sleep problems when I first examined him, I had a hunch that restful sleep had evaded him for some time. He looked exhausted and had all the trademark signs of long-term, unfathomable sleep deprivation. For many of my patients prior to being treated, lack of sleep is so normal to them that they forget what it's like to have a good night's sleep until they experience it again. Samuel may have thought that sleeping through the night was just a side benefit to the relief he found from going gluten-free. But it was more than that. The moment Samuel began to have refreshing sleep night after night was the moment he began to deeply "re-plumb" his body — hormonally, emotionally, physically, and even spiritually. Casting aside all of his issues with gluten and even his thyroid disorder, I can say without a doubt that achieving regular, restful sleep played a huge role in reversing his conditions and bringing him to exactly where he wanted to be: a place of optimal health.

Most of us undervalue the benefits of sleep, but it's one of the few assets in our lives that's totally free and absolutely essential to well-being. It's also, as you're about to find out, a fundamental tool in preventing brain decay.

THE SCIENCE OF SLUMBER

In the last ten years, the science of sleep has been a media darling. And for good reason: We understand the value of sleep from a scientific perspective as we never have before. Both laboratory and clinical studies have shown that virtually every system in the body is affected by the quality and amount of sleep we get, especially the brain.¹ Among the proven benefits: Sleep can dictate how much we eat, how fast our metabolism runs, how fat or thin we get, whether we can fight off infections, how creative and insightful we can be, how well we can cope with stress, how quickly we can process information and learn new things, and how well we can organize and store memories.² Adequate sleep, which for the vast majority of us means at least

seven solid hours, also influences our genes. In early 2013, scientists in England found that a week of sleep deprivation altered the function of 711 genes, including some involved in stress, inflammation, immunity, and metabolism.³ Anything that negatively affects these important functions in the body impacts the brain. We depend on those genes to produce a constant supply of proteins for replacing or repairing damaged tissue, and if they stop working after just a week of poor sleep, that says a lot about the power of sleep. Although we may not notice the side effects of poor sleep on a genetic level, we can certainly experience the other signs of chronic sleep deprivation: confusion, memory loss, brain fog, low immunity, obesity, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and depression. All of these conditions are uniquely tied to the brain.

We've also recently come to understand that few of us get enough sleep to support our bodies' true needs. About 10 percent of Americans suffer from chronic insomnia, while fully 25 percent of us report not getting enough sleep at least on occasion.⁴ And beyond getting enough sleep, experts are now focused on the *quality* of sleep in terms of its ability to restore the brain. Is it better to sleep solidly for six hours or terribly for eight? One would think that questions like that are easy to answer, and that we'd know everything there is to know about something all of us do for a large portion of our lives. But science is still trying to unravel the mystery of sleep and even how it affects men and women differently. Just as I was writing this chapter, a new study emerged about sleep's "surprising effects on hunger"; apparently, the hormones influenced by sleep deprivation are different for men and women.⁵ Although the outcome is the same for both sexes — an inclination to overeat — the underlying spark for that hunger is not the same for both sexes. In men, lack of sufficient sleep leads to elevated levels of ghrelin, a hormone that stimulates appetite. In women, on the other hand, ghrelin levels aren't influenced by lack of sleep, but levels of GLP-1, an appetite-suppressing hormone, are. Granted, such a subtle difference may seem insignificant since the overall result of eating more occurs either way, but it goes to show how little we know about the entire biochemistry of the human body in response to sleep.

If there's one thing we do know about sleep, it's that it increasingly becomes a challenge the older we get. This is true for a variety of reasons, many of them stemming from medical conditions that can put a dent in sound sleep. As many as 40 percent of older adults can't get a good night's sleep due to chronic problems like sleep apnea and insomnia. We even have evidence now for the relationship between disrupted sleep and cognitive decline. Kristine Yaffe is a psychiatrist at the University of California, San Francisco,

who studies people who have a higher risk of developing cognitive impairment and dementia. At her memory disorders clinic she sees a common thread in patients' complaints: difficulty falling asleep and staying asleep. They report being tired throughout the day and resorting to naps. When Yaffe led a series of studies analyzing more than thirteen hundred adults older than seventy-five over a five-year period, she noted that those with disrupted sleep, such as sleep-disordered breathing or sleep apnea, were more than twice as likely to develop dementia years later. Those who experienced breaks in their natural circadian rhythm or who awoke throughout the night were also at increased risk.⁶

Circadian rhythms are at the heart and soul of our well-being. By about six weeks old, all of us establish this pattern of repeated activity associated with the cycles of day and night that remains for the rest of our lives. As with sunrises and sunsets, these rhythms rerun roughly every twenty-four hours. We have many cycles that coincide with the twenty-four-hour solar day, from our sleep-wake cycle to the established patterns in our biological beats — the rise and fall of hormones, the fluctuations in body temperature, and the ebb and flow of certain molecules that feed into our health and wellness. When our rhythm is not in sync with the twenty-four-hour solar day, we can feel ill or tired, which is what happens, for instance, when we travel across time zones and force the body to adapt quickly to a new cycle.

I find that most people don't appreciate how much of their body's inherent rhythm is grounded in their sleep habits and controlled by their brain. Our body's natural day/night cycles pretty much command everything about us, when you consider that our hormonal secretion patterns are tethered to this cycle. A prime example is our body temperature, which, as a consequence of a dance of certain hormones in the body, rises during the day, takes a little dip in the afternoon (hence that late-day lull), peaks in the evening, then begins to decrease during the night. In the early morning hours, it reaches its nadir just as another pattern begins to peak, as cortisol levels reach their height in the morning and thereafter decrease throughout the day. Shift workers, who are notorious for keeping irregular sleep patterns due to their job responsibilities, live with a higher risk for a host of potentially serious illnesses as a result. Indeed, they don't call it the graveyard shift for nothing.

So the next time you're feeling uncharacteristically tired, moody, thirsty, hungry, mentally slow, forgetful, or even alert, aggressive, or horny, you can examine your recent sleep habits to glean insights. Suffice it to say we require a regular, reliable pattern of wakefulness and refreshing sleep to regulate our hormones. Volumes could be written on the body's hormones, but for purposes of this discussion and, in particular, the link between sleep and brain

health, we're going to focus on one of the body's most underrated, unsung hormones: leptin. Because it essentially coordinates our body's inflammatory responses and helps determine whether or not we crave carbs, no conversation about brain health can exclude this important hormone. And it's powerfully impacted by sleep. If you can gain control of this biological master of ceremonies, you can rule your hormonal kingdom for the benefit of your brain and body.

THE FATTER YOU ARE, THE SMALLER YOUR BRAIN

The year was 1994. It was a discovery that startled the medical community and forever changed how we view not only the human body and its complex hormonal system, but also sleep and its true value in orchestrating the empire. Just when we thought we had discovered all the hormones and their functions, we found a new hormone that we didn't previously know existed.^{7, 8} It's called leptin, and it turns out that this isn't just your average hormone; like insulin, leptin is a major one that ultimately influences all other hormones and controls virtually all the functions of the hypothalamus in the brain. Your hypothalamus is where your inner dinosaur lives; this ancient structure that pre-dates humans sits in the middle of your head and is responsible for your body's rhythmic activities and a vast array of physiological functions, from hunger to sex. But perhaps this finding came so late because leptin was identified in an unlikely place: fat cells.

Earlier I mentioned how we used to think that fat cells were just holding cells packed with unnecessary calories for a rainy day. But now we know that adipose tissue participates in our physiology as much as other "vital" organs, thanks to resident hormones like leptin that control whether or not we will end up with bulging bellies and small brains. First, a quick disclaimer: Leptin's function in the body, like most every hormone's, is extremely complex. The entire hormonal system, in fact, is extraordinarily intricate. There are untold numbers of interrelationships, and describing them all is beyond the scope of this book. I am going to keep it simple and reveal only what you need to know to take control of your hormones for the benefit of the brain.

Leptin is, at a most basic level, a primitive survival tool. It's uniquely tied to the coordination of our metabolic, hormonal, and behavioral response to starvation. As such, it has a powerful effect on our emotions and behavior. Leptin is a gatekeeper of sorts, and once you have an understanding of this hormone you'll know how to regulate the rest of your hormonal system and, in doing so, manage your health in unimaginable ways.

Although leptin is found in fat cells, that doesn't mean it's "bad." In excess it would indeed lead to problems, notably degenerative diseases and a shorter life. But healthy levels of leptin do the opposite — preventing most diseases of aging and supporting longevity. The more you can increase your sensitivity to this critical hormone, the healthier you will be. By "sensitivity," I'm referring to how your body's receptors to this hormone recognize and use leptin to carry out various operations. Nora T. Gedgaudas, an acclaimed nutritional therapist, defines leptin succinctly in her book *Primal Body, Primal Mind*:

Leptin essentially controls mammalian metabolism. Most people think that is the job of the thyroid, but leptin actually controls the thyroid, which regulates the rate of metabolism. Leptin oversees all energy stores. Leptin decides whether to make us hungry and store more fat or to burn fat. Leptin orchestrates our inflammatory response and can even control sympathetic versus parasympathetic arousal in the nervous system. If any part of your [hormonal] system is awry, including the adrenals or sex hormones, you will never have a prayer of truly resolving those issues until you have brought your leptin levels under control.[9](#)

Gedgaudas calls leptin the "new kid on the block who runs the whole neighborhood," and I couldn't agree with her more. The next time you put down your fork and pull away from the dinner table, you can thank your leptin. When your stomach is full, fat cells release leptin to tell your brain to stop eating. It's your brake. And this explains why people with low levels of leptin are prone to overeating. A now seminal study published in 2004 showed how people with a 20 percent drop in leptin experienced a 24 percent increase in hunger and appetite, driving them toward calorie-dense, high-carbohydrate foods, especially sweets, salty snacks, and starchy foods.[10](#) And what caused this leptin plunge? Sleep deprivation.[11](#) We've learned a lot about our hormones just from sleep studies alone. These, in turn, have informed us about the value of sleep in regulating our hormones.

Leptin and insulin have a lot in common, though they tend to antagonize each other. Both are pro-inflammatory molecules. Leptin is an inflammatory cytokine in addition to playing a big part in the body's inflammatory processes. It controls the creation of other inflammatory molecules in your fat tissue throughout your body. And it helps explain why overweight and obese people are susceptible to inflammatory problems, including those that substantially increase risk for brain disorders, mental health problems, and neurodegenerative disease. Both leptin and insulin are the higher-ups in the body's chain of command, so imbalances tend to spiral downward and wreak havoc on virtually every system of the body beyond those directly controlled by these hormones. What's more, leptin and insulin are negatively influenced

by similar things, and their biggest transgressors are carbohydrates. The more refined and processed the carbohydrate, the more out of whack healthy levels of leptin and insulin become. Earlier I explained how continuous carbohydrate abuse on the body's insulin pumping and blood-sugar balancing will eventually lead to insulin resistance. The same happens with leptin. When the body is overloaded and overwhelmed by substances that cause continuous surges in leptin, the receptors for leptin start to turn off and you become leptin resistant. They stop hearing leptin's message. Put simply, they surrender the controls and you're left with a body vulnerable to illness and further dysfunction. So even though leptin is now elevated, it doesn't work — it won't signal to your brain that you're full so you can stop eating. And if you cannot control your appetite, then you're at a much greater risk for weight gain and obesity, which puts you at risk for brain disorders. Studies have also shown that elevated triglyceride levels, also a hallmark of too many carbs in the diet, cause leptin resistance.[12](#)

Not a single drug or supplement on the planet can balance leptin levels. But better sleep, as well as better dietary choices, will do the trick.

Are You Leptin Resistant?

It's a question we all have to ask ourselves. Unfortunately, millions of Americans qualify as bona fide members of the leptin-resistant club. It's practically a given if you've been eating a high-carb diet and don't sleep well. In Ron Rosedale and Carol Colman's *The Rosedale Diet*, a book that takes a sweeping look at leptin in weight control, they enumerate the signs, many of which are common with insulin resistance, too:[13](#)

- being overweight
- being unable to change how your body looks, no matter how much you exercise
- being unable to lose weight or keep weight off
- constantly craving "comfort foods"
- fatigue after meals
- feeling consistently anxious or stressed-out
- feeling hungry all the time or at odd hours of the night
- having a tendency to snack after meals
- having high fasting triglycerides, over 100 mg/dL — particularly when equal to or exceeding cholesterol levels

- having osteoporosis
- having problems falling or staying asleep
- high blood pressure
- regularly craving sugar or stimulants like caffeine
- the presence of “love handles”

Don’t panic if you have reason to believe you’re leptin resistant. The program outlined in [chapter 10](#) will set you back on track.

ON THE FLIP SIDE: GHRELIN

One more appetite-related hormone I should mention before moving on: ghrelin. It’s the yin to leptin’s yang. Ghrelin is secreted by the stomach when it’s empty and increases your appetite. It sends a message to your brain that you need to eat. As expected, a disruption in the tango between leptin and ghrelin will wage war on your cravings, sense of fullness, ability to resist temptations in the kitchen, and waistline. In sleep studies, ghrelin levels soared in response to inadequate pillow-time in men. This triggered a bigger appetite and a propensity to gravitate toward high-carb, low-nutrient foods that, once consumed, easily get turned into fat. When your appetite hormones are not behaving properly, your brain becomes essentially disconnected from your stomach. It deceives you into thinking you’re hungry when you’re not, and further stimulates hard-to-resist cravings for foods that will perpetuate that vicious cycle of fat formation. This cycle then feeds the larger feedback loops that play into blood sugar balance, inflammatory pathways, and, of course, risk for brain disorder and disease. Put simply, if you cannot control your hunger and appetite, good luck managing your blood chemistry, metabolism, waistline, and, in the bigger picture, the prospect of crippling your brain.

During the third week of the program, I’ll ask you to focus on achieving high-quality sleep on a routine basis so you can gain control of the hormones that have everything to do with the fate of your brain. And you won’t have to reach for a sleep aid. The best sleep for the brain comes naturally.

PART III

SAY GOOD-BYE TO GRAIN BRAIN

Congratulations. You've learned more about the habits of a highly effective brain than most practicing doctors today. If you haven't already begun to change a few things in your life based on what you've read, now is your chance. In this section of the book, you'll follow a four-week program, during which you'll shift your diet from relying on carbs and rehabilitate your body back to optimal health. This will be the place where you feel vibrant, energetic, and mentally sharp. It's also where any doctor who examines your blood work will applaud you for having excellent control of your blood sugar, inflammatory markers, and even cholesterol level. It's the place we all dream of being — and it's much closer than you think.

Making lifestyle changes, even small ones, can seem overwhelming at first. You wonder how you can avoid your usual habits. Will you feel deprived and hungry? Will you find it impossible to keep this new lifestyle up forever? Is this program doable given the time you have and the commitments you've already made? And can you reach a point where following these guidelines is second nature?

This program is the answer. It's a simple, straightforward strategy that has the right balance of structure and adaptability to honor your personal preferences and power of choice. You will finish my four-week program with the knowledge and inspiration to stay on a healthy path for the rest of your life. The closer you stick to my guidelines, the faster you will see results. Bear in mind that this program has many benefits beyond the obvious physical ones. Optimal brain health (and a smaller waistline) might be first and foremost on your mind, but the rewards don't end there. You will see change in every area of your life. You will feel more confident and have more self-esteem. You'll feel younger and more in control of your life and future. You'll be able to navigate through stressful times with ease, have the motivation to stay active and engage with others, and feel more accomplished at work and home. In short, you will be happier and more productive. And your success will breed more success. When your life becomes richer, fuller, and more

energized as a result of your efforts, you won't want to revert to your old, unhealthy lifestyle. I know you can do this. You must, for yourself and your loved ones. The payoffs — and the potentially calamitous consequences if you don't heed this advice — are huge.

CHAPTER 10

A New Way of Life

The Four-Week Plan of Action

At home I serve the kind of food I know the story behind.

— MICHAEL POLLAN

HERE'S WHERE THE RUBBER MEETS the road. Some of you might be panicking at the thought of losing your beloved carbs. I realize that for some people, ditching bread, pasta, pastries, and most desserts (among other things) is going to be tough. Change is hard. And changing long-established habits is harder. I am often asked right off the bat, “What the heck am I going to eat?” Some worry about their withdrawal from sugar and wheat and insatiable hunger for carbs. They anticipate colossal cravings that they won't be able to resist. They fear the body's reaction to a dietary U-turn. And they wonder if this is truly doable in the real world if willpower isn't in their vocabulary. Well, folks, let me be the first to say that yes — all of this is possible. You just need to take the initial plunge and experience the effects. Within a matter of days or just a couple of weeks I predict that you'll have clearer thoughts, better sleep, and improved energy. You'll suffer fewer headaches, manage stress effortlessly, and feel happier. Those of you who live with a chronic neurological condition, such as ADHD, anxiety disorder, or depression, may notice that your symptoms begin to wane or even vanish. Over time, you'll watch the weight fall off, and specific laboratory tests will show vast improvements in many areas of your biochemistry. If you could peer into your brain, you'd also see that it's functioning at its highest level.

It's a good idea to check with your doctor about beginning this new program, especially if you have any health issues such as diabetes. This is important if you're going to opt for the one-day fast, outlined on [here](#). Over the course of the next month, you will achieve four important goals:

1. Shift your body away from relying on carbs for fuel and add brain-boosting supplements to your daily regimen.

2. Incorporate a fitness routine into your schedule if you don't already have one.
3. Work on getting restful, routine sleep seven days a week.
4. Establish a new rhythm and maintain healthy habits for life.

I've broken down the program into four weeks, with each week devoted to focusing on one of these specific goals. In the days leading up to the first week, you should see your doctor to have certain tests performed that will give you a baseline. You'll also use this time to get your kitchen organized, start your supplements, begin to wean yourself from carbs, and consider a one-day fast to kick-start the program.

During week 1, "Focus on Food," you'll start my menu plans and execute my dietary recommendations.

During week 2, "Focus on Exercise," I'll encourage you to start a regular workout program and give you ideas for moving more throughout the day.

In week 3, "Focus on Sleep," you'll turn your attention to your sleep habits and follow a few simple tips to ensure that you're achieving the best sleep possible every single night, weekends included.

During week 4, "Put It All Together," I'll help you put all the elements of this program together and equip you with strategies for permanently establishing these new behaviors in your life. Don't second-guess your ability to succeed at this; I've designed this program to be as practical and easy to follow as possible.

PRELUDE TO WEEK 1: PREPARE

Determine Your Baseline

Prior to beginning the dietary program, have the following laboratory studies performed, if possible. I've included target healthy levels where appropriate.

Test	Ideal level
• fasting blood glucose	less than 95 milligrams per deciliter (mg/dL)
• fasting insulin	below 8 μ U/ml (ideally, below 3)
• hemoglobin A1C	4.8 to 5.4 percent
• fructosamine	188 to 223 μ mol/L
• homocysteine	8 μ mol/L or less
• vitamin D	80 ng/mL
• C-reactive protein	0.00 to 3.0 mg/L
• gluten sensitivity test	

with Cyrex array 3 test

Upon completion of the four-week program, these laboratory studies should be repeated. Understand that it may take several months to see dramatic improvement in these parameters, especially the hemoglobin A1C, which is typically only measured every three to four months. But if you follow this program from day 1, you should nonetheless begin to see positive changes in your blood glucose and insulin levels within a month that will motivate you to keep going.

The fructosamine test, which is also a measurement of glycated protein and gives a great understanding of average blood sugar control, is something that changes quite rapidly, in two to three weeks. So while you may not see a huge change in hemoglobin A1C, you should absolutely see a change in fructosamine.

Homocysteine is an amino acid-like chemical, now generally regarded as being quite toxic to the brain; as noted above, you want to see a homocysteine level at around 8 micromoles per liter ($\mu\text{mol/L}$) or less. Having a homocysteine level of just 14 — a value exceeded by many of my patients when first examined — was described in the *New England Journal of Medicine* as being associated with a doubling of the risk for Alzheimer's disease (an "elevated" homocysteine level is anything above 10 $\mu\text{mol/L}$ in the blood). Homocysteine levels are almost always easy to improve. Many drugs can inhibit the B vitamins and raise homocysteine (see list at DrPerlmutter.com), but you can actively correct your level just by supplementing with some B vitamins and folic acid. Typically, I ask patients with a poor homocysteine test to take 50 milligrams of vitamin B6, 800 micrograms of folic acid, and 500 micrograms of vitamin B12 daily and retest after about three months.

Don't be alarmed if your vitamin D level is abysmally low. The majority of Americans are deficient in this critical nutrient. Because it can take time for the body to shore up its levels of vitamin D upon supplementation, you'll start with 5,000 international units (IU) of vitamin D once a day, and test your level after two months. If after two months your level is 50 nanograms per milliliter (ng/mL) or under, you'll take an additional 5,000 IU daily and retest again in two months. It's the level maintained in your body that matters, not the dosage. Normal is between 30 and 100 ng/mL, but you don't want to be squeaking by with a 31. You want to achieve a level around 80 ng/mL. This reflects the ideal level of the so-called normal zone. Ask your health care practitioner to help you adjust your dosage to achieve an optimal level. Once

you do, a daily dose of 2,000 IU will usually suffice to maintain a healthy level, but ask your doctor for specific recommendations.

An ideal level of C-reactive protein, a marker of inflammation in the body, is less than 1.0 mg/L. CRP may take several months to improve, but you may well see positive changes even after one month on the program.

Finally, I highly recommend that you ask for the Cyrex array 3 test, available to doctors from Cyrex Labs (see link at www.DrPerlmutter.com). It's the best test on the market for gluten sensitivity. In my experience, routine laboratory tests for "celiac disease" are not sensitive enough to uncover gluten sensitivity in everyone, so don't bother with them.

Start Your Supplements

You will be starting a daily supplement regimen for life. All of the supplements listed on [here](#) with their daily recommended dosage can be found at health food stores, most drugstores and supermarkets, and online. You'll find a list of some of my favorite brands at www.DrPerlmutter.com. Probiotics should be taken on an empty stomach, but the other supplements can be taken with or without food. Water-soluble supplements like turmeric and resveratrol are metabolized fairly rapidly, so it's best to take these supplements twice daily. Vitamin D and DHA are oils, so taking them just once a day is perfectly fine. For more details about each of these, refer back to [chapter 7](#).

If you have any questions about dosage due to personal health challenges, ask your doctor for help in making proper adjustments. All of the dosages listed are generally ideal for both adults and children, but ask your pediatrician for specific recommendations based on your child's weight. At my clinic, for example, I prescribe 100 milligrams of DHA for children up to eighteen months and then 200 milligrams daily; for kids with ADHD, however, those dosages are usually higher — around 400 milligrams daily.

alpha-lipoic acid	600 mg daily
coconut oil	1 teaspoon daily, taken straight or used in cooking
DHA	1,000 mg daily (Note: It's okay to buy DHA that comes in combination with EPA; opt for a fish oil supplement or choose DHA derived from marine algae.)
probiotics	1 capsule taken on an empty stomach up to three times daily; look for a probiotic that contains at least ten billion active cultures from at least ten different strains, including <i>Lactobacillus acidophilus</i> and bifidobacterium
resveratrol	100 mg twice daily
turmeric	350 mg twice daily

vitamin D₃

5,000 IU daily

Clear Out Your Kitchen

In the days leading up to your new way of eating, you'll want to take an inventory of your kitchen and eliminate items that you'll no longer be consuming. Start by removing the following:

- All sources of gluten (see [here](#)–[here](#) for the full list), including whole-grain and whole-wheat forms of bread, noodles, pastas, pastries, baked goods, and cereals.
- All forms of processed carbs, sugar, and starch: corn, yams, potatoes, sweet potatoes, chips, crackers, biscuits, pastries, muffins, pizza dough, cakes, doughnuts, sugary snacks, sweets, energy bars, ice cream/frozen yogurt/sherbet, jams/jellies/preserves, ketchup, processed cheese spreads, juices, dried fruit, sports drinks, soft drinks/soda, fried foods, honey, agave, sugar (white and brown), corn syrup, and maple syrup.
- Packaged foods labeled “fat-free” or “low-fat” (unless they are authentically “fat-free” or “low-fat” and within the protocol, such as water, mustard, and balsamic vinegar).
- Margarine, vegetable shortening, and any commercial brand of cooking oil (soybean, corn, cottonseed, canola, peanut, safflower, grape seed, sunflower, rice bran, and wheat germ oils) — even if they are organic.
- Non-fermented soy (e.g., tofu and soy milk) and processed foods made with soy (look for “soy protein isolate” in list of ingredients; avoid soy cheese, soy burgers, soy hot dogs, soy nuggets, soy ice cream, soy yogurt). Note: Although some naturally brewed soy sauces are technically gluten-free, many commercial brands have trace amounts of gluten. If you need to use soy sauce in your cooking, use tamari soy sauce made with 100 percent soybeans and no wheat.

Watch out for foods marked (and marketed) “gluten-free.” Some of these foods are fine because they never contained gluten to begin with. But many are labeled as such because they have been processed — their gluten has been replaced by another ingredient such as cornflour, maize meal, rice starch, potato starch, or tapioca starch, all of which can be equally as offensive, raising blood sugar enormously. Also, trace amounts of gluten can remain. The term “gluten-free” has no legal meaning at the moment; the FDA has proposed a definition but has not yet finalized it. Be extra cautious about gluten-free sauces, gravies, and maize meal products (e.g., tacos, tortillas, cereals, and corn chips).

Restock

The following items can be consumed liberally (go organic and local with your whole-food choices wherever possible; flash-frozen is fine, too):

- **Healthy fat:** extra-virgin olive oil, sesame oil, coconut oil, grass-fed tallow and organic or pasture-fed butter, ghee, almond milk, avocados, coconuts, olives, nuts and nut butters, cheese (except for blue cheeses), and seeds (flaxseed, sunflower seeds, pumpkin seeds, sesame seeds, chia seeds)

- **Herbs, seasonings, and condiments:** You can go wild here as long as you watch labels. Kiss ketchup and chutney good-bye but enjoy mustard, horseradish, tapenade, and salsa if they are free of gluten, wheat, soy, and sugar. There are virtually no restrictions on herbs and seasonings; be mindful of packaged products, however, that were made at plants that process wheat and soy.

- **Low-sugar fruit:** avocado, bell peppers, cucumber, tomato, courgette, squash, pumpkin, aubergine, lemons, limes

- **Protein:** whole eggs; wild fish (salmon, black cod, mahimahi, grouper, herring, trout, sardines); shellfish and mollusks (shrimp, crab, lobster, mussels, clams, oysters); grass-fed meat, fowl, poultry, and pork (beef, lamb, liver, wild boar, chicken, turkey, duck, ostrich, veal); wild game

- **Vegetables:** leafy greens and lettuces, collards, spinach, broccoli, kale, chard, cabbage, onions, mushrooms, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, sauerkraut, artichoke, alfalfa sprouts, green beans, celery, bok choy, radishes, watercress, turnip, asparagus, garlic, leek, fennel, shallots, spring onions, ginger, kohlrabi, parsley, water chestnuts

The following can be used in moderation (“moderation” means eating small amounts of these ingredients once a day or, ideally, just a couple times weekly):

- Carrots and parsnips.

- Cottage cheese, yogurt, and kefir: Use sparingly in recipes or as a topping.

- Cow’s milk and cream: Use sparingly in recipes, coffee, and tea.

- Legumes (beans, lentils, peas). Exception: you can have hummus (made from chickpeas).

- Non-gluten grains: amaranth, buckwheat, rice (brown, white, wild), millet, quinoa, sorghum, teff. (A note about oats: although oats do not naturally contain gluten, they are frequently contaminated with gluten because they are processed at mills that also handle wheat; avoid them unless they come with a guarantee that they are gluten-free.) When non-gluten grains are processed for human consumption (e.g., milling whole oats and preparing rice for packaging), their physical structure changes, and this increases the risk of an inflammatory reaction. For this reason, we limit these foods.

- Sweeteners: natural stevia and chocolate (choose dark chocolate that’s at least 70 percent or more cocoa).

- Whole sweet fruit: Berries are best; be extra cautious of sugary fruits such as apricots, mangos, melons, papaya, prunes, and pineapple.
- Wine: one glass a day if you so choose, preferably red.

Egg-Citing

I am compelled to say a few kind things in defense of eggs, since they are among the most wrongly accused foods in our modern era. I'll start by stating two important but seldom remembered facts: (1) Time and time again, science has failed to connect dietary fats of animal origin (i.e., saturated fats) and dietary cholesterol to both levels of serum cholesterol and risk for coronary heart disease; the belief that the cholesterol we eat converts directly into blood cholesterol is unequivocally false; and (2) when researchers compare serum cholesterol levels to egg intake, they note over and over again that the levels of cholesterol in those who consume few or no eggs are virtually identical to those in people who consume bountiful numbers of eggs. Remember that contrary to popular wisdom, dietary cholesterol actually reduces the body's production of cholesterol, and more than 80 percent of the cholesterol in your blood that is measured on your cholesterol test is actually produced in your own liver.

To quote the authors of a cogent article ("Eggs and Dietary Cholesterol — Dispelling the Myth") by British researchers in the British Nutrition Foundation's newsletter: "The popular misconception that eggs are bad for your blood cholesterol and therefore bad for your heart persists among many people and still continues to influence the advice of some health professionals. The myth prevails despite strong evidence to show that the effects of cholesterol-rich foods on blood cholesterol are small and clinically insignificant."¹ The erroneous but strong messages about egg restriction that emanated primarily from the United States in the 1970s have unfortunately stuck around far too long. Scores of studies have confirmed the value of eggs, which are quite possibly the world's most perfect food; the yolk is the most nutritious part.² In fact, in a 2013 study, researchers at the University of Connecticut demonstrated that people on a low-carb diet, eating whole eggs — even on a daily basis — improved insulin sensitivity and other cardiovascular risk parameters.³ In addition to their healthy cholesterol, whole eggs contain all of the essential amino acids we need to survive, vitamins and minerals, plus antioxidants known to protect our eyes — all for the low-low price of just 70 calories each. Moreover, they contain ample supplies of choline, which is particularly important for aiding healthy brain function as well as pregnancy. I cringe when I see an egg-white omelet on a menu. If only

the people behind the old “incredible, edible egg” campaign would make some more noise!

You’ll see that I recommend lots of eggs on this diet. Please don’t be afraid of them. They could be the best way to start your day and set the tone for blood sugar balance. There are so many things you can do with eggs, too. Whether you scramble, fry, poach, boil, or use them in dishes, eggs are indeed among the most versatile ingredients. Hard-boil a carton of eggs on a Sunday night and you’ve got breakfast and/or snacks for the week.

Optional Fast

Ideally, start week 1 after you have fasted for one full day. Fasting is an excellent way to set the foundation and speed up your body’s shift to burning fat for fuel and producing biochemicals that have astonishing pro-health effects on the body and brain. For many, it helps to do the fast on a Sunday (last meal is dinner Saturday night), and then begin the diet program on a Monday morning.

The fasting protocol is simple: No food but lots of water for a twenty-four-hour period. Avoid caffeine, too. If you take any medications, by all means continue to take them (if you take diabetes medications, please consult your physician first). If the idea of fasting is too painful for you, simply wean yourself from carbs for a few days as you prepare your kitchen. The more addicted your body is to carbs, the harder this will be. I prefer that my patients go cold turkey when it comes to nixing gluten, so do your best to at least eliminate sources of gluten entirely and cut back on other carbs. People whose bodies are not dependent on carbs can fast for longer periods, sometimes for days. When you’ve established this diet for life and want to fast for further benefits, you can try a seventy-two-hour fast (assuming you’ve checked with your doctor if you have any medical conditions to consider). I recommend that people fast at least four times a year; fasting during the seasonal changes (e.g., the last week of September, December, March, and June) is an excellent practice to keep.

WEEK 1: FOCUS ON FOOD

Now that your kitchen is in order, it’s time to get used to preparing meals using this new set of guidelines. In the next chapter, you’ll find a day-by-day menu plan for the first week that will serve as a model for planning your meals the remaining three weeks. Unlike other diets, this one won’t ask you to count calories, limit fat intake, or fret over portion sizes. I trust you can tell

the difference between a super-sized plate and a normal quantity. And I won't even ask you to worry about how much saturated versus unsaturated fat you're consuming.

The good news about this type of diet is that it's enormously "self-regulating" — you won't find yourself overeating and you'll enjoy feelings of fullness for several hours before needing another meal. When your body is running mostly on carbs, it's being driven by the glucose-insulin roller-coaster ride that triggers intense hunger when your blood sugar plunges, and then short-lived satiety. But eating a low-carb, higher-fat diet will have the opposite effect. It will eliminate cravings and prevent those mental shutdowns in the late afternoon that often occur on carb-based diets. It'll automatically allow you to control calories (without even thinking about it), burn more fat, put an end to mindless eating (i.e., the extra 500 calories or so many people unconsciously consume daily to bail out blood sugar chaos), and effortlessly boost your mental performance. Say good-bye to feeling moody, foggy, sluggish, and tired throughout the day. And say hello to a whole new you.

The only difference between this month and beyond is that you're going to aim for the fewest carbs now. It's imperative to lower carb intake to just *30 to 40 grams/1 to 2oz a day for four weeks*. After that, you can increase your carb intake to 60 grams/2½oz a day. Adding more carbs into your diet after the first four weeks doesn't mean you can start eating pasta and bread again. What you'll do is simply add more of the items listed in the "moderate" category, such as whole fruit, non-gluten grains, and legumes. How to know how much you're getting? Use the food almanac on my website (DrPerlmutter.com), which lists grams of carbs per serving. If you follow the menu ideas and recipes in this book, you'll soon gain an understanding of what a low-carb meal looks like.

What about your fiber intake? Many people worry that reducing all those "fiber-rich" wheat products and breads will cause a dramatic loss of important fiber. Wrong. When you replace those wheat carbs with carbs from nuts and vegetables, your fiber intake will go up. You will get your fill of essential vitamins and nutrients you were likely lacking previously, too.

You might find it helpful to keep a food journal throughout the program. Make notes about recipes you like and foods that you think might still be giving you trouble (e.g., you experience symptoms such as stomach upset or headaches every time you eat sesame seeds). Some people are sensitive to foods that are included in this diet. For example, about 50 percent of those who are gluten intolerant are also sensitive to dairy. Surprisingly, researchers are also finding that coffee tends to cross-react with gluten. If, after embarking on this diet, you still sense a glitch somewhere, you may want to

have an additional Cyrex lab test done called the array 4, which can help pinpoint those foods that, for you, cross-react with gluten. It identifies reactions to the following:

amaranth	millet	spelt
buckwheat	oats	tapioca
chocolate	quinoa	teff
coffee	rice	whey
dairy	sesame	yeast
eggs	sorghum	
hemp	soy	

I recommend that you avoid eating out during the first three weeks on the program so you can focus on getting the dietary protocol down. This will prepare you for the day you do eat outside your home and have to make good decisions about what to order (see [here](#)–[here](#)). The first three weeks will also eliminate your cravings so there's less temptation when you're looking at a menu filled with carbs.

During week 1, focus on mastering your new eating habits. You can use my recipes, including my sample seven-day meal plan, or venture out on your own as long as you stick to the guidelines. I've created an easy list of ideas categorized by type of meal (e.g., breakfast, lunch or dinner, salads), so you can pick and choose. Each meal should contain a source of healthy fat and protein. You can pretty much eat as many vegetables as you like with the exception of corn, potatoes, carrots, and parsnips. If you follow the first week's plan, configuring your own meals in the future will be a cinch.

WEEK 2: FOCUS ON EXERCISE

Aim to engage in aerobic physical activity if you're not already doing so for a minimum of twenty minutes a day. Use this week to establish a routine you enjoy that gets your heart rate up by at least 50 percent of your resting baseline. Remember, you are creating new habits for a lifetime and you don't want to get burned-out easily. But you also don't want to get too comfortable and shy away from challenging your body in ways that boost health and increase the brain's longevity.

To reap the benefits of exercise, make it a goal to break a sweat once a day and force your lungs and heart to work harder. Remember, in addition to all the cardiovascular and weight-management benefits you'll gain from exercise, studies show that people who exercise regularly, compete in sports,

or just walk several times a week protect their brains from shrinkage. They also minimize the chance of becoming obese and diabetic — major risk factors in brain disease.

If you've been leading a sedentary lifestyle, then simply go for a twenty-minute walk daily and add more minutes as you get comfortable with your routine. You can also add intensity to your workouts by increasing your speed and tackling hills. Or carry a five-pound free weight in each hand and perform some bicep curls as you walk.

For those of you who already maintain a fitness regimen, see if you can increase your workouts to a minimum of thirty minutes a day, at least five days a week. This also might be the week you try something different, such as joining a group exercise class or dusting off an old bicycle in the garage. These days, opportunities to exercise are everywhere beyond traditional gyms, so there's really no excuse. You can even stream videos and exercise in the comfort of your own home. I really don't care which play you choose. Just pick one!

Ideally, a comprehensive workout should entail a mix of cardio, strength training, and stretching. But if you're starting from scratch, begin with cardio and then add in strength training and stretching over time. Strength training can be done with classic gym equipment, free weights, or the use of your own body weight in classes geared toward this activity such as yoga and Pilates. These classes often entail lots of stretching, too, but you don't need a formal class to work on maintaining your flexibility. You can perform many stretching exercises on your own, even in front of the television.

Once you've gotten a regular workout down, you can schedule your daily routines around different types of exercise. For example, Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays could be the days you take a one-hour indoor cycling class; on Tuesdays and Thursdays you hit a yoga class. Then, on Saturday, you go for a hike with friends or swim laps in a pool and take Sunday off to rest. I recommend getting out your calendar and scheduling in physical activity.

If you have a day during which there's absolutely no time to devote to a continuous segment of formal exercise, then think about the ways you can sneak in more minutes of physical activity during the day. All the research indicates that you can get similar health benefits from doing three ten-minute bouts of exercise as you would from doing a single thirty-minute workout. So if you are short on time on any given day, just break up your routine into bite-size chunks. And think of ways to combine exercise with other tasks; for example, conduct a meeting with a colleague at work while walking outside, or watch television at night while you complete a set of stretching exercises

on the floor. If possible, limit the minutes you spend sitting down. Walk around if you can while you talk on the phone using a headset, take the stairs rather than the elevator, and park far away from the front door to your building. The more you move throughout the day, the more your brain stands to gain.

WEEK 3: FOCUS ON SLEEP

In addition to continuing your new diet and exercise habits, use this week to focus on your sleep hygiene. Now that you've been on the protocol for a couple of weeks, your sleep should have improved. If you get fewer than six hours of sleep per night, you can start by increasing that period of time to at least seven hours. This is the bare minimum if you want to have normal, healthy levels of fluctuating hormones in your body.

To ensure that you're doing all that you can to maximize high-quality, restful sleep, below are some tips to getting a good night's sleep:

1. **Maintain regular sleep habits.** Experts in sleep medicine like to call this "sleep hygiene" — the ways in which we ensure refreshing sleep night after night. Go to bed and get up at roughly the same time seven days a week, 365 days a year. Keep your bedtime routine consistent; it might include downtime, teeth-brushing, a warm bath, herbal tea, whatever you need to do to wind down and signal to your body that it's time for sleep. We do this with our young children but often forget about our own bedtime rituals. They work wonders in helping us to feel primed for slumber.

2. **Identify and manage ingredients hostile to sleep.** These can be any number of things, from prescription medicine to caffeine, alcohol, and nicotine. Both caffeine and nicotine are stimulants. Anyone who still smokes should adopt a plan to quit, for smoking alone will increase your risk of everything under the medical sun. As for caffeine, try to avoid it after two p.m. This will give your body time to process the caffeine so it doesn't impact sleep. Some people, however, are extra sensitive to caffeine, so you may want to back up this time to noon or move to less-caffeinated drinks. Ask your doctor or pharmacist about any potential sleep repercussions for medications you take on a routine basis. Be aware that lots of over-the-counter medications can contain sleep-disrupting ingredients, too. Popular headache drugs, for instance, can contain caffeine. Alcohol, while creating a sedative effect immediately upon consumption, can disrupt sleep while it's being processed by the body; one of the enzymes used to break down alcohol has stimulating effects. Alcohol also causes the release of adrenaline and disrupts the production of serotonin, an important brain chemical that initiates sleep.

3. **Time your dinner appropriately.** No one likes to go to bed on a full or empty stomach. Find your sweet spot, leaving approximately three hours between dinner and bedtime. Also be aware of ingredients in foods that can be problematic to digest easily before going to bed. Everyone will be different in this department.

4. **Don't eat erratically.** Eat on a regular schedule. This will keep your appetite hormones in check. If you delay a meal too long, you will throw your hormones out of whack and trigger the nervous system, which can later impact your sleep.

5. **Try a bedtime snack.** Nocturnal hypoglycemia (low nighttime blood glucose levels) can cause insomnia. If your blood sugar drops too low, it causes the release of hormones that stimulate the brain and tell you to eat. Try a bedtime snack to avoid this midnight disaster. Go for foods high in the amino acid tryptophan, which is a natural promoter of sleep. Foods high in tryptophan include turkey, cottage cheese, chicken, eggs, and nuts (especially almonds). Just watch your portion, however. A handful of nuts might be perfect. You don't want to devour a three-egg omelet with turkey right before bedtime. Choose wisely.

6. **Beware of imposter stimulants.** You already know that regular coffee will keep you alert, but today caffeine-infused products are everywhere. If you follow my dietary protocol, you're not likely to encounter these. Also, certain food compounds such as colorings, flavorings, and refined carbs can act as stimulants, so avoid these, too.

7. **Set the setting.** It should come as no surprise that keeping brain- and eye-stimulating electronics in the bedroom is a bad idea. But people still break this most basic rule. Try to keep your bedroom a quiet, peaceful sanctuary free of rousing hardware (e.g., TVs, computers, phones, etc.), as well as bright lights and clutter. Invest in a comfortable bed and plush sheets. Maintain dim lighting. Cultivate a mood for sleep (and sex for that matter, which can also prepare one for sleep, but that's another story).

8. **Use sleep aids prudently.** The occasional sleep aid won't kill you. But chronic use of them can become a problem. The goal is to arrive at sound sleep on a routine basis without extra help. And I'm not referring to earplugs or eye masks here, both of which I approve of as sleep aids; I'm talking about over-the-counter and prescription drugs that induce sleep. Examples include "p.m." formulas that include sedating antihistamines such as diphenhydramine and doxylamine. Even if they claim to be non-addictive, they can still create a psychological dependency. Better to regulate your sleep naturally.

A Note About Bathroom Toiletries and Beauty Products

In addition to focusing on sleep, during week 3 you should overhaul your bathroom supplies. Gluten tends to find its way into many commercial products, and it can unintentionally end up in our bodies if we use these products on our skin — our largest organ. So pay attention to the beauty and makeup supplies you use regularly, including shampoos, conditioners, and other hair products. You may want to seek out new brands that offer gluten-free products. SophytoPRO (<http://sophytopro.com>) is one such company that specializes in a skin care line that is free of ingredients that can irritate not only your skin but your body and brain.

WEEK 4: PUT IT ALL TOGETHER

By now you should be in the groove of this new way of life and feeling much better than you did three weeks ago. You can tell the difference between a

grain-brain food and a healthier choice. Your sleep has improved and you've established a regular workout routine. Now what?

Don't panic if you don't feel like you've totally hit your stride yet. Most of us have at least one weak spot in our lives that requires extra attention. Perhaps you're the type who has a hard time getting to bed by ten p.m. every night, or maybe your Achilles' heel is finding time to work out most days of the week and avoiding the junk food that's always lying around your office's break room. Use this week to find a rhythm in your new routine. Identify areas in your life where you struggle to maintain this protocol and see what you can do to rectify that. A few tips that you might find helpful:

- **Plan each week in advance.** It helps to set aside a few minutes over the weekend to plan your upcoming week and take into consideration your agenda and appointments. Predict the hectic days when it will be harder to make time for a workout and see if you can build that into your schedule. Block out your sleeping zone every night and be sure to maintain the same bedtime; be religious about it. Map out the majority of your meals for the week, especially lunches and dinners. We tend to be pretty routine with breakfast, but can fall prey to last-minute decisions about lunch while at work, as well as dinner if we arrive home starving. Be on the lookout for those days when you know that you'll get home late and won't have energy to cook. Have a contingency plan in place. (I give you plenty of ideas in the next chapter for dealing with meals away from home and handling those moments when you need to have a little something to tide you over until you can eat a full meal.)

- **Prepare shopping lists.** Whether you shop for groceries every day or just once a week, you'll want to have a list in hand. This will help you be more efficient and avoid impulse buying. It will also take a lot of the guesswork out of trying to figure out what's a safe bet at the market to buy, cook, and eat. For the most part, stick to the perimeter of the grocery store, where the foods closest to nature are found. Avoid the middle aisles, which are overflowing with processed, packaged goods. And don't shop while hungry; if you do, you'll gravitate toward damaging foods of the sugary and salty variety. Keep in mind that fresh ingredients won't last more than three to five days unless you freeze them. A monthly trip to a store that sells foods in bulk might be helpful if you have a family to feed and extra room in your freezer for large quantities of meat, poultry, and frozen vegetables.

- **Create a few "non-negotiables."** If you have high hopes of getting to the farmers' market on Thursday afternoon in your neighborhood, then write that down in your calendar and make it a non-negotiable. If you dream of trying a new yoga studio that opened up in town, set aside a specific time and make it happen. Creating non-negotiable goals will help you dodge those excuses that surface when you get lazy or thwarted by other tasks. They are also excellent ways to fortify your weak spots. Be clear about your priorities when you set the course for your week and stick to them!

- **Use technology.** We use technology every day to make our lives easier. So why not capitalize on Internet resources and high-tech apps that can help us stick to our goals and stay tuned in to ourselves? The market for self-tracking apps, for instance, has exploded in the last few years. You can use nifty devices to track how many steps you take a day, how well you slept last night, and even how fast you eat. Some of these work on smartphones while others require an actual device such as an accelerometer that tracks your bodily movements throughout the day. Granted, these

tools are not for everyone, but you might just find a few programs that ultimately help you to maintain a healthy lifestyle. For a few ideas, go to DrPerlmutter.com. There, you'll also find a list of apps that can help you maximize the information in this book, such as food almanacs that provide ingredient information about common foods and links to health-related services that can remind you to keep track of your habits. Google Calendar, for example, can be used as a comprehensive self-management application. If it works for you, use it.

- **Be flexible but be consistent.** Don't beat yourself up when you momentarily fall off the program. We're all human. You might have a bad day and find yourself skipping the gym in favor of a night out with friends at a restaurant where pretty much everything served is off-limits. Or perhaps it's the holidays and a few indulgences are inevitable. As long as you get back on track once you catch yourself, you'll be fine. Just don't let a small slip derail you forever. To this end, remember to find consistency in your daily patterns. Consistency is not about rigidity. It's about eating and exercising in ways that serve you without making you feel like you're going to extremes or forcing yourself to do something you don't like. Finding your own unique version of consistency will be key to your success. You'll figure out what works best for you and what doesn't. Then you can adapt this program to your life based on the general guidelines and maintain it on a consistent basis.

- **Find motivators.** Sometimes it helps to have motivators. A motivator can be anything from the desire to run your town's 10K to planning a trip with your adult children to hike Mount Kilimanjaro. People who decide to focus on their health often do so for specific reasons, such as "I want more energy," "I want to live longer," "I want to lose weight," and "I don't want to die like my mother did." Keep the big picture in plain sight. This will help you not only maintain a healthy lifestyle, but also get back on track even if you do occasionally cheat. Progress is sometimes better than perfection.

Everyone's daily schedule will be different, but patterns should exist. Below is a sample of what a day might look like:

Wake up, walk the dog:	6:30 a.m.
Breakfast:	7:00 a.m.
Snack:	10:00 a.m.
Bagged lunch:	12:30 p.m.
After-lunch walk for twenty minutes:	1:00 p.m.
Snack:	4:00 p.m.
Gym:	5:45 p.m.
Dinner:	7:00 p.m.
Walk the dog:	7:30 p.m.
Lights out:	10:30 p.m.

Eating Out

Toward the end of week 4, work on the goal of being able to eat anywhere. Most of us eat out several times a week, especially while we're at work. It's virtually impossible to plan and prepare every single meal and snack we eat, so make it a goal to navigate other menus. See if you can return to your favorite restaurants and order off the menu while still following this protocol. If you find it too challenging, then you may want to test new restaurants that cater to your needs. It's not that hard to make any menu work for you as long as you're savvy about your decisions. Baked fish with steamed vegetables is likely to be a safe bet (hold the potatoes, fries, and bread basket, and ask for a side salad with olive oil and vinegar). Watch out for elaborate dishes that contain multiple ingredients. And when in doubt, ask about the dishes.

In general, eating out should be minimized because eliminating all sources of bad ingredients is impossible. On most days of the week, commit to consuming foods that you prepare. Keep snacks on hand, too, so you don't get caught famished while at the gas station's convenience store. There are plenty of snack and "on-the-go" ideas in the next chapter, many of which are portable and nonperishable. Once you've gotten a handle on this way of eating, see if you can go back to your old recipes and modify them to fit my guidelines. You'd be surprised by what a little experimentation in the kitchen can do to turn a classic dish filled with gluten and inflammatory ingredients into an equally delicious but brain-friendly meal. Instead of regular flour or wheat, try coconut flour, nut meals like ground almonds, and ground flaxseed; in lieu of sugar, find ways to sweeten your recipe with stevia or whole fruits; and rather than cook with processed vegetable oils, stick with old-fashioned butter and extra virgin olive oil.

And when you're faced with temptation (the box of doughnuts at work or a friend's birthday cake), remind yourself that you'll pay for the indulgence somehow. Be willing to accept those consequences if you cannot say no. But keep in mind that a grain-brain-free way of life is, in my humble opinion, the most fulfilling and gratifying way of life there is. Enjoy it.

THE BALANCING ACT

As with so many things in life, discovering and establishing a new habit is a balancing act. Even once you've shifted your eating and exercise behaviors and changed the way you buy, cook, and order food, you'll still have moments when old habits emerge. I don't expect you to never eat a slice of crusty pizza or stack of steaming hot pancakes again, but I do hope that you stay mindful of your body's true needs now that you have the knowledge, and live out this newly found sensibility every day as best you can.

Many people have applied the famous 80/20 principle to diet — eat well 80 percent of the time and save that last 20 percent for splurges. But some of us find ourselves living the reverse! It's too easy to let an occasional splurge become a daily habit, like eating a bowl of ice cream several times a week. You should remember that there is always an excuse for not taking better care of yourself. We have parties and weddings to attend. We have work to address that leaves us high on stress and low on energy, time, and the mental bandwidth to make good food, exercise, and sleep choices. This is life, and accepting a certain give-and-take is okay. But see if you can stick to a 90/10 rule. For 90 percent of the time, eat within these guidelines and let the last 10 percent take care of itself, as it inevitably does in life. Then hit re-boot whenever you feel like you've fallen too far off the wagon. You can do this by fasting for a day and committing again to the same four weeks of restricting carbs to 30 to 40 grams/1 to 2oz a day. This protocol can be your lifeline to a healthier way of living that supports the vision you have for yourself — and your brain.

Life is an endless series of choices. *This way or that way? Now or later? Red sweater or green one? Sandwich or salad?* The whole point of this book has been to help you learn to make better decisions that will ultimately allow you to participate in life at its fullest. My hope is that I've given you plenty of ideas to at least begin to make a difference in your life. I see the value that being healthy — and mentally sharp — brings to people every day in my practice. I also see what sudden illness and chronic disease can do, regardless of people's achievements and how much they are loved. For many, health may not be the most important thing in life, but without it, nothing else matters. And when you have good health, pretty much anything is possible.

CHAPTER 11

Eating Your Way to a Healthy Brain

Meal Plans and Recipes

THE NUMBER OF MEAL IDEAS and recipes here goes to show how plentiful your choices are on this diet. You'll see an abundance of vegetables, fish, meat, poultry, nuts, eggs, and salads. But you could just as easily craft simpler dishes based on the themes presented here (e.g., pick a fish or meat to cook up with some side vegetables and a green salad for lunch or dinner and pack hard-boiled eggs for breakfast with a handful of nuts as a snack). You'll find a few ideas for dessert (yes, it's allowable!), as well as various salad dressings and dipping sauces.

Notice that you won't find nutritional content information in these recipes. As I mentioned earlier, one of my goals in this book has been to liberate you from ever having to count calories or grams of protein and fat (especially saturated fat) again. I want to teach you *what* to eat, not how to eat (i.e., how much of this or that). If you follow the guidelines and protocol, the fat, carbs, and protein intake will take care itself. You won't overeat, you won't feel underfed, and you'll be maximally nourishing your body and brain.

At DrPerlmutter.com, you'll find my recommendations for specific brands of foods that follow the *Grain Brain* guidelines. Even though you're evicting gluten, wheat, and most sugar from your diet, you'd be surprised by the abundance of food options available to you. You'll also be astonished by the control you'll gain over your hunger levels, cravings, portion sizes, and caloric intake. Your taste buds will be rejoicing, too, as they experience a rebirth of sorts and bestow upon you a new appreciation for food.

In the past decade, there's been a huge shift in the variety of food available at our markets. If you live in an urban area, for instance, you're likely to be able to purchase any kind of ingredient within a matter of miles, whether that means visiting your usual grocery store that's now filled with organic foods or venturing to a local farmers' market. Get to know your grocers; they can tell

you what just came in and where your foods are coming from. Aim for choosing produce that's in season, and be willing to try new foods you've never had before. Ten years ago, it was hard to buy wild boar or black cod, for instance, but today delicious and exotic meats and fish are widely available. Remember, go organic or wild whenever possible. When in doubt, ask your grocer.

What to Drink: Ideally, stick with purified water. Drink half of your body weight in ounces of purified water daily. If you weigh 150 pounds, that means drinking at least 75 fluid ounces, or about nine glasses, of water per day. You can also opt for tea or coffee (assuming you don't have any issues with coffee), but be careful about caffeine late in the day. For every caffeinated beverage you consume, include an extra 12 to 16 fluid ounces of water. Almond milk is also a healthy choice. At dinner, you have the option of having a glass of wine, preferably red.

Fruit: Choose whole fruit, and during the first four weeks, aim to save fruit for a snack or as a dessert. Try it with fresh, unsweetened cream or blended with coconut milk and a pinch of stevia or unsweetened cocoa powder.

Olive Oil Rule: You are free to liberally use olive oil (extra-virgin and organic). Note that in many cases, you can substitute coconut oil for olive oil during the cooking process. For instance, pan-fry fish and sauté vegetables in coconut oil rather than olive oil or scramble eggs in coconut oil for breakfast. This will help you get your daily teaspoon of coconut oil as recommended in the supplement section.

On the Go: When you're strapped for time and don't have access to a kitchen, which is often the case during lunch at work, pack food. Having pre-cooked foods — such as roasted or broiled chicken, poached salmon, or strips of grilled sirloin steak or roast beef — in your refrigerator ready to go is helpful. Fill a container with salad greens and chopped raw veggies and add your protein and dressing of choice on top before eating. Many supermarkets now offer ready-to-go foods that list their ingredients so you know what you're getting. Some Whole Foods stores, for example, have a "Meal Deal": You can pick grilled chicken or salmon and two sides, such as spicy green beans and raw kale salad.

And don't forget about leftovers. Many of the recipes in this chapter can be made over the weekend (and doubled for more) to cover multiple meals during the week while you're on the go. Just carry your food in an airtight container and eat cold or reheat in a microwave.

I travel with avocados and cans of sockeye salmon. Canned foods can be excellent sources of good, portable nutrition, as long as you're careful about which canned products you're buying. Canned tomatoes, for instance, can be great alternatives to fresh produce. Just be watchful of added ingredients like sodium and sugar. When choosing canned fish, opt for sustainably caught, pole- or troll-caught fish. Also steer clear of any fish that is likely to be high in mercury. A great site to bookmark on your computer is the Monterey Bay Aquarium's Seafood Watch program at <http://www.montereybayaquarium.org/cr/seafoodwatch.aspx>. The site offers up-to-date information about where your fish is coming from and which fish to avoid due to its contaminants and toxins.

What to Snack On: Due to the high satiety factor of the meals I suggest (not to mention the exquisite blood sugar control), you're not likely to find yourself hunting ravenously for food in between meals. But it's nice to know you can snack whenever you want to on this diet. Below are some ideas:

- A handful of raw nuts (with the exception of peanuts, which are a legume and not a nut). Or go for a mix of nuts and olives.
- A few squares of dark chocolate (anything above 70 percent cacao).
- Chopped raw vegetables (e.g., bell peppers, broccoli, cucumber, green beans, radishes) dipped in hummus, guacamole, goat cheese, tapenade, or nut butter.
- Cheese and wheat-free, low-carb crackers.
- Slices of cold roasted turkey or chicken dipped in mustard.
- Half an avocado drizzled with olive oil, salt, and pepper.
- Two hard-boiled eggs.
- Caprese salad: 1 sliced tomato topped with fresh sliced mozzarella cheese, drizzled olive oil, basil, salt, and pepper.
- Cold peeled shrimp with lemon and dill.
- One piece or serving of whole, low-sugar fruit (e.g., grapefruit, orange, apple, berries, melon, pear, cherries, grapes, kiwi, plum, peach, nectarine).

SAMPLE MENU FOR A WEEK

Here is what a weeklong, grain-brain-free diet approach could look like. All dishes accompanied by recipes are in boldface. The recipes begin on [here](#). Note: You can use butter, organic extra-virgin olive oil, or coconut oil when you pan-fry foods. Avoid processed oils and cooking sprays unless the spray is made from organic olive oil.

Monday:

- Breakfast: 2 scrambled eggs with 1 ounce Cheddar cheese and unlimited stir-fried veggies (e.g., onions, mushrooms, spinach, broccoli).
- Lunch: **Chicken with Mustard Vinaigrette** ([here](#)) with a side of leafy greens dressed with balsamic vinegar and olive oil.
- Dinner: 3 ounces grass-fed sirloin steak, organic roasted chicken, or wild fish with a side of greens and vegetables sautéed in butter and garlic.
- Dessert: half a cup of berries topped with a drizzle of fresh, unsweetened cream.

Tuesday:

- Breakfast: half an avocado drizzled with olive oil and two poached eggs topped with salsa.
- Lunch: **Lemon Chicken** ([here](#)) with **Herb Garden Salad with Balsamic Vinaigrette** ([here](#)).
- Dinner: **Quick Salmon with Mushrooms** ([here](#)) and unlimited roasted vegetables.
- Dessert: 2 **Chocolate Truffles** ([here](#)).

Wednesday:

- Breakfast: **Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata** ([here](#)).
- Lunch: **Lemon Rocket with Parmigiano-Reggiano** ([here](#)) and 75g/3oz diced grilled chicken.
- Dinner: **Chardonnay Baked Fish** ([here](#)) with 75g/3oz wild rice and unlimited steamed vegetables.
- Dessert: 1 whole apple, sliced and topped with a sprinkle of stevia and cinnamon.

Thursday:

- Breakfast: 3–4 slices of lox or smoked salmon with 25g/1oz goat cheese and 1 serving of **Quick Crunchy “Cereal”** ([here](#)).
- Lunch: 350ml/12floz **Sea Salt’s Courgette Yogurt Gazpacho with Saffron-Marinated Chicken Breast** ([here](#)).
- Dinner: **Balsamic-Glazed Steaks** ([here](#)) and **Green Beans with Garlic Dressing** ([here](#)).
- Dessert: 2 to 3 squares of dark chocolate.

Friday:

- Breakfast: **Coconut Oil Omelet** ([here](#)).
- Lunch: **Roasted Walnut-Oil Mesclun Salad** ([here](#)) and 75g/3oz grilled salmon.

- Dinner: **Greek Lemon Lamb** ([here](#)) and unlimited green beans and broccoli.
- Dessert: **Chocolate Coconut Mousse** ([here](#)).

Saturday:

- Breakfast: **Oatless “Oatmeal”** ([here](#)).
- Lunch: **Sea Salt’s Tuna Carpaccio with Red Onion, Parsley, and Pink Peppercorns** ([here](#)).
- Dinner: **Sea Salt’s Akaushi Beef Tenderloin with Brussels Sprouts** ([here](#)).
- Dessert: 100g/4oz whole strawberries dipped in 3 squares of melted dark chocolate.

Sunday:

- Breakfast: **Huevos Rancheros** ([here](#)).
- Lunch: **Nicoise Salad** ([here](#)).
- Dinner: **Sea Salt’s Grilled Sardines with Tomato, Rocket, and Pecorino Cheese** ([here](#)).
- Dessert: 2 squares of dark chocolate dipped in 1 tablespoon almond butter.

RECIPES

Abiding by the *Grain Brain* dietary principles is easier than you think. Even though this new way of eating significantly limits your intake of carbohydrates, especially wheat and sugar, there's really no shortage of foods and ingredients to play with in the kitchen. You'll have to get a little creative to follow some of your beloved dishes, but once you learn how to effortlessly make certain substitutions, you'll be able to do the same with your own recipes and return to your classic cookbooks. These recipes will give you a general sense of how to apply the guidelines to virtually any meal, and help you master the art of grain-brain-free cuisine.

Knowing that most people maintain busy schedules and have limited time to cook, I've chosen simple dishes that are relatively easy to prepare and, above all, are filled with flavor and nutrition. Although I encourage you to follow my seven-day meal plan outlined [here—here](#) so you don't even have to think about what to eat during the first week on the program, you could design your own protocol by choosing the recipes that appeal to you. Most of the ingredients used are widely available. Remember to go grass-fed, organic, and wild whenever possible. When choosing olive or coconut oil, reach for extra-virgin varieties. Although all of the ingredients listed in the recipes were chosen to be readily accessible as gluten-free, always check labels to be sure, particularly if you're buying a food processed by a manufacturer (e.g., mustard). You can never control what goes into products, but you can control what goes into your dishes.

BREAKFAST

Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata

Eggs are one of the most versatile ingredients. They can serve as a meal on their own or be added to other dishes. Buy organic, free-range eggs whenever possible. Frittatas are quick and easy to make, and are great for serving large groups. You can make many different kinds of frittatas by changing the type of cheese, leafy greens, and vegetables you use. Below is one of my favorites.

Serves 4

- 1 tablespoon olive oil
- 1 medium onion, chopped
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- 450g/1lb spinach leaves, washed and chopped
- 1 tablespoon water
- 9 large eggs, beaten
- 75g/3oz goat cheese, crumbled
- 25g/1oz grated Gruyère cheese

Preheat the oven to 200°C/400°F/gas mark 6.

In an ovenproof frying pan over medium-high heat, add the oil and heat until hot. Add the onions, salt, and pepper. Cook 3 to 4 minutes while stirring occasionally, until the onions are translucent. Add the spinach and water and cook, while mixing, until the spinach is wilted (about 1 to 2 minutes). Pour in the eggs and sprinkle on the goat cheese and Gruyère. Cook 1 to 2 minutes, until the mixture begins to set around the edges. Then transfer the pan to the oven and bake until set, 10 to 12 minutes.

Remove from the oven and serve.

Coconut Oil Omelet

Omelets are also a favorite in my house. Experiment with different vegetables and cook your omelet in olive oil one day and coconut oil the next.

Serves 1

- 1 onion, chopped
- 1 ripe tomato, chopped
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- 2 eggs, beaten
- 1 tablespoon coconut oil
- ¼ avocado, sliced
- 2 tablespoons salsa

Add the onion, tomato, salt, and pepper to the beaten eggs in a bowl and mix. Add the coconut oil to a frying pan and heat over medium-high heat. Once hot, add the egg mixture and cook until the eggs begin to set (about 2 minutes). Flip the omelet with a spatula and cook until the eggs are no longer runny (about 1 more minute). Fold the omelet in half and continue to cook if the omelet is not yet slightly brown. Transfer to a plate, and serve hot with sliced avocado and salsa on top.

Huevos Rancheros

This classic Mexican dish has been modified so that instead of eggs served on tortillas, they are prepared over a fresh bed of greens.

Serves 2

- 1 tablespoon butter or olive oil
- 4 eggs
- 120g/4½oz coarsely torn curly endive
- 50g/2oz sharp Cheddar cheese, grated
- 4 tablespoons salsa
- 2 tablespoons fresh coriander leaves, chopped
- Salt and pepper to taste

Add the butter or olive oil to a frying pan over medium-high heat. When hot, crack the eggs into the pan and cook for 3 to 4 minutes for runny yolks, more for firmer yolks. Serve the eggs over a bed of curly endive and top with cheese, salsa, and coriander. Season with salt and pepper.

Oatless “Oatmeal”

The following recipe, sometimes called “No Oat Oatmeal,” was adapted from *The Paleo Diet Cookbook* by Loren Cordain and Nell Stephenson. If you enjoy a rich, thick, warm breakfast, try this instead of classic oatmeal.

Serves 2

- 25g/1oz raw, unsalted walnuts
- 40g/1½oz raw, unsalted almonds
- 2 tablespoons ground flaxseed
- 1 teaspoon ground allspice
- 3 eggs
- 50ml/2 fl oz unsweetened almond milk
- ½ banana, mashed
- 1 tablespoon almond butter
- 2 teaspoons pumpkin seeds (optional)
- 1 handful of fresh berries (optional)

Combine the walnuts, almonds, flaxseed, and allspice in a food processor and blend to a coarse grain but not a powder. Set aside.

Whisk together eggs and almond milk until thick like a custard. Blend the mashed banana and almond butter together and add it to the custard, mixing well. Stir in the coarse nut mixture.

Warm the mixture in a saucepan over low heat, stirring frequently, until the batter reaches the desired consistency. Sprinkle pumpkin seeds and berries on top, add more almond milk, if desired, and serve.

Quick Crunchy “Cereal”

Looking for a cereal that meets the *Grain Brain* guidelines? Try this one, and if walnuts are not your thing, you can substitute your favorite raw nut.

Serves 1

- 25g/1oz crushed raw, unsalted walnuts (or other nuts)
- 25g/1oz coconut flakes
- 1 handful of fresh berries
- 150ml/5fl oz whole milk or almond milk

Combine the ingredients in a bowl and enjoy.

LUNCH OR DINNER

Lemon Chicken

Chicken can be used in a variety of dishes. Here's an easy chicken recipe that you can prepare for dinner. Leftovers can be packed up for lunch the next day.

Serves 6

- 6 boneless, skinless chicken breasts
- 1 tablespoon chopped fresh rosemary leaves
- 2 garlic cloves, chopped
- 1 shallot, chopped
- Zest and juice of 1 lemon
- 120ml/4fl oz olive oil

Set aside the chicken in a shallow baking dish that can accommodate all 6 breasts for marinating. In a bowl, combine the rosemary, garlic, shallots, lemon zest, and lemon juice. Slowly whisk in the olive oil. Pour the marinade over the chicken, cover, and leave in the refrigerator for 2 hours or overnight.

Preheat the oven to 180°C/350°F/gas mark 4. Remove the chicken from the marinade and bake in a roasting pan for 25 minutes or until cooked through. Serve with a side salad and steamed veggies.

Chicken with Mustard Vinaigrette

When you're strapped for time, this recipe takes minutes to prepare as long as you have a roasted chicken on hand. You can double the dressing recipe and use it throughout the week on salads.

Serves 4

- 1 whole organic roasted chicken
- 350g/12oz prewashed salad leaves of your choice

For the mustard vinaigrette:

4 tablespoons olive oil
1 tablespoon red wine vinegar
2 tablespoons dry white wine
1 tablespoon whole-grain mustard
1 teaspoon Dijon mustard
Salt and pepper to taste

Whisk all the vinaigrette ingredients together in a bowl. Season with salt and pepper.

Carve the chicken and serve with a drizzle of vinaigrette over salad leaves.

Chardonnay Baked Fish

Nothing could be simpler than baking your favorite fish and adding a rich, flavorful sauce. Although this sauce was originally prepared with salmon in mind, it goes well with any fish. Choose wild-caught fish and aim to buy the freshest fish available at your market by asking what just came in.

Serves 4

100g/4oz butter
250ml/8fl oz Chardonnay
2–3 tablespoons Dijon mustard
3 tablespoons capers, drained and rinsed
Juice of 1 lemon
2 teaspoons chopped fresh dill
4 salmon fillets or white fish of your choice (skin on)

Preheat the oven to 220°C/425°F/gas mark 7. Melt the butter gently in a saucepan over medium heat, then stir in the Chardonnay, mustard, capers, and lemon juice. Heat about 5 minutes to burn off the alcohol. Add the dill. Place the fish in a baking pan, skin-side down. Pour the sauce over the fish and bake for 20 minutes or until the fish is flaky. Serve immediately with Green Beans with Garlic Dressing (see [here](#)).

Balsamic-Glazed Steaks

Steak is another hassle-free meal to cook that takes minutes to prepare. All you need is an excellent cut of grass-fed meat and a juicy marinade.

Serves 2

2 tablespoons olive oil
3 tablespoons balsamic vinegar
½ teaspoon salt
½ teaspoon pepper
2 fillet steaks, about 2.5cm/1in thick
225g/8oz salad leaves

Combine the olive oil, vinegar, salt, and pepper in a bowl. Pour the marinade into a sealable plastic bag and add the steaks. Marinate for 30 minutes. Prepare the grill and cook the steaks for 1 minute on each side, or to your liking. Brush the steaks with marinade as they cook. Alternatively, you can grill your steaks in the oven by searing them first in a hot, oiled frying pan over high heat (about 30 seconds on each side) and then completing the cooking under the grill for about 2 minutes on each side (cook longer if you like your steak well-done). Serve the steaks on a bed of greens with a side of veggies.

Succulent Fore Ribs

The following was adapted from Steve Clifton's delicious beef short ribs recipe. Part winemaker, part chef, Steve loves to create dishes that go with his Palmina Italian wines.

Serves 6

- 4 medium yellow onions
- 3 carrots, peeled
- 6 stalks celery
- 3 garlic cloves
- 100g/4oz almond flour
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon pepper
- 1kg/2lb beef fore ribs
- 6 tablespoons olive oil
- 3 tablespoons tomato paste
- 1 bottle Italian red wine
- Zest and juice of 1 navel orange
- 4 tablespoons fresh thyme leaves
- a handful of chopped fresh parsley

Coarsely chop the onion, carrots, and celery and set aside. Mince the garlic and set aside. In a large bowl, season the almond flour with salt and pepper, then dredge the ribs in it. Heat the olive oil in a large, 5.5L/10 pint or casserole dish over medium-high heat. Brown the ribs and set aside. Add the onions and garlic to the pot and sauté until translucent, about 5 minutes. Add the carrots and celery. Cook until slightly softened, about 5 minutes. Return the ribs to the pot. Stir in the tomato paste to coat the ribs. Add the wine, orange zest, and orange juice. Cover and bring to a boil, then simmer for 2½ hours. Uncover, add the thyme leaves, and simmer for 30 minutes. Serve with parsley sprinkled on top and a side of Cauliflower “Couscous” ([here](#)).

Sea Salt's Tuna Carpaccio with Red Onion, Parsley, and Pink Peppercorns

The following seven recipes were created by my good friend and chef Fabrizio Aielli at Sea Salt, one of my favorite local restaurants in Naples, Florida, which I frequently visit (www.seasaltnaples.com). Fabrizio was generous enough to give me a few of his recipes to share, and I recommend trying these when you have guests over for dinner and want to impress.

Serves 6

- 750g/1½ pounds ahi tuna steaks
- ½ red onion, sliced
- 1 bunch parsley leaves, chopped
- 1 tablespoon ground pink peppercorns
- 4 tablespoons olive oil
- Salt to taste
- 3 lemons, cut in half

Thinly slice the tuna into 5mm/¼-inch slices; each plate should have three to five slices. On top of the tuna add the red onion, parsley, peppercorns, and olive oil, and finish with a sprinkle of salt and a lemon half on the side.

Sea Salt's Akaushi Beef Tenderloin with Brussels Sprouts

This dish is a crowd-pleaser for meat lovers. If you have difficulty buying Akaushi beef, a type produced by Akaushi cattle (Akaushi means “red cow”), then any richly marbled beef tenderloin will do. Akaushi beef is famous for its healthy fats and mouthwatering flavor.

Serves 6

- 1.4L/2½ pints water
- 6 tablespoons olive oil
- 2 teaspoons salt, plus salt and pepper to taste
- 1kg/2lb Brussels sprouts, trimmed and cleaned
- 250ml/8fl oz chicken stock
- 6 pieces Akaushi beef tenderloin, about 175kg/6oz each
- 1 garlic clove, minced
- Leaves from 2 sprigs rosemary, chopped

For the Brussels sprouts:

Bring the water, 2 tablespoons of the olive oil, and 2 teaspoons salt to a boil. Add the Brussels sprouts and cook on medium-high heat for 9 minutes, or until tender. Strain.

In a sauté pan add 2 tablespoons of the olive oil, the Brussels sprouts cut in half, and salt and pepper to taste, and cook on high heat until the sprouts are

lightly browned. Add the chicken stock and cook until it evaporates.

For the steaks:

Season the steaks with salt and pepper. Add the remaining olive oil to a sauté pan, heat over medium-high heat, and sear the steaks until golden brown on the first side (about 2 minutes). Turn them and add the minced garlic and rosemary. Reduce the heat to medium and continue cooking and turning for a few more minutes until they are done to your liking (about 3 to 6 minutes depending on the steaks' thickness).

Pour the juice from the meat over the Brussels sprouts and serve on the side of the tenderloin.

Sea Salt's Grilled Sardines with Tomato, Rocket, and Pecorino Cheese

Sardines are a fantastic way to boost your intake of protein, omega-3 fatty acids, vitamin B12, and other nutrients. Although some like to eat these small, oily saltwater fish right out of the can, here's an easy, quick way to serve them up nicely on a plate with added flavor.

Serves 6

- 18 fresh Mediterranean sardines, cleaned
- 3 tablespoons olive oil
- Salt and pepper to taste
- 6 bunches baby rocket
- 4 ripe heirloom tomatoes, chopped
- Juice from 3 lemons
- 1 bunch fresh parsley, chopped
- 150g/5oz Pecorino cheese, shaved

Heat the grill to medium-high (if your grill has a temperature gauge, heat to 180°C/350°F). Brush the sardines with 1 teaspoon of the olive oil and season with salt and pepper. Grill for 4 minutes on each side. (Alternatively, you can pan-fry the sardines on medium-high heat.)

In a mixing bowl, toss the rocket, tomato, remaining olive oil, lemon juice, and salt and pepper. Divide into 6 portions and top each portion with sardines, chopped parsley, and shaved Pecorino cheese.

Sea Salt's Red Snapper with Celery, Black Olives, Cucumber, Avocado, and Yellow Cherry Tomatoes

When red snapper arrives fresh at your market, pick some up and try this recipe. It takes less than twenty minutes to put together.

Serves 6

- 2 tablespoons olive oil
- Salt and pepper to taste
- 6 red snapper fillets, skin on
- 2 stalks celery, chopped
- 120g/4½oz black olives, pitted
- 1 cucumber, chopped
- 2 avocados, chopped
- 325g/11½oz Cherry Tomatoes, halved
- 1 tablespoon red wine vinegar
- Juice from 2 lemons

Heat 1 tablespoon of the olive oil in a sauté pan over medium-high heat. Salt and pepper the snapper fillets and sear for 6 minutes on each side. In a mixing bowl, combine the celery, olives, cucumber, avocados, tomatoes, red wine vinegar, lemon juice, and remaining olive oil. Divide the salad among six plates and serve the seared snapper, skin up, on top.

Sea Salt's Courgette Yogurt Gazpacho with Saffron-Marinated Chicken Breast

It doesn't take much saffron, a spice derived from the flower of the crocus, to create an intensely delicious, flavorful dish. This one uses not just saffron but courgettes and coriander to elevate the dish to a whole new level.

Serves 6

- 250ml/8fl oz white wine
- 2 lemons
- 1 pinch saffron
- 3 boneless, skinless chicken breasts
- 6 courgettes
- 1L/1¾ pints vegetable stock
- 120ml/4fl oz olive oil
- Juice of 1 lime
- 2 tablespoons chopped coriander, stems included
- Salt and pepper to taste
- 1 cucumber
- ½ Vidalia onion, finely chopped
- 1 heirloom tomato, finely chopped
- 6 teaspoons plain Greek yogurt

Combine the wine, juice of 1 lemon, and saffron in a large bowl. Add the chicken breasts and marinate overnight.

Heat the grill to medium-high (if your grill has a temperature gauge, heat to 180°C/350°F). Grill the chicken breasts for 6 minutes on each side or until

cooked through, then slice into 5-mm/¼-inch slices. Chill the chicken in the refrigerator.

Put the courgettes, vegetable stock, olive oil, juice of the remaining lemon, lime juice, and 1 tablespoon of the coriander in a blender, and blend until pureed. Add salt and pepper to taste. Pour the soup into a large bowl and stir in the cucumber, Vidalia onion, and tomato. Chill for 1 to 2 hours. When ready to serve, divide the soup into six portions and top each portion with 1 teaspoon yogurt. Add slices of chicken breast to each dish. Season with salt and pepper, and garnish with the remaining coriander.

Sea Salt's Liquid "Minestrone"

When people think minestrone, they think vegetable soup. This version swaps out the pasta or rice for more vegetables ... and more flavor.

Serves 4–6

- 3 tablespoons olive oil
- 3 stalks celery, chopped
- 1 onion, chopped
- 200g/7oz chopped broccoli
- 200g/7oz chopped cauliflower
- 135g/4¾oz chopped asparagus
- 3 medium courgettes, chopped
- 1 teaspoon dried thyme
- 450g/1lb celeriac, peeled and cut into 1cm/½-in cubes
- 200g/7oz kale, stems removed
- 100g/4oz Swiss chard, stems removed
- 2 bay leaves
- ½ teaspoon dried sage
- 1½ teaspoons salt
- ¼ teaspoons freshly ground black pepper
- 2L/3½ pints homemade chicken stock
- 150g/5oz spinach, stems removed
- 6 tablespoons plain Greek yogurt

Heat the olive oil in a large stockpot over medium-high heat. Add the celery, onion, broccoli, cauliflower, asparagus, courgettes, and thyme. Sweat the vegetables until the onions are translucent. Add the celeriac, kale, Swiss chard, bay leaves, dried sage, salt, and black pepper and cook for about 4 minutes. Add the chicken stock. Bring the soup to a boil, then lower the heat to medium. Cook at a low boil for 25 to 30 minutes, or until the vegetables are tender. Let the soup stand for 10 minutes. Add the spinach and stir. While stirring, locate the bay leaves and remove them. Purée the soup in a blender until smooth.

Garnish each serving with a dollop of Greek yogurt.

Sea Salt's Tomato and Red Cabbage Soup

Whether it's the dead of winter or middle of summer, this refreshing, simple soup calls for ingredients that most people have on hand. This goes well with any main entrée in lieu of a side salad.

Serves 6

- 120ml/4oz olive oil
- 1 Vidalia onion, chopped
- 2 stalks celery, chopped
- 2 tablespoons minced garlic
- 2 (400g/14oz) cans chopped tomatoes
- 1 red cabbage, chopped
- 10 basil leaves
- 1.5L/2½ pints chicken stock
- 1.5L/2½ pints vegetable stock
- Salt and pepper to taste

In a large soup pot over medium-high heat, add half of the olive oil and sweat the onions, celery, and garlic until translucent (about 5 minutes). Add the tomatoes, red cabbage, half of the basil leaves, the chicken stock, and vegetable stock, and bring to a boil. Lower the heat to medium and continue to cook at a low boil for 25 to 30 minutes. Add the remaining olive oil, season with salt and pepper, and let the soup stand for 10 minutes. Purée the soup in a blender and serve.

Quick Salmon with Mushrooms

It doesn't get any easier than pan-frying fresh fish fillets and adding flavor from mushrooms, herbs, spices, and a combination of olive and sesame oil. This recipe takes minutes to prepare.

Serves 4

- 4 tablespoons olive oil
- 3 garlic cloves, crushed
- 3 shallots, finely sliced
- 1 teaspoon ground ginger, dried or fresh
- 4 skinless salmon fillets
- 1 tablespoon sesame oil
- 150g/5oz sliced fresh mushrooms
- A heaped teaspoon chopped coriander

Heat 2 tablespoons of the olive oil in a frying pan over medium heat, then add the garlic, shallots, and ginger. Cook until it sizzles (about 1 minute), then add the salmon fillets and cook through (about 3 minutes on each side). Remove the fillets and set aside. Wipe the bottom of the pan carefully with

kitchen paper. Heat the remaining olive oil and sesame oil in the pan over medium heat. Add the mushrooms and cook for 3 minutes, stirring constantly. Drizzle the mushrooms over the salmon and garnish with the coriander. Serve with a side of Roasted Seasonal Vegetables (see [here](#)).

Greek Lemon Lamb

Whenever grass-fed lamb chops go on sale, pick some up. They make for delicious, elegant entrées that take little time to prepare and cook. All you need is a good marinade, like this one.

Serves 4

For the marinade:

- 2 garlic cloves, diced
- 2 tablespoons olive oil
- 1 teaspoon dried oregano
- Leaves from 2 sprigs fresh thyme
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- Salt and pepper to taste

For the lamb:

- 12 lamb chops
- 1 lemon, cut into quarters

Whisk all the marinade ingredients together in a bowl.

Combine the lamb chops with the marinade and place in the refrigerator, covered, for 1 hour. Prepare the grill, and grill the chops for 1 to 2 minutes on each side. (Alternatively, you can roast the lamb in a 200°C/400°F/gas mark 6 oven for about 10 minutes, or to desired doneness.) Serve the lamb with lemon wedges for squeezing, veggies, and Cauliflower “Couscous” (see [here](#)).

Quick Flat-Roasted Chicken

I like to keep small, whole chickens in the freezer and cook this recipe whenever I have friends coming over for dinner or want to have plenty of leftovers for the next day’s lunch. If you start with a frozen chicken, thaw it in the refrigerator overnight or in the kitchen sink for several hours.

Serves 6

- 11.5–1.75kg (3–4lb) organic chicken
- 1 lemon, sliced
- 5 garlic cloves, peeled
- 7 sprigs fresh thyme

4 tablespoons olive oil
Salt and pepper to taste

Preheat the oven to 200°C/400°F/gas mark 6. Using kitchen scissors or a knife, cut along the backbone of the chicken. Open the chicken up and press down firmly on the breastbone to flatten it. Lay the chicken skin-side up in a large roasting pan. Toss the lemon slices, garlic cloves, thyme, and 2 tablespoons of the olive oil in a bowl. Brush the chicken with the remaining olive oil, then season with salt and pepper. Scatter the lemon slices, thyme, and garlic over the chicken and bake 45 to 55 minutes, until it is cooked through. Serve with a side of salad leaves and Roasted Seasonal Vegetables (see [here](#)).

Note: You can substitute tarragon or oregano for thyme.

Fish in Dill and Lemon

A little bit of dill, lemon, and Dijon will go a long way to bring out the best of any fresh fish. You can use this recipe with any white fish.

Serves 4

Leaves from 1 bunch fresh dill, chopped
2 tablespoons Dijon mustard
Juice from 1 lemon
2 tablespoons olive oil
Salt and pepper to taste
4 firm white fish fillets, such as halibut or black cod (about 1 pound total), skin on

Preheat the oven to 200°C/400°F/gas mark 6. Blend all the ingredients except the fish in a food processor until smooth.

Place the fish fillets in a shallow baking dish, skin-side down, and coat with the dill sauce. Bake in the oven until cooked through, approximately 15 minutes.

Serve with Cauliflower “Couscous” (see [here](#)) and Sautéed Spinach and Garlic (see [here](#)).

Note: Parsley can be substituted for dill. As an alternative, try Dill Spread (see [here](#)) or Pecorino Pesto (see [here](#)).

Broccoli Soup with Cashew Cream

When the day calls for a hot soup at lunch or dinner to go with your main entrée, here’s one that you can prepare in advance and store in the refrigerator

until you're ready to reheat. You can also use this as a snack to tide you over when your afternoon gets busy and dinner will be late.

Serves 4–6

- 3 tablespoons olive oil
- 1 large onion, chopped
- 3 shallots, chopped
- 1 garlic clove, chopped
- 1L/1¾ pints organic chicken broth
- 600g/1lb 5oz broccoli florets, chopped
- Salt and pepper to taste
- 4 teaspoons fresh thyme leaves
- 250ml/8fl oz coconut milk
- Handful of pumpkin seeds for garnish

For the cashew cream:

- 120g/4½oz raw, unsalted cashews
- 175ml/6fl oz water
- Salt to taste

In a large soup pot over medium-high heat, heat the olive oil. Add the onions, shallots, and garlic and cook until translucent, about 4 minutes. Add the broth, broccoli, and salt and pepper. Bring to a boil, then lower the heat and simmer for approximately 10 minutes, until the broccoli is soft.

Remove from the heat and pour the soup into a blender with the thyme. Process until smooth. Return to the soup pot and stir in the coconut milk. Warm gently over medium heat.

Purée the cashew cream ingredients in the blender. Serve the soup with a drizzle of cashew cream on top and, if desired, a sprinkling of pumpkin seeds.

SALADS

Herb Garden Salad with Balsamic Vinaigrette

This salad has become a staple for me. It can be used as a side to a main dish or stand alone as an entrée for lunch or dinner if you add more protein (for example, slices of cooked chicken, fish, or steak). Because I resort to this salad throughout the week, I like to have dressing stockpiled, so I often double up on the dressing recipe and store it in an airtight container in the refrigerator.

Serves 6

For the salad:

- 100g/4oz mixed salad leaves

2-3 heaped tablespoons fresh flat-leaf parsley
3 tablespoons chopped chives
3-4 tablespoons mixed fresh herbs (e.g., mustard cress, coriander, tarragon, sage, mint), chopped
50g/2oz cup chopped raw walnuts

For the balsamic vinaigrette:

Makes about 250ml/8fl oz

50ml/2fl oz balsamic vinegar
2-3 garlic cloves, chopped
½ shallot, chopped
1 tablespoon Dijon mustard
1 tablespoon rosemary (fresh or dried)
Juice of 1 lemon
1 teaspoon salt
1 teaspoon pepper
120ml/4fl oz cup olive oil

Combine the salad ingredients in a salad bowl. Whisk all the vinaigrette ingredients together except for the oil, then drizzle in the oil slowly so it emulsifies. Add 120ml/4fl oz balsamic vinaigrette to the salad, toss, and serve.

Niçoise Salad

This recipe is based on the classic Niçoise salad that hails from Nice, France, but without the potatoes, and you can use any type of cooked fish. Although it takes a little extra time to prepare, given all the chopping and pre-cooking for the eggs and fish, it comes together quickly and smoothly once you've gotten everything ready.

Serves 6

For the salad:

4 firm ripe tomatoes, diced
1 green pepper, seeded and chopped
3 spring onions, thinly sliced
75g/3oz rocket or mixed salad leaves
3 hard-boiled eggs, sliced
175g/6oz cooked fish (e.g., mahimahi, salmon, Kingfish cod)
12 anchovy fillets, drained
75g/3oz black or Kalamata olives
100g/4oz blanched green beans, trimmed
10 basil leaves, chopped
1 small cucumber, peeled and cubed

For the vinaigrette:

- 1 teaspoon Dijon mustard
- 2 teaspoons red wine vinegar
- 6 teaspoons olive oil
- Salt and pepper to taste

Combine the salad ingredients in a salad bowl. In a small bowl, whisk together the ingredients for the vinaigrette. Pour the dressing over the salad, toss, and serve.

Roasted Walnut-Oil Salad

You can turn any salad into Roasted Walnut-Oil Salad just by using this dressing, which celebrates the robust flavor of walnuts. Although I've suggested goat cheese in this particular salad, feel free to try another crumbly cheese such as feta or Parmesan.

Serves 2

For the salad:

- 225g/8oz pre-washed salad leaves (e.g., mesclun, mixed leaves, baby spinach)
- 4 tablespoons crumbled goat cheese
- 50g/2oz roasted, unsalted walnuts, chopped
- 3 tablespoons dried blueberries or cranberries

For the dressing:

- 2 tablespoons walnut oil
- 1 tablespoon balsamic or red wine vinegar
- ½ teaspoon prepared mustard
- Salt and pepper to taste

Arrange the salad leaves in a salad bowl and top with goat cheese, walnuts, and dried berries. In a bowl, whisk together the dressing ingredients until thoroughly combined. Pour the dressing over the salad, toss, and serve.

Lemon Rocket with Parmigiano-Reggiano

This salad is minimal in its ingredients but full of zesty flavor, thanks to peppery rocket mixed with tangy cheese and rich olive oil. I enjoy this as a complement to any Italian-inspired dish.

Serves 2

- 100g/4oz baby rocket
- 75g/3oz raw, unsalted sunflower seeds
- 8–10 shavings Parmigiano-Reggiano cheese
- Juice from 1 lemon

6 tablespoons olive oil
Salt and pepper to taste

Combine rocket, sunflower seeds, cheese, and lemon juice in a salad bowl. Drizzle with the olive oil, toss, season with salt and pepper to taste, and serve.

Sea Salt's Kale Salad with Feta Cheese, Roasted Peppers, Black Olives, Artichokes, and Buttermilk Dressing

I'm known for ordering this salad when I go to Sea Salt for lunch. It accompanies any main entrée beautifully.

Serves 6

2 bunches kale, stems removed and leaves roughly torn
275g/10oz feta cheese, crumbled
3 roasted bell peppers, sliced
120g/4½oz black olives, pitted and halved
12 marinated baby artichokes, halved
250ml/8fl oz buttermilk
120ml/4fl oz olive oil
1 tablespoon red wine vinegar
Salt and pepper to taste

In a salad bowl, mix the kale, feta cheese, peppers, olives, and artichokes. In a separate bowl, whisk together the buttermilk, olive oil, and red wine vinegar. Pour the dressing over the salad, toss, and season with salt and pepper.

SIDES

Roasted Seasonal Vegetables

This recipe is good any time of the year. Just go with what's in season and be sure to use the best olive oil you can find alongside the freshest herbs and freshly ground black pepper. A drizzle of aged balsamic vinegar at the very end of this cooking process adds an extra treat.

Serves 4–6

1kg/2lb seasonal vegetables (e.g., asparagus, Brussels sprouts, peppers, courgettes, aubergines, onion)
65ml/2½fl oz olive oil
Salt and pepper to taste
2–3 tablespoons fresh herbs, minced (e.g., rosemary, oregano, parsley, thyme; optional)
Aged balsamic vinegar (optional)

Preheat the oven to 220°C/425°F/gas mark 7.

Cut up any large vegetables into pieces. Spread the vegetables in a roasting pan with tinfoil on the bottom. Drizzle the olive oil liberally over the vegetables, then use clean hands to mix them so they are well coated with oil. Sprinkle with salt, pepper, and herbs, if desired. Stirring every 10 minutes, roast the vegetables for 35 to 40 minutes, or until they are cooked through and browned. Just prior to serving, drizzle lightly with aged balsamic vinegar, if desired.

Green Beans with Garlic Dressing

Just about any green vegetable can be dressed up this way, with garlic and herbs.

Serves 4–6

For the dressing:

- 2 tablespoons olive oil
- 1 tablespoon fresh lemon juice
- 1 teaspoon Dijon mustard
- 2 garlic cloves, minced
- ½ teaspoon lemon zest
- Salt and pepper to taste
- 1kg/2lb green beans, trimmed
- 75g/3oz chopped raw, unsalted almonds
- 1 tablespoon fresh thyme

Whisk all the ingredients for the dressing together in a bowl and set aside.

In a large pot of salted boiling water, blanch the beans for 4 minutes, or until crisp-tender. Drain.

In a large bowl, toss the beans, almonds, and thyme with the dressing, and serve.

Cauliflower “Couscous”

For a tasty substitute for starchy vegetables like mashed potatoes, rice, or traditional couscous, try this dish made simply from cauliflower.

Serves 2

- 1 head cauliflower
- 2 tablespoons olive oil
- 2 garlic cloves, finely chopped
- 40g/1½oz toasted pine nuts
- 1 handful of chopped fresh parsley

In a food processor, process the florets from the cauliflower until they resemble small grains, or grate the cauliflower with a cheese grater (using the large-hole shredder) until the entire head of florets is grated down and you're left with the stalk to discard.

Heat the olive oil in a large frying pan over medium heat. Add the cauliflower, garlic, pine nuts, and parsley, and sauté, stirring frequently, until the cauliflower begins to brown.

Note: For extra flavor, you could add pitted, chopped olives or 25g/1oz grated Parmesan cheese to the cauliflower while it's cooking.

Sautéed Spinach and Garlic

Just about any leafy green vegetable sautéed in garlic and olive oil is delightful. Here's the standard fare made with spinach, but feel free to experiment with other greens.

Serves 2

- 4 tablespoons olive oil
- 2 bags prewashed baby spinach
- 6 garlic cloves, very thinly sliced
- 1 lemon
- 1 to 2 teaspoons red pepper flakes
- Salt and pepper to taste

In large sauté pan, heat the oil over high heat until hot, almost smoking. Add the spinach and cook, stirring continuously, for about 1 to 2 minutes. Spinach will begin to wilt slightly. Add the garlic and continue to cook while stirring rapidly for about 1 more minute, then remove from heat.

Squeeze the juice from the lemon over the top, and add the red pepper flakes, salt, and pepper. Toss well and serve.

DIPS

Guacamole Dip

You'll find many versions of guacamole that work with *Grain Brain's* guidelines, so feel free to experiment. The following was adapted from Alton Brown's recipe on FoodNetwork.com. I love his use of spices for an added kick. As with all the dips in this section, you can store this in the refrigerator in an airtight container for up to a week. Use it for snacking with pre-cut raw veggies like bell peppers, celery sticks, and radishes, or add a dollop to dishes for a boost of flavor where you feel it works.

Serves 4

- 2 large ripe Hass avocados, pitted
- Juice of 1 lime
- 1 teaspoon salt
- ¼ teaspoon ground cumin
- ¼ teaspoon cayenne
- ½ small red onion, diced
- ½ jalapeño pepper, seeded and minced
- 2 medium ripe tomatoes, diced
- 1 tablespoon chopped fresh coriander
- 1 garlic clove, minced

In a large bowl mash the avocado flesh with the lime juice. Add the salt, cumin, and cayenne. Fold in the onions, jalapeño, tomatoes, coriander, and garlic. Let sit at room temperature for 1 hour and serve.

Avocado-Tahini Dip

Here's a dip that's in between guacamole and hummus. Try it with pre-cut raw veggies or pre-cooked cubed chicken.

Makes about 350g/12oz

- 100g/4oz pre-washed rocket
- 1 tablespoon olive oil
- 1 large ripe Hass avocado, pitted
- 75g/3oz tahini
- Juice of 1 lemon
- ½ teaspoon ground cumin
- 2 tablespoons minced fresh parsley or coriander

Cook the rocket in the olive oil in a large frying pan or saucepan over medium-high heat until wilted. Add the rocket to a food processor with the other ingredients and process until smooth. Add 50ml/2fl oz water or more and process until the mixture is a medium-thick consistency. Serve immediately or store in an airtight container in the refrigerator for up to two days.

Creamy Cashew Dip

Cashew nuts are rich in flavor. In addition to serving as a dip for raw vegetables, this goes well as a topping on many soups and chicken dishes.

Makes 225g/8oz

- 75g/3oz raw, unsalted cashews
- 2 teaspoons light miso
- 50ml/2fl oz fresh lemon juice
- ¼ teaspoon ground nutmeg

250ml/8fl oz water
Salt to taste

In a blender, purée the cashews, miso, lemon juice, nutmeg, and 120ml/4fl oz of water until smooth. With the machine running, slowly add the remaining water until the mixture is the consistency of whipped cream. If you prefer a thinner consistency, add additional water. Season with salt to taste. Store in an airtight container in the refrigerator for up to four days.

Hummus Dip

Hummus is one of the most versatile dips and can be used in a variety of ways. It's delicious with veggies as a snack and can be used to add depth to meat dishes.

Serves 4

1 400g/14oz can chickpeas
4 tablespoons fresh lemon juice
1½ tablespoons tahini
2 garlic cloves
2 tablespoons olive oil, plus more for serving
½ teaspoon salt
a handful of chopped fresh parsley

Drain the chickpeas but reserve 50ml/2fl oz of the liquid from the can. In a food processor, combine the chickpeas, lemon juice, tahini, garlic, 2 tablespoons olive oil, and salt. Pour in the reserved liquid from the chickpeas and process for 3 minutes on low speed until smooth. Scoop the hummus into a serving bowl and drizzle olive oil on top. Garnish with the parsley and serve.

TOPPINGS

Here are three more toppings to play with in your kitchen. If you prepare these ahead of time, store them in airtight containers in the refrigerator for up to a week.

Dill Spread

When you've run out of ideas for cooking fish, try this spread on any fresh fish you want to bake or grill.

Makes about 100g/4oz

about 3 bunches fresh dill leaves
about 1 bunch fresh Italian parsley leaves

2 garlic cloves
3 tablespoons olive oil
2 tablespoons Dijon mustard
1 tablespoon lemon juice
Salt and pepper to taste

Process all the ingredients in a food processor or blender until smooth. This can be spread on fish before baking or grilling.

Pecorino Pesto

Here's yet another tasty spread to use with fish.

Makes about 100g/4oz

50g/2oz raw almonds, walnuts, or pine nuts
2 garlic cloves
20 fresh basil leaves
40g/1½oz grated Pecorino
Salt and pepper to taste
65ml/2½fl oz olive oil

Process all of the ingredients except for the olive oil in a food processor while slowly pouring in the oil through the feed tube; the pesto should be rich, creamy, and spreadable.

Sofrito

Sofrito is a seasoned tomato-based sauce used frequently in Latin cooking. Incredibly versatile, it can be added to roasted chicken, stews, and scrambled eggs, as well as grilled or baked fish.

Makes 750–900g/1½–2lb

2 tablespoons olive oil
1 medium onion, finely chopped
1 green bell pepper, seeded and finely chopped
2 garlic cloves, minced
2 400g/14oz tins chopped tomatoes
Leaves from 1 bunch fresh coriander, chopped
1 teaspoon paprika
Salt and pepper to taste

In a large frying pan with a heavy bottom, heat the olive oil over medium heat. Sauté the onions. Add the green pepper and cook for 5 minutes, stirring often. Add the garlic and sauté for 1 minute more. Add the crushed tomatoes, coriander, and paprika and stir well. Continue to cook for about 10 to 15 minutes. Add salt and pepper to taste.

DESSERT

Chocolate Truffles

These are a fantastic treat for dessert or to serve at your next dinner party. The higher the quality of the chocolate, the better. Experiment with different flavorings depending on your mood.

Makes 30–40 truffles

25g/1oz heavy whipping cream

1 teaspoon almond, orange, vanilla, or hazelnut flavoring

225g/8oz bittersweet dark chocolate (at least 70 percent cacao), chopped into small pieces

Cocoa powder or chopped nuts for coating

In a small saucepan bring the whipping cream to a simmer. Stir the flavoring in, then pour the mixture over the chocolate in a separate bowl. Let stand a few minutes before stirring until smooth. Allow to cool, then refrigerate for two hours.

Form 2.5cm/1-inch balls using a teaspoon, and rolling them quickly between your palms. Place balls on a baking sheet lined with greaseproof paper. Refrigerate overnight.

Roll in cocoa powder or chopped nuts. Store the truffles in an airtight container in the refrigerator for up to a week.

Chocolate Coconut Mousse

Looking for dessert in minutes? Keep a can of coconut milk in the refrigerator so it's ready to go when you feel like indulging in a decadent treat.

Serves 2

1 400g/14fl oz can full-fat coconut milk

3 tablespoons cocoa powder

1–2 teaspoons stevia (depending on how sweet you want it)

Optional: shredded coconut, almond butter, cinnamon

Chill the unopened can of coconut milk in the refrigerator for several hours or overnight.

Scoop out the solidified cream into a mixing bowl and beat vigorously with a whisk or electric mixer until softened (it shouldn't liquefy). Add the cocoa powder and stevia and continue to beat until the mousse is light and fluffy. Top with shredded coconut, a dollop of almond butter, or cinnamon, and serve.

Epilogue

The Mesmerizing Truth

IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY, a German physician who studied in Vienna set up a clinic following an interest in so-called animal magnetism, which he developed into a system of treatment through hypnotism. It was called mesmerism, after his name: Franz Anton Mesmer. Dr. Mesmer claimed he could cure nervous system problems using magnetism. According to Mesmer, a proper balance of a “subtle fluid” maintained the body’s health. This subtle fluid was the same one responsible for heat, light, and gravity, and it floated throughout the universe. Dr. Mesmer created animal magnetism by focusing on the magnetic poles of the body, which he thought helped direct this fluid. Under his theory, the poles had to be aligned properly to work and to maintain a correct, smooth, and harmonious flow of fluid. If the fluid balance was off, a person could develop “nervous afflictions,” and he or she would need to be “mesmerized” to get the poles realigned and the fluid rebalanced.

It didn’t take long for Dr. Mesmer to generate publicity as well as notoriety. He received a lot of attention and got a lot of people — educated and not — curious. The medical and scientific community feared Mesmer; the government worried about secrecy and subversion of his growing group. In 1777 he was expelled from Vienna, so he went to Paris and established himself all over again.

By the 1780s he had accumulated new disciples and set up shops with them in Paris. These believers “mesmerized” people by claiming to locate their poles and control their fluid. One can picture a dramatic scene of the mad scientist waving his arms in the air, gathering his powers, and then administering the power of his touch to hapless people with “nervous afflictions,” as if futilely attempting to draw demons from them. His popularity became part mystery, part fashion. Getting treated by Mesmer and his “mesmerists” became a trendy thing to do. They would use a very elaborate apparatus, complete with mesmeric tubes, bottles of mesmerized water, and iron bars that carried the subtle fluid. These mesmeric treatments happened in secluded areas. Hence, the mystery and notoriety created.

Dr. Mesmer didn't last very long in Paris, either. Investigations commenced. A royal government commission that included such names as Antoine-Laurent Lavoisier and Benjamin Franklin looked into his independent practice. In 1785, Mesmer left Paris for London, and then went on to Austria, Italy, Switzerland, and eventually to his native Germany, where he returned to a village near his birthplace and died in 1815. No matter where he went, he tried to win the universal acclaim he believed he deserved for his therapies.

It's now generally accepted that Mesmer was actually treating psychosomatic illness, and he profited mightily from people's gullibility. In retrospect, his theories and practices sound ridiculous, but in truth, the story of Mesmer parallels many stories of today. It's not so ridiculous to imagine people falling prey to products, procedures, and health claims that are brilliantly marketed. Every day we hear of some news item related to health. We are bombarded by messages about our health — good, bad, and confusingly contradictory. And we are literally mesmerized by these messages. Even the smart, educated, cautious, and skeptical consumer is mesmerized. It's hard to separate truth from fiction, and to know the difference between what's healthful and harmful when the information and endorsements come from "experts."

If you consider some of the advice doled out in the past century from these so-called experts, you'll quickly realize that many things do not always appear as they seem. It's quite common to witness a complete about-face when it comes to the validity of a certain fact, claim, or practice. Bloodletting was still common in the late nineteenth century. We used to think that eggs were evil and margarine was magical, but now we know that eggs are among the world's most nutrient-dense foods and that margarine contains deadly trans fats. Doctors in the mid-twentieth century used to pose for cigarette advertisements, and later on, they began to say that baby formula was much better than breast milk for children. And while it's hard to conceive of today, not too long ago we thought that diet had absolutely no effect on disease. We now know otherwise.

When I imagine the world fifty years from now, I wonder what kind of bogus claims that many of us accept today will have been evicted from society. I also wonder whether I'll have had any influence, given the work I've been doing, to change people's misguided perspectives on carbs, fat, and cholesterol. Indeed, there are powerful forces behind our viewpoints today. Walk into any supermarket and you'll be met with dozens of reasons why you should eat this or that — many of those assertions perpetuating false facts and promises. This is especially true for foods labeled "healthy" whole grains,

low-fat, and cholesterol-free. In addition to telling you these goods are your ticket to a longer, more vibrant life, food manufacturers somehow tie them to a lower risk of cancer, heart disease, diabetes, and obesity. But you know the truth.

We live in an exciting time in medicine; we finally have the technology at our fingertips to help us diagnose, treat, and cure many illnesses that shortened life just a few decades ago. But we also live in a time when the number of people dying from chronic disease is double that of the number of people dying from infectious disease (including HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, and malaria), maternal and perinatal conditions, and nutritional deficiencies combined.¹ It's common knowledge that our country's health care system is in need of repair. Health care costs are exorbitant. We spend nearly 20 percent of our gross domestic product on health care, and health insurance premiums for the average family continue to rise, costing more than fifteen thousand dollars a year. And although we are presently ranked first in the world in health-care spending, we are ranked thirty-seventh in overall health-system performance, according to the World Health Organization,² and twenty-second in life expectancy among the thirty developed countries.

What will save our system and our future generations? We cannot wait for the massively complicated health-care system to fix itself, just as we cannot expect change to happen as fast as we need it. We also cannot rely on drugs to keep us alive and well. In many cases, as I've described in this book, drugs push us further away from where we really want to be. We must start individually with small shifts in our daily habits that amount to huge gains in our health quotient today and in the future.

Though some consider the beating heart to be the center of life (after all, it's the heartbeat we seek in those first few weeks of life), it's really the brain that takes center stage. Our heart wouldn't beat without our brain, and it is our brain that allows us to experience the world on every level — to feel pleasure and pain, to love and to learn, to make decisions, and to participate in life in ways that make it worth living!

Until we face a health challenge that affects our brain's functionality, we tend to take our mental faculties for granted. We assume that our mind will travel with us wherever we go. But what if that doesn't happen? And what if we can in fact guarantee our mental prowess and brainpower just by actively nurturing the brain in the ways I've described? We all cherish the right to free speech, the right to privacy, and the right to vote, among others. These are fundamental to our way of life. But what about the right to a long life, free of cognitive decline and mental disease? You can claim this right today. I hope you do.

Acknowledgments

AS ANYONE WHO HAS EVER WRITTEN a book knows, it takes an army of creative, bright, and tireless people to put it all together. And just when you think you're done, another troop of equally brilliant people emerges on the scene to help see things through until a reader like you can absorb the very first page.

If I had my way, I'd list everyone who has ever contributed to my thinking and supported me throughout my life and career. But that would entail hundreds of people and many pages here, so I will keep this short and sweet. I am indebted to all the scientists and my fellow colleagues who have worked to understand the mysteries of the human brain and body. I am also forever grateful to my patients, who teach me every day and provide insights that cannot be found elsewhere. This book is as much yours as it is mine.

Thanks to my friend and literary agent, Bonnie Solow. It was your recognition of the importance of this message that catalyzed all that has followed. But more than anything else, I am appreciative that this project has brought us our friendship. Thanks for your gracious leadership and attention to details. I know that you've gone beyond the call of duty — protecting, guiding, and helping this book reach the masses.

To Kristin Loberg: while the content of this work represents my research and professional experience, it is wholly through your artistic mastery that our message is now conveyed.

To the indefatigable team at Little, Brown that has championed this book since our first meeting. A special thanks to Tracy Behar, my editor with an unparalleled gift for making sure the message remains clear, succinct, and practical. Your talented editorial genius made this such a better book through all its iterations. Thanks also to Michael Pietsch, Reagan Arthur, Theresa Giacomasi, Nicole Dewey, Heather Fain, Miriam Parker, and Gabrielle Gantz. It's been a pleasure to work with such a dedicated, professional group.

The management team at Proton Enterprises has done and continues to do an incredible job managing and directing the many moving parts involved in the Grain Brain project. Thanks to James Murphy, John D'Orazio, and Andrew Luer.

Every day, my incredibly dedicated team members at the Perlmutter Health Center pour heart and soul into supporting my mission of implementing the

principles described in this book. I couldn't do it without them. A special thanks goes out to Karen Davis, Sandra Diaz, Nancy Griffith, Nancee Lynn Hanes, Fran Lankford, Stephanie McDonald, Joseph Miller, Lisa Notter, Kate Riley, Michaela Thomas, Jackie Wilcox, and Kate Workman.

To Digital Natives, my savvy tech team responsible for making my website come alive as a companion to the book.

To the entire team at our clinic, the Perlmutter Health Center, for your dedication.

To my wife, Leize. Thank you for all the time and commitment in lovingly preparing the recipes. I am grateful beyond measure to have you in my life. Thanks also to Dee Harris, RD, for your insightful nutritional input.

And finally, I wish to acknowledge my children, Austin and Reisha, who have never ceased to encourage and support me on this journey.

Illustration Credits

[Here](#): Reprinted from *The Lancet Neurology*, Volume 9, Issue 3, M. Hadjivassiliou, MD, et al., Gluten sensitivity: from gut to brain, pages 318–330, March 2010, with permission from Elsevier.

[Here](#): From: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; cdc.gov/diabetes/statistics/prev/national/figpersons.htm.

[Here](#): Adapted from: “Statin use and risk of diabetes mellitus in postmenopausal women in the Women’s Health Initiative.” A. L. Culver, et al., *Archives of Internal Medicine* 2012; 172(2): 144–52.

[Here](#): Adapted from: “Risk factors for progression of brain atrophy in aging. Six-year follow-up of normal subjects.” C. Enzinger, et al., *Neurology* 64: 1704–11; May 24, 2005.

[Here](#): “America’s State of Mind,” a report by Express Scripts, 2011. Reprinted with permission.

[Here](#): © Randy Glasbergen. glasbergen.com
Reprinted with permission.

[Here](#): Adapted from: “Total daily physical activity and the risk of AD and cognitive decline in older adults.” A. S. Buchman, P. A. Boyle, L. Yu, et al. *Neurology* 2012; 78; 1323.

[Here](#): Adapted from: “Total daily physical activity and the risk of AD and cognitive decline in older adults.” A. S. Buchman, P. A. Boyle, L. Yu, et al. *Neurology* 2012; 78; 1323.

[Here](#): Adapted from: “Exercise training increases size of hippocampus and improves memory.” Erikson, K. I., et al. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences U.S.A.* 2011 February 15; 108(7):3017–22.

Notes

The following is a list of books and scientific papers that you might find helpful in learning more about some of the ideas and concepts expressed in this book. These materials can also open doors for further research and inquiry. For access to more studies and an ongoing updated list of references, please visit www.DrPerlmutter.com.

Introduction

1. MetLife Foundation, “What America Thinks: MetLife Foundation Alzheimer’s Survey,” study conducted by Harris Interactive, February 2011, <https://www.metlife.com/assets/cao/foundation/alzheimers-2011.pdf> (accessed February 13, 2013).
2. Annie L. Culver, et al., “Statin Use and Risk of Diabetes Mellitus in Postmenopausal Women in the Women’s Health Initiative,” *Archives of Internal Medicine* 172, no. 2 (2012): 144–52.
3. Åsa Blomström, et al., “Maternal Antibodies to Dietary Antigens and Risk for Nonaffective Psychosis in Offspring,” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 169 (2012): 625–32.

Chapter 1

1. Eric Steen, et al., “Impaired Insulin and Insulin-like Growth Factor Expression and Signaling Mechanisms in Alzheimer’s Disease — Is This Type 3 Diabetes?” *Journal of Alzheimer’s Disease* 7, no. 1 (2005): 63–80.
2. R. O. Roberts, et al., “Relative Intake of Macronutrients Impacts Risk of Mild Cognitive Impairment or Dementia,” *Journal of Alzheimer’s Disease* 32, no. 2 (2012): 329–39.
3. <http://www.doctoroz.com/videos/alzheimers-diabetes-brain>.
4. Mark Bittman, “Is Alzheimer’s Type 3 Diabetes?” *New York Times*, September 25, 2012, <http://opinionator.blogs.nytimes.com/2012/09/25/bittman-is-alzheimers-type-3-diabetes/> (accessed October 15, 2012). Bittman’s piece provides a great explanation of type 3 diabetes.

5. <http://www.diabetes.webmd.com> (accessed May 13, 2013).
6. <http://aiafoundation.org/patients-families/facts-figures/>.
7. <http://www.rhodeislandhospital.org/wtn/Page.asp?PageID=WTN000249>.
8. Bittman, "Is Alzheimer's Type 3 Diabetes?" (see chap. 1, n. 4).
9. <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6145a4.htm> (accessed May 13, 2013).
10. <http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org>.
11. Penelope K. Elias, et al., "Serum Cholesterol and Cognitive Performance in the Framingham Heart Study," *Psychosomatic Medicine* 67, no. 1 (2005): 24–30.
12. Nicolas Cherbuin, et al., "Higher Normal Fasting Plasma Glucose Is Associated with Hippocampal Atrophy: The PATH Study," *Neurology* 79, no. 10 (January/February 2012): 1019–26. doi: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e31826846de.
13. <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2012/09/120904095856.htm> (accessed May 13, 2013).
14. Walter F. Stewart, et al., "Risk of Alzheimer's Disease and Duration of NSAID Use," *Neurology* 48, no. 3 (March 1997): 626–32.
15. Angelika D. Wahner, et al., "Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs May Protect Against Parkinson's Disease," *Neurology* 69, no. 19 (November 6, 2007): 1836–42.
16. Jose Miguel Rubio-Perez, et al., "A Review: Inflammatory Process in Alzheimer's Disease, Role of Cytokines," *Scientific World Journal* (April 1 2012). doi: 10.1100/2012/756357.
17. William Davis, *Wheat Belly* (New York: Rodale Books, 2011).

Chapter 2

1. Keith O'Brien, "Should We All Go Gluten-free?" *New York Times*, November 25, 2011, http://www.nytimes.com/2011/11/27/magazine/Should-We-All-Go-Gluten-Free.html?pagewanted=all&_r=0 (accessed September 10, 2012).
2. Chris Chase, "Is Novak Djokovic's New, Gluten-free Diet Behind His Winning Streak?" *Yahoo! Sports*, May 17, 2011, http://sports.yahoo.com/tennis/blog/busted_racquet/post/Is-Novak-Djokovic-8217-s-new-gluten-free-diet-?urn=ten-wp706 (accessed September 10, 2012).
3. For a beautiful review of basic definitions about gluten and its effects on the body, please visit the library of resources at <http://www.healthspringholistic.com>.

4. http://www.niams.nih.gov/Health_Info/Autoinflammatory/; also see: <http://www.womenshealth.gov/publications/our-publications/fact-sheet/autoimmune-diseases.cfm>.
5. David Perlmutter, MD, "Gluten Sensitivity and the Impact on the Brain," http://www.huffingtonpost.com/dr-david-perlmutter-md/gluten-impacts-the-brain_b_785901.html, November 21, 2010.
6. David Perlmutter, MD, and Alberto Villoldo, PhD, *Power Up Your Brain: The Neuroscience of Enlightenment* (New York: Hay House, 2011).
7. Dr. Alessio Fasano of Boston's Center for Celiac Research and Treatments, which is part of Massachusetts General Hospital, has written extensively on gluten sensitivity and the many ways it can manifest in people — sometimes mimicking other disorders. You can visit his website and access his publications at <http://www.celiaccenter.org/>.
8. Marios Hadjivassiliou, et al., "Does Cryptic Gluten Sensitivity Play a Part in Neurological Illness?" *Lancet* 347, no. 8998 (February 10, 1996): 369–71.
9. Marios Hadjivassiliou, et al., "Gluten Sensitivity as a Neurological Illness," *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry* 72, no. 5 (May 2002): 560–63.
10. Bernadette Kalman and Thomas H. Brannagan III, "Neurological Manifestations of Gluten Sensitivity," in *Neuroimmunology in Clinical Practice* (Wiley-Blackwell, 2007). This book provides an excellent review of the history of celiac disease.
11. Marios Hadjivassiliou, et al., "Gluten Sensitivity: From Gut to Brain," *Lancet Neurology* 9, no. 3 (March 2010): 318–30. This article provides another wonderful overview of celiac through the ages.
12. T. William, et al., "Cognitive Impairment and Celiac Disease," *Archives of Neurology* 63, no. 10 (October 2006): 1440–46. See also: Mayo Clinic, "Mayo Clinic Discovers Potential Link Between Celiac Disease and Cognitive Decline," *ScienceDaily*, October 12, 2006, <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2006/10/061010022602.htm> (accessed March 11, 2013).
13. Hadjivassiliou, et al., "Gluten Sensitivity: From Gut to Brain" (see chap. 2, n. 11).
14. The following website is a gateway to Dr. Vojdani's work and publications: <http://www.yourmedicaldetective.com/public/148.cfm>.
15. Rodney P. Ford, "The Gluten Syndrome: A Neurological Disease," *Medical Hypotheses* 73, no. 3 (September 2009): 438–40.
16. Gianna Ferretti, et al., "Celiac Disease, Inflammation and Oxidative Damage: A Nutrigenetic Approach," *Nutrients* 4, no. 4 (April 2012): 243–

257.

[17.](#) Ibid.

[18.](#) Davis, *Wheat Belly* (see chap. 1, n. 17).

[19.](#) Christine Zioudrou, et al., “Opioid Peptides Derived from Food Proteins (the Exorphins),” *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 254, no. 7 (April 10, 1979): 2446–49.

[20.](#) Davis, *Wheat Belly* (see chap. 1, n. 17).

Chapter 3

[1.](#) Craig Weller, <http://www.barefootfts.com>.

[2.](#) Roberts, et al., “Relative Intake of Macronutrients Impacts Risk of Mild Cognitive Impairment or Dementia” (see chap. 1, n. 2).

[3.](#) M. Mulder, et al., “Reduced Levels of Cholesterol, Phospholipids, and Fatty Acids in Cerebrospinal Fluid of Alzheimer Disease Patients Are Not Related to Apolipoprotein E4,” *Alzheimer Disease and Associated Disorders* 12, no. 3 (September 1998): 198–203.

[4.](#) P. Barberger-Gateau, et al., “Dietary Patterns and Risk of Dementia: The Three-city Cohort Study,” *Neurology* 69, no. 20 (November 13, 2007): 1921–30.

[5.](#) P. M. Kris-Etherton, et al., “Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids in the Food Chain in the United States,” *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 71, no. 1 (January 2000): S179–S188. See also: <http://chriskresser.com/how-too-much-omega-6-and-not-enough-omega-3-is-making-us-sick>.

[6.](#) Rebecca West, et al., “Better Memory Functioning Associated with Higher Total and Low-density Lipoprotein Cholesterol Levels in Very Elderly Subjects Without the Apolipoprotein e4 Allele,” *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 16, no. 9 (September 2008): 781–85.

[7.](#) L. M. de Lau, et al., “Serum Cholesterol Levels and the Risk of Parkinson’s Disease,” *American Journal of Epidemiology* 164, no. 10 (August 11, 2006): 998–1002.

[8.](#) X. Huang, et al., “Low LDL Cholesterol and Increased Risk of Parkinson’s Disease: Prospective Results from Honolulu-Asia Aging Study,” *Movement Disorders* 23, no. 7 (May 15, 2008): 1013–18.

[9.](#) H. M. Krumholz, et al., “Lack of Association Between Cholesterol and Coronary Heart Disease Mortality and Morbidity and All-cause Mortality in Persons Older Than 70 Years,” *JAMA* 272, no. 17 (November 2, 1994): 1335–40.

[10.](#) H. Petousis-Harris, “Saturated Fat Has Been Unfairly Demonised: Yes,” *Primary Health Care* 3, no. 4 (December 1, 2011): 317–19.

11. <http://www.survivediabetes.com/lowfat.html>.
12. A. W. Weverling-Rijnsburger, et al., "Total Cholesterol and Risk of Mortality in the Oldest Old," *Lancet* 350, no. 9085 (October 18, 1997): 1119–23.
13. L. Dupuis, et al., "Dyslipidemia Is a Protective Factor in Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis," *Neurology* 70, no. 13 (March 25, 2008): 1004–09.
14. P. W. Siri-Tarino, et al., "Meta-analysis of Prospective Cohort Studies Evaluating the Association of Saturated Fat with Cardiovascular Disease," *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 91, no. 3 (March 2010): 535–46.
15. Michael I. Gurr, et al., *Lipid Biochemistry: An Introduction*, Fifth Edition (New York: Wiley-Blackwell, 2010).
16. A. Astrup, et al., "The Role of Reducing Intakes of Saturated Fat in the Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease: Where Does the Evidence Stand in 2010?" *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 93, no. 4 (April 2011): 684–88.
17. For an engrossing, sweeping view of our dietary habits over the past century, see Dr. Donald W. Miller Jr.'s entry on Lew Rockwell's site at <http://www.lewrockwell.com/miller/miller33.1.html> (accessed May 13, 2013).
18. <http://www.choosemyplate.gov/>.
19. <http://www.lewrockwell.com/miller/miller33.1.html>.
20. International Atherosclerosis Project, "General Findings of the International Atherosclerosis Project," *Laboratory Investigation* 18, no. 5 (May 1968): 498–502.
21. <http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pubs/pdf/DiabetesReportCard.pdf>.
22. R. Stocker and J. F. Keaney Jr., "Role of Oxidative Modifications in Atherosclerosis," *Physiology Review* 84, no. 4 (October 2004): 1381–1478.
23. Y. Kiyohara, "The Cohort Study of Dementia: The Hisayama Study," *Rinsho Shinkeigaku* 51, no. 11 (November 2011): 906–09. Note that the article is in Japanese. Also see Ann Harding's coverage of this study for CNN Health at <http://www.cnn.com/2011/09/19/health/diabetes-doubles-alzheimers>.
24. D. Jacobs, et al., "Report of the Conference on Low Blood Cholesterol: Mortality Associations," *Circulation* 86, no. 3 (September 1992): 1046–60.
25. Duane Graveline, *Lipitor, Thief of Memory: Statin Drugs and the Misguided War on Cholesterol* (Duane Graveline, MD, 2006).
26. Culver, et al., "Statin Use and Risk of Diabetes Mellitus in Postmenopausal Women in the Women's Health Initiative" (see introduction, n. 2).
27. http://people.csail.mit.edu/seneff/alzheimers_statins.html.

28. Iowa State University, “Cholesterol-reducing Drugs May Lessen Brain Function, Says Researcher,” *ScienceDaily* (February 26, 2009), <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2009/02/090223221430.htm> (accessed March 13, 2012).
29. Center for Advancing Health, “Statins Do Not Help Prevent Alzheimer’s Disease, Review Finds,” *ScienceDaily* (April 16, 2009), <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2009/04/090415171324.htm> (accessed March 13, 2013). See also: B. McGuinness, et al., “Statins for the Prevention of Dementia,” *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2 (2009).
30. Ibid.
31. Stephanie Seneff, “APOE-4: The Clue to Why Low Fat Diet and Statins May Cause Alzheimer’s” (December 15, 2009), http://people.csail.mit.edu/seneff/alzheimers_statins.html.
32. Ibid.
33. Ibid.
34. The National Library of Medicine (<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/>) contains peer-reviewed, published research on more than 300 known adverse effects associated with the use of statins. For a summary of some of the larger studies, check out the following: <http://www.greenmedinfo.com/toxic-ingredient/statin-drugs> (accessed May 13, 2013).
35. G. Charach, et al., “Baseline Low-density Lipoprotein Cholesterol Levels and Outcome in Patients with Heart Failure,” *American Journal of Cardiology* 105, no. 1 (January 1, 2010): 100–04.
36. K. Rizvi, et al., “Do Lipid-lowering Drugs Cause Erectile Dysfunction? A Systematic Review,” *Journal of Family Practice* 19, no. 1 (February 2002): 95–98.
37. G. Corona, et al., “The Effect of Statin Therapy on Testosterone Levels in Subjects Consulting for Erectile Dysfunction,” pt. 1, *Journal of Sexual Medicine* 7, no. 4 (April 2010): 1547–56.
38. C. J. Malkin, et al., “Low Serum Testosterone and Increased Mortality in Men with Coronary Heart Disease,” *Heart* 96, no. 22 (November 2010): 1821–25.

Chapter 4

1. R. H. Lustig, et al., “Public Health: The Toxic Truth About Sugar,” *Nature* 482, no. 7383 (February 1, 2012): 27–29.
2. Gary Taubes, *Good Calories, Bad Calories: Challenging the Conventional Wisdom on Diet, Weight Control, and Disease* (New York: Knopf, 2007).

3. Gary Taubes, "Is Sugar Toxic?" *New York Times*, April 13, 2011. Available online at http://www.nytimes.com/2011/04/17/magazine/mag-17Sugar-t.html?pagewanted=all&_r=0.
4. R. H. Lustig, "Sugar: The Bitter Truth," video, <http://youtu.be/dBnniua6-oM> (2009). This is a captivating overview of sugar metabolism.
5. Gary Taubes, *Why We Get Fat: And What to Do About It* (New York: Knopf, 2010).
6. Ibid., 134.
7. K. Yaffe, et al., "Diabetes, Glucose Control, and 9-year Cognitive Decline Among Older Adults Without Dementia," *Archives of Neurology* 69, no. 9 (September 2012): 1170–75.
8. R. O. Roberts, et al., "Association of Duration and Severity of Diabetes Mellitus with Mild Cognitive Impairment," *Archives of Neurology* 65, no. 8 (August 2008): 1066–73.
9. Amy Dockser Marcus, "Mad-cow Disease May Hold Clues to Other Neurological Disorders," *Wall Street Journal*, December 3, 2012. Available online at <http://online.wsj.com/article/SB10001424127887324020804578151291509>
10. J. Stöhr, et al., "Purified and Synthetic Alzheimer's Amyloid Beta (A β) Prions," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 109, no. 27 (July 3, 2012): 11025–30.
11. L. C. Maillard, "Action of Amino Acids on Sugars: Formation of Melanoidins in a Methodical Way," *Comptes Rendus Chimie* 154 (1912): 66–68.
12. P. Gkogkolou and M. Böhm, "Advanced Glycation End Products: Key Players in Skin Aging?" *Dermato-Endocrinology* 4, no. 3 (July 1, 2012): 259–70.
13. Q. Zhang, et al., "A Perspective on the Maillard Reaction and the Analysis of Protein Glycation by Mass Spectrometry: Probing the Pathogenesis of Chronic Disease," *Journal of Proteome Research* 8, no. 2 (February 2009): 754–69.
14. Sonia Gandhi and Audrey Abramov, "Mechanism of Oxidative Stress in Neurodegeneration," *Oxidative Medicine and Cellular Longevity* (2012).
15. C. Enzinger, et al., "Risk Factors for Progression of Brain Atrophy in Aging: Six-year Follow-up of Normal Subjects," *Neurology* 64, no. 10 (May 24, 2005): 1704–11.
16. M. Hamer, et al., "Haemoglobin A1c, Fasting Glucose and Future Risk of Elevated Depressive Symptoms over 2 Years of Follow-up in the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing," *Psychological Medicine* 41, no. 9 (September 2011): 1889–96.

- [17.](#) C. Geroldi, et al., “Insulin Resistance in Cognitive Impairment: The InCHIANTI Study,” *Archives of Neurology* 62, no. 7 (2005): 1067–72.
- [18.](#) M. Adamczak and A. Wiecek, “The Adipose Tissue as an Endocrine Organ,” *Seminars in Nephrology* 33, no. 1 (January 2013): 2–13.
- [19.](#) E. L. de Hollander, et al., “The Association Between Waist Circumference and Risk of Mortality Considering Body Mass Index in 65- to 74-year-olds: A Meta-analysis of 29 Cohorts Involving More Than 58,000 Elderly Persons,” *International Journal of Epidemiology* 41, no. 3 (June 2012): 805–17.
- [20.](#) F. Item and D. Konrad, “Visceral Fat and Metabolic Inflammation: The Portal Theory Revisited,” pt. 2, *Obesity Reviews* 13 (December 2012): S30–S39.
- [21.](#) C. Geroldi, et al., “Insulin Resistance in Cognitive Impairment” (see chap. 4, n. 17).
- [22.](#) C. A. Raji, et al., “Brain Structure and Obesity,” *Human Brain Mapping* 31, no. 3 (March 2010): 353–64.
- [23.](#) R. A. Whitmer, et al., “Central Obesity and Increased Risk of Dementia More Than Three Decades Later,” *Neurology* 71, no. 14 (September 30, 2008): 1057–64.
- [24.](#) <http://www.internalmedicineneeds.com/single-view/weight-loss-through-dieting-increases-insulin-sensitivity/dd3b525509b3dad9b123535c7eb745b5.html>.
- [25.](#) C. B. Ebbeling, et al., “Effects of Dietary Composition on Energy Expenditure During Weight-loss Maintenance,” *JAMA* 307, no. 24 (June 27, 2012): 2627–34.
- [26.](#) R. Estruch, et al., “Primary Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease with a Mediterranean Diet,” *New England Journal of Medicine* (February 25, 2013), <http://www.nejm.org/doi/full/10.1056/NEJMoa1200303#t=article>.

Chapter 5

- [1.](#) Nicholas Wade, “Heart Muscle Renewed over Lifetime, Study Finds,” *New York Times*, April 2, 2009. Available online at <http://www.nytimes.com/2009/04/03/science/03heart.html>.
- [2.](#) Santiago Ramón y Cajal, *Cajal’s Degeneration and Regeneration of the Nervous System* (History of Neuroscience) (New York: Oxford University Press, 1991).
- [3.](#) Charles C. Gross, “Neurogenesis in the Adult Brain: Death of a Dogma,” *Nature Reviews Neuroscience* 1, no. 1 (October 2000): 67–73. See this op-

ed piece for a summation of how we've come to understand neurogenesis in mammals.

4. P. S. Eriksson, et al., "Neurogenesis in the Adult Human Hippocampus," *Nature Medicine* 4, no. 11 (November 1998): 1313–17.
5. David Perlmutter, MD, and Alberto Villoldo, PhD, *Power Up Your Brain: The Neuroscience of Enlightenment* (New York: Hay House, 2011).
6. Norman Doidge, *The Brain That Changes Itself: Stories of Personal Triumph from the Frontiers of Brain Science* (New York: Viking, 2007).
7. J. Lee, et al., "Decreased Levels of BDNF Protein in Alzheimer Temporal Cortex Are Independent of BDNF Polymorphisms," *Experimental Neurology* 194, no. 1 (July 2005): 91–96.
8. Perlmutter, *Power Up Your Brain* (see chap. 2, n. 6).
9. A. V. Witte, et al., "Caloric Restriction Improves Memory in Elderly Humans," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 106, no. 4 (January 27, 2009): 1255–60.
10. M. P. Mattson, et al., "Prophylactic Activation of Neuroprotective Stress Response Pathways by Dietary and Behavioral Manipulations," *NeuroRx* 1, no. 1 (January 2004): 111–16.
11. H. C. Hendrie, et al., "Incidence of Dementia and Alzheimer Disease in 2 Communities: Yoruba Residing in Ibadan, Nigeria, and African Americans Residing in Indianapolis, Indiana," *JAMA* 285, no. 6 (February 14, 2001): 739–47.
12. <http://calorielab.com/news/2005/11/24/americans-eat-523-more-daily-calories-than-in-1970/>.
13. <http://www.forbes.com/sites/bethhoffman/2012/07/30/the-olympics-of-overeating-which-country-eats-the-most/>.
14. Sources vary on the average sugar consumption. Interestingly, the U.S. Department of Agriculture, which maintains statistics on our sweet tooth, changed the numbers in 2012 after it employed new methodology that shaved 20 pounds off its estimate and brought the number down to 76.7 pounds. (See: <http://www.nytimes.com/2012/10/27/business/us-cuts-estimate-of-sugar-intake-of-typical-american.html?pagewanted=all>.) But estimating sugar consumption is difficult, and many argue that the numbers above 100 pounds annually are more realistic.
15. A. V. Araya, et al., "Evaluation of the Effect of Caloric Restriction on Serum BDNF in Overweight and Obese Subjects: Preliminary Evidences," *Endocrine* 33, no. 3 (June 2008): 300–04.
16. R. Molteni, et al., "A High-fat, Refined Sugar Diet Reduces Hippocampal Brain-derived Neurotrophic Factor, Neuronal Plasticity, and Learning," *Neuroscience* 112, no. 4 (2002): 803–14.

17. S. Srivastava and M. C. Haigis, "Role of Sirtuins and Calorie Restriction in Neuroprotection: Implications in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's Diseases," *Current Pharmaceutical Design* 17, no. 31 (2011): 3418–33.
18. Y. Nakajo, et al., "Genetic Increase in Brain-derived Neurotrophic Factor Levels Enhances Learning and Memory," *Brain Research* 1241 (November 19, 2008): 103–09.
19. C. E. Stafstrom and J. M. Rho, "The Ketogenic Diet as a Treatment Paradigm for Diverse Neurological Disorders," *Frontiers in Pharmacology* 3 (2012): 59.
20. For a history of the ketogenic diet, see <http://www.news-medical.net/health/History-of-the-Ketogenic-Diet.aspx>.
21. M. Gasior, et al., "Neuroprotective and Disease-modifying Effects of the Ketogenic Diet," *Behavioral Pharmacology* 17, nos. 5–6 (September 2006): 431–39. See also: Z. Zhao, et al., "A Ketogenic Diet as a Potential Novel Therapeutic Intervention in Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis," *BMC Neuroscience* 7 (April 3, 2006): 29.
22. T. B. Vanitallie, et al., "Treatment of Parkinson Disease with Diet-induced Hyperketonemia: A Feasibility Study," *Neurology* 64, no. 4 (February 22, 2005): 728–30.
23. M. A. Reger, et al., "Effects of Beta-hydroxybutyrate on Cognition in Memory-impaired Adults," *Neurobiology of Aging* 25, no. 3 (March 2004): 311–14.
24. Mary Newport, "What If There Was a Cure for Alzheimer's Disease and No One Knew?" www.coconutketones.com/whatifcure.pdf (July 22, 2008).
25. I. Van der Auwera, et al., "A Ketogenic Diet Reduces Amyloid Beta 40 and 42 in a Mouse Model of Alzheimer's Disease," *Nutrition & Metabolism* 2 (October 17, 2005): 28.
26. D. R. Ziegler, et al., "Ketogenic Diet Increases Glutathione Peroxidase Activity in Rat Hippocampus," *Neurochemical Research* 28, no. 12 (December 2003): 1793–97.
27. K. W. Barañano and A. L. Hartman, "The Ketogenic Diet: Uses in Epilepsy and Other Neurologic Illnesses," *Current Treatment Options in Neurology* 10, no. 6 (November 2008): 410–19.
28. Taubes, *Why We Get Fat: And What to Do About It*, p. 178 (see chap. 4, n. 5).
29. G. L. Xiong and P. M. Doraiswamy, "Does Meditation Enhance Cognition and Brain Plasticity?" *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences* 1172 (August 2009): 63–69. See also: E. Dakwar and F. R. Levin, "The Emerging Role of Meditation in Addressing Psychiatric Illness, with a

- Focus on Substance Use Disorders,” *Harvard Review of Psychiatry* 17, no. 4 (2009): 254–67.
30. K. Yurko-Mauro, et al., “Beneficial Effects of Docosahexaenoic Acid on Cognition in Age-related Cognitive Decline,” *Alzheimer’s and Dementia* 6, no. 6 (November 2010): 456–64.
 31. M. C. Morris, et al., “Consumption of Fish and n-3 Fatty Acids and Risk of Incident Alzheimer Disease,” *Archives of Neurology* 60, no. 7 (July 2003): 940–46.
 32. E. J. Schaefer, et al., “Plasma Phosphatidylcholine Docosahexaenoic Acid Content and Risk of Dementia and Alzheimer Disease: The Framingham Heart Study,” *Archives of Neurology* 63, no. 11 (November 2006): 1545–50.
 33. Mattson, et al., “Prophylactic Activation of Neuroprotective Stress Response Pathways by Dietary and Behavioral Manipulations” (see chap. 5, n. 10). See also: M. P. Mattson, et al., “Modification of Brain Aging and Neurodegenerative Disorders by Genes, Diet, and Behavior,” *Physiological Reviews* 82, no. 3 (July 2002): 637–72.
 34. Some of the material here was adapted from *Power Up Your Brain: The Neuroscience of Enlightenment* (New York: Hay House, 2011) and from an article by Dr. David Perlmutter titled “Free Radicals: How They Speed the Aging Process,” posted by the *Huffington Post* (<http://www.huffingtonpost.com>) on January 25, 2011.
 35. D. Harman, “Aging: A Theory Based on Free Radical and Radiation Chemistry,” *Journal of Gerontology* 11, no. 3 (July 1956): 298–300.
 36. D. Harman, “Free Radical Theory of Aging: Dietary Implications,” *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 25, no. 8 (August 1972): 839–43.
 37. W. R. Markesbery and M. A. Lovell, “Damage to Lipids, Proteins, DNA, and RNA in Mild Cognitive Impairment,” *Archives of Neurology* 64, no. 7 (July 2007): 954–56.
 38. L. Gao, et al., “Novel n-3 Fatty Acid Oxidation Products Activate Nrf2 by Destabilizing the Association Between Keap1 and Cullin3,” *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 282, no. 4 (January 26, 2007): 2529–37.
 39. U. Boettler, et al., “Coffee Constituents as Modulators of Nrf2 Nuclear Translocation and ARE (EpRE)-dependent Gene Expression,” *Journal of Nutritional Biochemistry* 22, no. 5 (May 2011): 426–40.
 40. <http://www.nia.nih.gov>.

Chapter 6

1. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/adhd/data.html>.

2. <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/slatis/nsch.htm>.
3. Alan Schwarz and Sarah Cohen, "A.D.H.D. Seen in 11% of U.S. Children as Diagnoses Rise," *New York Times*, March 31, 2013. Accessible at http://www.nytimes.com/2013/04/01/health/more-diagnoses-of-hyperactivity-causing-concern.html?_r=0 (accessed April 1, 2013).
4. Ibid.
5. Express Scripts, "America's State of Mind (originally published by Medco Health Solutions, Inc.)," <http://www.toxicpsychiatry.com/storage/Psych%20Drug%20Us%20Epidem> (accessed March 20, 2013).
6. N. Zelnik, et al., "Range of Neurologic Disorders in Patients with Celiac Disease," *Pediatrics* 113, no. 6 (June 2004): 1672–76. See also: M. Percy and E. Propst, "Celiac Disease: Its Many Faces and Relevance to Developmental Disabilities," *Journal on Developmental Disabilities* 14, no. 2 (2008).
7. L. Corvaglia, et al., "Depression in Adult Untreated Celiac Subjects: Diagnosis by the Pediatrician," *American Journal of Gastroenterology* 94, no. 3 (March 1999): 839–43.
8. James M. Greenblatt, MD, "Is Gluten Making You Depressed? The Link between Celiac Disease and Depression," *The Breakthrough Depression Solution* (blog), *Psychology Today*, May 24, 2011, <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-break-through-depression-solution/201105/is-gluten-making-you-depressed>.
9. American Academy of Pediatrics, "Gastrointestinal Problems Common in Children with Autism," *ScienceDaily*, <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2010/05/100502080234.htm> (accessed March 20, 2013). See also: L. W. Wang, et al., "The Prevalence of Gastrointestinal Problems in Children Across the United States with Autism Spectrum Disorders from Families with Multiple Affected Members," *Journal of Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics* 32, no. 5 (June 2011): 351–60.
10. T. L. Lowe, et al., "Stimulant Medications Precipitate Tourette's Syndrome," *JAMA* 247, no. 12 (March 26, 1982): 1729–31.
11. M. A. Verkasalo, et al., "Undiagnosed Silent Coeliac Disease: A Risk for Underachievement?" *Scandinavian Journal of Gastroenterology* 40, no. 12 (December 2005): 1407–12.
12. S. Amiri, et al., "Pregnancy-related Maternal Risk Factors of Attention-deficit Hyperactivity Disorder: A Case-control Study," *ISRN Pediatrics* (2012) doi: 10.5402/2012/458064.

- [13.](#) A. K. Akobeng, et al., “Effect of Breast Feeding on Risk of Coeliac Disease: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis of Observational Studies,” *Archives of Disease in Childhood* 91, no. 1 (January 2006): 39–43.
- [14.](#) S. J. Blumberg, et al., “Changes in Prevalence of Parent-reported Autism Spectrum Disorder in School-aged U.S. Children: 2007 to 2011–2012,” *National Health Statistics Report* No. 65 (March 20, 2013). Available at <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/nhsr/nhsr065.pdf>.
- [15.](#) S. J. Genuis, et al., “Celiac Disease Presenting as Autism,” *Journal of Child Neurology* 25, no. 1 (January 2013): 114–19.
- [16.](#) P. Whiteley, et al., “A Gluten-free Diet as an Intervention for Autism and Associated Spectrum Disorders: Preliminary Findings,” *Autism* 3, no. 1 (March 1999): 45–65.
- [17.](#) K. L. Reichelt and A. M. Knivsberg, “Can the Pathophysiology of Autism Be Explained by the Nature of the Discovered Urine Peptides?” *Nutritional Neuroscience* 6, no. 1 (February 2003): 19–28. See also: A. E. Kalaydjian, et al., “The Gluten Connection: The Association Between Schizophrenia and Celiac Disease,” *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 113, no. 2 (February 2006): 82–90.
- [18.](#) C. M. Pennesi and L. C. Klein, “Effectiveness of the Gluten-free, Casein-free Diet for Children Diagnosed with Autism Spectrum Disorder: Based on Parental Report,” *Nutritional Neuroscience* 15, no. 2 (March 2012): 85–91. See also: *ScienceDaily*, <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2012/02/120229105128.htm> (accessed March 26, 2013).
- [19.](#) C. J. L. Murray and A. D. Lopez, “The Global Burden of Disease: A Comprehensive Assessment of Mortality and Disability from Diseases, Injuries and Risk Factors in 1990 and Projected to 2020,” World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland (1996). See also: <http://www.cdc.gov/mentalhealth/basics.htm>.
- [20.](#) J. W. Smoller, et al., “Antidepressant Use and Risk of Incident Cardiovascular Morbidity and Mortality Among Postmenopausal Women in the Women’s Health Initiative Study,” *Archives of Internal Medicine* 169, no. 22 (December 14, 2009): 2128–39.
- [21.](#) J. C. Fournier, et al., “Antidepressant Drug Effects and Depression Severity: A Patient-level Meta-analysis,” *JAMA* 303, no. 1 (January 6, 2010): 47–53.
- [22.](#) J. Y. Shin, et al., “Are Cholesterol and Depression Inversely Related? A Meta-analysis of the Association Between Two Cardiac Risk Factors,” *Annals of Behavioral Medicine* 36, no. 1 (August 2008): 33–43.

23. http://www.naturalnews.com/032125_statins_memory_loss.html.
24. James Greenblatt, MD, "Low Cholesterol and Its Psychological Effects: Low Cholesterol Is Linked to Depression, Suicide, and Violence," *The Breakthrough Depression Solution* (blog), *Psychology Today*, June 10, 2011, <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-breakthrough-depression-solution/201106/low-cholesterol-and-its-psychological-effects>.
25. R. E. Morgan, et al., "Plasma Cholesterol and Depressive Symptoms in Older Men," *Lancet* 341, no. 8837 (January 9, 1993): 75–79.
26. M. Horsten, et al., "Depressive Symptoms, Social Support, and Lipid Profile in Healthy Middle-aged Women," *Psychosomatic Medicine* 59, no. 5 (September–October 1997): 521–28.
27. P. H. Steegmans, et al., "Higher Prevalence of Depressive Symptoms in Middle-aged Men with Low Serum Cholesterol Levels," *Psychosomatic Medicine* 62, no. 2 (March–April 2000): 205–11.
28. M. M. Perez-Rodriguez, et al., "Low Serum Cholesterol May Be Associated with Suicide Attempt History," *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 69, no. 12 (December 2008): 1920–27.
29. J. A. Boscarino, et al., "Low Serum Cholesterol and External-cause Mortality: Potential Implications for Research and Surveillance," *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 43, no. 9 (June 2009): 848–54.
30. Sarah T. Melton, "Are Cholesterol Levels Linked to Bipolar Disorder?" *Medscape Today News, Ask the Pharmacists*, May 16, 2011, <http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/741999> (accessed May 13, 2013).
31. C. Hallert and J. Aström, "Psychic Disturbances in Adult Coeliac Disease," *Scandinavian Journal of Gastroenterology* 17, no. 1 (January 1982): 21–24.
32. C. Ciacci, et al., "Depressive Symptoms in Adult Coeliac Disease," *Scandinavian Journal of Gastroenterology* 33, no. 3 (March 1998): 247–50.
33. James M. Greenblatt, MD, "Is Gluten Making You Depressed? The Link Between Celiac Disease and Depression," *The Breakthrough Depression Solution* (blog), *Psychology Today*, <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-breakthrough-depression-solution/201105/is-gluten-making-you-depressed> (May 24, 2011).
34. J. F. Ludvigsson, et al., "Coeliac Disease and Risk of Mood Disorders — A General Population-based Cohort Study," *Journal of Affective Disorders* 99, nos. 1–3 (April 2007): 117–26.
35. J. F. Ludvigsson, et al., "Increased Suicide Risk in Coeliac Disease — A Swedish Nationwide Cohort Study," *Digest of Liver Disorders* 43, no. 8 (August 2011): 616–22.

36. M. G. Carta, et al., "Recurrent Brief Depression in Celiac Disease," *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 55, no. 6 (December 2003): 573–74.
37. C. Briani, et al., "Neurological Complications of Celiac Disease and Autoimmune Mechanisms: A Prospective Study," *Journal of Neuroimmunology* 195, nos. 1–2 (March 2008): 171–75.
38. Greenblatt, "Is Gluten Making You Depressed?" (see chap. 6, n. 8).
39. <http://www.scientificamerican.com/article.cfm?id=gut-second-brain>.
40. M. Siwek, et al., "Zinc Supplementation Augments Efficacy of Imipramine in Treatment Resistant Patients: A Double Blind, Placebo-controlled Study," *Journal of Affective Disorders* 118, nos. 1–3 (November 2009): 187–95.
41. Greenblatt, "Is Gluten Making You Depressed?" (see chap. 6, n. 8).
42. Karlsson, et al., "Maternal Antibodies to Dietary Antigens and Risk for Nonaffective Psychosis in Offspring," *American Journal of Psychiatry* 169, no. 6 (June 2012): 625–32.
43. Grace Rattue, "Schizophrenia Risk in Kids Associated with Mothers' Gluten Antibodies," *Medical News Today*, 2012. Accessible at <http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/245484.php> (accessed March 30, 2013).
44. B. D. Kraft and E. C. Westman, "Schizophrenia, Gluten, and Low-carbohydrate, Ketogenic Diets: A Case Report and Review of the Literature," *Nutrition & Metabolism* (London) 6 (February 26, 2009): 10.
45. <http://www.webmd.com/migraines-headaches/default.htm> (accessed May 13, 2013).
46. A. K. Dimitrova, et al., "Prevalence of Migraine in Patients with Celiac Disease and Inflammatory Bowel Disease," *Headache* 53, no. 2 (February 2013): 344–55.
47. M. Hadjivassiliou and R. Grünewald, "The Neurology of Gluten Sensitivity: Science vs. Conviction," *Practical Neurology* 4 (2004): 124–26.
48. <http://www.celiaccenter.org/>.
49. S. M. Wolf, et al., "Pediatric Migraine Management," *Pain Medicine News* (September/October 2003): 1–6.
50. E. Lionetti, et al. "Headache in Pediatric Patients with Celiac Disease and Its Prevalence as a Diagnostic Clue," *Journal of Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition* 49, no. 2 (August 2009): 202–07.
51. D. Ferraro and G. Di Trapani, "Topiramate in the Prevention of Pediatric Migraine: Literature Review," *Journal of Headache Pain* 9, no. 3 (June 2008): 147–50.

52. E. Bakola, et al., “Anticonvulsant Drugs for Pediatric Migraine Prevention: An Evidence-based Review,” *European Journal of Pain* 13, no. 9 (October 2009): 893–901.
53. B. L. Peterlin, et al., “Obesity and Migraine: The Effect of Age, Gender, and Adipose Tissue Distribution,” *Headache* 50, no. 1 (January 2010): 52–62.
54. M. E. Bigal, et al., “Obesity, Migraine, and Chronic Migraine: Possible Mechanisms of Interaction,” *Neurology* 68, no. 27 (May 22, 2007): 1851–61.
55. M. E. Bigal and R. B. Lipton, “Obesity Is a Risk Factor for Transformed Migraine but Not Chronic Tension-type Headache,” *Neurology* 67, no. 2 (July 25, 2006): 252–57.
56. L. Robberstad, et al., “An Unfavorable Lifestyle and Recurrent Headaches Among Adolescents: The HUNT Study,” *Neurology* 75, no. 8 (August 24, 2010): 712–17.

Chapter 7

1. Perlmutter, *Power Up Your Brain* (see chap. 5, n. 5). Also see an article posted at <http://healyourlife.com> on April 25, 2011 by Drs. Perlmutter and Villoldo entitled “Size Does Matter!”
2. G. F. Cahill and R. L. Veech Jr., “Ketoacids? Good Medicine?” *Transactions of the American Clinical and Climatological Association* 114 (2003): 149–61.
3. M. P. Mattson and R. Wan, “Beneficial Effects of Intermittent Fasting and Caloric Restriction on the Cardiovascular and Cerebrovascular Systems,” *Journal of Nutritional Biochemistry* 16, no. 3 (March 2005): 129–37.
4. G. Zuccoli, et al., “Metabolic Management of Glioblastoma Multiforme Using Standard Therapy Together with a Restricted Ketogenic Diet: Case Report,” *Nutrition & Metabolism* (London) 7 (April 22, 2010): 33.
5. J. A. Baur and D. A. Sinclair, “Therapeutic Potential of Resveratrol: The In Vivo Evidence,” *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery* 5, no. 6 (June 2006): 493–506.
6. D. O. Kennedy, et al., “Effects of Resveratrol on Cerebral Blood Flow Variables and Cognitive Performance in Humans: A Double-blind, Placebo-controlled, Crossover Investigation,” *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 91, no. 6 (June 2010): 1590–97.
7. T. P. Ng, et al., “Curry Consumption and Cognitive Function in the Elderly,” *American Journal of Epidemiology* 164, no. 9 (November 1, 2006): 898–906.

8. K. Tillisch, et al., "Consumption of Fermented Milk Product with Probiotic Modulates Brain Activity," *Gastroenterology* pii: S0016-5085(13)00292-8. doi: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.02.043 (March 1, 2013).
9. J. A. Bravo, et al., "Ingestion of *Lactobacillus* Strain Regulates Emotional Behavior and Central GABA Receptor Expression in a Mouse Via the Vagus Nerve," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 108, no. 138 (September 20, 2011): 16050–55.
10. A. C. Bested, et al., "Intestinal Microbiota, Probiotics and Mental Health: From Metchnikoff to Modern Advances: Part I — Autointoxication Revisited," *Gut Pathogens* 5, no. 1 (March 18, 2013): 5. See also Parts II and III of the same report.
11. J. F. Cryan and S. M. O'Mahony, "The Microbiome-Gut-Brain Axis: From Bowel to Behavior," *Neurogastroenterology and Motility* 23, no. 3 (March 2011): 187–92.
12. Michael Gershon, MD, *The Second Brain: The Scientific Basis of Gut Instinct and a Groundbreaking New Understanding of Nervous Disorders of the Stomach and Intestines* (New York: Harper, 1998).
13. For more about the brain-gut connection, check out the work of Dr. Emeran Mayer, MD, director of the University of California Los Angeles's Center for Neurobiology of Stress. In particular, *The Globe and Mail* featured him in an article by Chantal Ouimet ("The Gut Has a Mind of Its Own") published on December 31, 2002. It can be accessed at <http://www.ibs.med.ucla.edu/Articles/PatientArticle001.htm>.
14. L. Packer, et al., "Neuroprotection by the Metabolic Antioxidant Alpha-lipoic Acid," *Free Radical Biology & Medicine* 22, nos. 1–2 (1997): 359–78.
15. For everything you want to know about vitamin D, including in-depth discussion of studies, refer to Dr. Michael Holick's seminal book *The Vitamin D Solution: A 3-Step Strategy to Cure Our Most Common Health Problems* (New York: Hudson Street Press, 2010).
16. <http://blogs.scientificamerican.com/observations/2010/07/13/vitamin-d-deficiency-linked-to-parkinsons-disease-cognitive-decline/>.
17. C. Annweiler, et al., "Higher Vitamin D Dietary Intake Is Associated with Lower Risk of Alzheimer's Disease: A 7-year Follow-up," *Journals of Gerontology Series A: Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences* 67, no. 11 (November 2012): 1205–11.
18. D. J. Llewellyn, et al., "Vitamin D and Risk of Cognitive Decline in Elderly Persons," *Archives of Internal Medicine* 170, no. 13 (July 12, 2012): 1135–41.

19. S. Simpson Jr., et al., "Higher 25-hydroxyvitamin D Is Associated with Lower Relapse Risk in Multiple Sclerosis," *Annals of Neurology* 68, no. 2 (August 2010): 193–203. See also: C. Pierrot-Deseilligny, et al., "Relationship Between 25-OH-D Serum Level and Relapse Rate in Multiple Sclerosis Patients Before and After Vitamin D Supplementation," *Therapeutic Advances in Neurological Disorders* 5, no. 4 (July 2012): 187–98.
20. R. E. Anglin, et al., "Vitamin D Deficiency and Depression in Adults: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis," *British Journal of Psychiatry* 202 (February 2013): 100–07.

Chapter 8

1. C. W. Cotman, et al., "Exercise Builds Brain Health: Key Roles of Growth Factor Cascades and Inflammation," *Trends in Neuroscience* 30, no. 9 (September 2007): 464–72. See also: University of Edinburgh, "Exercise the Body to Keep the Brain Healthy, Study Suggests," *ScienceDaily*, October 22, 2012, <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2012/10/121022162647.htm> (accessed March 21, 2013).
2. L. F. Defina, et al., "The Association Between Midlife Cardiorespiratory Fitness Levels and Later-life Dementia: A Cohort Study," *Annals of Internal Medicine* 158, no. 3 (February 5, 2013): 162–68.
3. Gretchen Reynolds, "How Exercise Could Lead to a Better Brain," *New York Times Magazine*, April 18, 2012. Accessible at: http://www.nytimes.com/2012/04/22/magazine/how-exercise-could-lead-to-a-better-brain.html?pagewanted=all&_r=0.
4. A. S. Buchman, et al., "Total Daily Physical Activity and the Risk of AD and Cognitive Decline in Older Adults," *Neurology* 78, no. 17 (April 24, 2012): 1323–29.
5. D. M. Bramble and D. E. Lieberman, "Endurance Running and the Evolution of *Homo*," *Nature* 432, no. 7015 (November 18, 2004): 345–52.
6. D. A. Raichlen and A. D. Gordon, "Relationship Between Exercise Capacity and Brain Size in Mammals," *PLOS One* 6, no. 6 (2011).
7. Gretchen Reynolds, "Exercise and the Ever-Smarter Human Brain," *New York Times*, December 26, 2012. Available at: <http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2012/12/26/exercise-and-the-ever-smarter-human-brain/>.
8. D. A. Raichlen and J. D. Polk, "Linking Brains and Brawn: Exercise and the Evolution of Human Neurobiology," *Proceedings of the Royal Society*

- B: Biological Sciences* 280, no. 1750 (January 7, 2013): 2012–50.
9. Reynolds, “How Exercise Could Lead to a Better Brain” (see chap. 8, n. 3).
 10. P. J. Clark, et al., “Genetic Influences on Exercise-induced Adult Hippocampal Neurogenesis Across 12 Divergent Mouse Strains,” *Genes, Brain and Behavior* 10, no. 3 (April 2011): 345–53. See also: R. A. Kohman, et al., “Voluntary Wheel Running Reverses Age-induced Changes in Hippocampal Gene Expression,” *PLOS One* 6, no. 8 (2011): e22654.
 11. K. I. Erickson, et al., “Exercise Training Increases Size of Hippocampus and Improves Memory,” *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 108, no. 7 (February 15, 2011): 3017–22.
 12. N. Kee, et al., “Preferential Incorporation of Adult-generated Granule Cells into Spatial Memory Networks in the Dentate Gyrus,” *Nature Neuroscience* 10, no. 3 (March 2007): 355–62. See also: C. W. Wu, et al., “Treadmill Exercise Counteracts the Suppressive Effects of Peripheral Lipopolysaccharide on Hippocampal Neurogenesis and Learning and Memory,” *Journal of Neurochemistry* 103, no. 6 (December 2007): 2471–81.
 13. N. T. Lautenschlager, et al., “Effect of Physical Activity on Cognitive Function in Older Adults at Risk for Alzheimer Disease: A Randomized Trial,” *JAMA* 300, no. 9 (September 3, 2008): 1027–37.
 14. J. Weuve, et al., “Physical Activity, Including Walking, and Cognitive Function in Older Women,” *JAMA* 292, no. 12 (September 22, 2004): 1454–61.
 15. A. Yavari, et al., “The Effect of Aerobic Exercise on Glycosylated Hemoglobin Values in Type 2 Diabetes Patients,” *Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness* 50, no. 4 (December 2010): 501–05.
 16. Buchman, et al., “Total Daily Physical Activity and the Risk of AD and Cognitive Decline in Older Adults” (see chap. 8, n. 4). See also: Rush University Medical Center, “Daily Physical Activity May Reduce Alzheimer’s Disease Risk at Any Age,” *ScienceDaily*, April 18, 2012, <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2012/04/120418203530.htm> (accessed March 21, 2013).

Chapter 9

1. For a general overview of the relationship between sleep and health, go to: http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/brain_basics/understanding_sleep.htm. Also refer to the works of Dr. Michael Breus, a noted authority on sleep medicine: <http://www.thesleepdoctor.com/>.

2. Benedict Carey, "Aging in Brain Found to Hurt Sleep Needed for Memory," *New York Times*, January 27, 2013. Accessible at <http://www.nytimes.com/2013/01/28/health/brain-aging-linked-to-sleep-related-memory-decline.html> (accessed May 13, 2013). See also: B. A. Mander, et al., "Prefrontal Atrophy, Disrupted NREM Slow Waves and Impaired Hippocampal-dependent Memory in Aging," *Nature Neuroscience* 16, no. 3 (March 2013): 357–64.
3. C. S. Möller-Levet, et al., "Effects of Insufficient Sleep on Circadian Rhythmicity and Expression Amplitude of the Human Blood Transcriptome. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 110, no. 12 (March 19, 2013):E1132–41.
4. For volumes of data about sleep and statistics about how much we get, refer to the National Sleep Foundation at <http://www.nationalsleepfoundation.org>.
5. Ann Luktis, "Sleep's Surprising Effects on Hunger," *Wall Street Journal*, Health, December 17, 2012. Accessible at: <http://online.wsj.com/article/SB10001424127887324296604578175681814>
6. T. Blackwell, et al., "Associations Between Sleep Architecture and Sleep-disordered Breathing and Cognition in Older Community-dwelling Men: The Osteoporotic Fractures in Men Sleep Study," *Journal of the American Geriatric Society* 59, no. 12 (December 2011): 2217–25. See also: K. Yaffe, et al., "Sleep-disordered Breathing, Hypoxia, and Risk of Mild Cognitive Impairment and Dementia in Older Women," *JAMA* 306, no. 6 (August 10, 2011): 613–19. See also: A. P. Spira, et al., "Sleep-disordered Breathing and Cognition in Older Women," *Journal of the American Geriatric Society* 56, no. 1 (January 2008): 45–50.
7. Y. Zhang, et al., "Positional Cloning of the Mouse Obese Gene and Its Human Homologue," *Nature* 372, no. 6505 (December 1, 1994): 425–32.
8. E. D. Green, et al., "The Human Obese (OB) Gene: RNA Expression Pattern and Mapping on the Physical, Cytogenetic, and Genetic Maps of Chromosome 7," *Genome Research* 5, no. 1 (August 1995): 5–12.
9. Nora T. Gedgaudas, *Primal Body, Primal Mind: Beyond the Paleo Diet for Total Health and a Longer Life* (Rochester, Vermont: Healing Arts Press, 2011).
10. K. Spiegel, et al., "Brief Communication: Sleep Curtailment in Healthy Young Men Is Associated with Decreased Leptin Levels, Elevated Ghrelin Levels, and Increased Hunger and Appetite," *Annals of Internal Medicine* 141, no. 11 (December 7, 2004): 846–50.
11. S. Taheri, et al., "Short Sleep Duration Is Associated with Reduced Leptin, Elevated Ghrelin, and Increased Body Mass Index," *PLOS*

- Medicine* 1, no. 3 (December 2004) : e62.
- [12.](#) W. A. Banks, et al., “Triglycerides Induce Leptin Resistance at the Blood-Brain Barrier,” *Diabetes* 53, no. 5 (May 2004): 1253–60.
 - [13.](#) Ron Rosedale and Carol Colman, *The Rosedale Diet* (New York: William Morrow, 2004).

Chapter 10

- [1.](#) J. Gray and B. Griffin, “Eggs and Dietary Cholesterol — Dispelling the Myth,” *Nutrition Bulletin* 34, no. 1 (March 2009): 66–70.
- [2.](#) For more information and access to studies about eggs, go to <http://www.incrediblyegg.org> and read Janet Raloff’s article “Reevaluating Eggs’ Cholesterol Risks” for *Science News* (web edition, May 2, 2006) at <http://www.sciencenews.org/view/generic/id/7301/description/Reevaluating>
- [3.](#) C. N. Blesso, et al., “Whole Egg Consumption Improves Lipoprotein Profiles and Insulin Sensitivity to a Greater Extent Than Yolk-free Egg Substitute in Individuals with Metabolic Syndrome,” *Metabolism* 62, no. 3 (March 2013): 400–10.

Epilogue

- [1.](#) The World Health Organization, http://www.who.int/chp/chronic_disease_report/media/Factsheet1.pdf.
- [2.](#) Ibid.

Index

The page references in this index correspond to the printed edition from which this ebook was created. To find a specific word or phrase from the index, please use the search feature of your ebook reader.

Adams, John

ADHD (attention deficit hyperactivity disorder)

- C-sections and
- diagnosis of
- gluten-free diet and
- medications in treatment of

adrenal glands

AGEs (advanced glycation end products)

aging

- cognitive decline and
- deformed proteins and
- sleep disruptions and

Agriculture Department, U.S. (USDA)

alcohol

allergies

- food

almond milk

almonds, in Oatless “Oatmeal,”

alpha-linolenic acid

alpha-lipoic acid

Alzheimer’s disease

- BDNF levels and
- caloric restriction and
- DHA and
- diabetes and
- diet related to
- exercise and
- genetic factors and
- homocysteine levels and

overweight or obesity and
plaques in brain and
statins and
vitamin D and
amyloid
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS; Lou Gehrig's disease)
anxiety medications
antibiotics
antidepressants
anti-inflammatory medications
antioxidants
caloric restriction and
celiac disease and
cholesterol in brain as
Nrf2 pathway and
supplements and
turmeric and
anxiety disorders
apolipoprotein E (ApoE)
apoptosis
appetite
exercise and
ghrelin and
leptin and
sleep deprivation and
arthritis
aspirin
asthma
astrocytes
ataxia
atherosclerosis
athletic prowess
ATP (adenosine triphosphate)
autism
autoimmune disorders
type 1 diabetes
see also celiac disease
avocado(s)
Guacamole Dip
Tahini Dip

Balsamic-Glazed Steaks

Balsamic Vinaigrette

baseline, determining

basil, in Pecorino Pesto

bathroom toiletries

B-complex vitamins

BDNF (brain-derived neurotrophic factor):

- caloric restriction and

- exercise and

- functions of

- production of

beauty products

bedtime snacks

beef

- Akaushi Beef Tenderloin with Brussels Sprouts

- Balsamic-Glazed Steaks

- Succulent Short Ribs

belly fat, *see* visceral fat

beta-hydroxybutyrate (beta-HBA)

beverages

bile salts

bipolar disorder

blood fats

blood sugar

- bedtime snacks and

- brain shrinkage and

- carbohydrate consumption and

- cognitive decline and

- diagnostic tools and

- exercise and

- glycemic index and

- high, deformed proteins and

- high, insulin resistance and

- LDL oxidation and

- neurotransmitters and

- see also* diabetes

body temperature

brain:

- blood sugar and shrinkage in

- cholesterol in

digestive system's connection to
energy expenditure of
excessive body fat and degeneration of
fasting and
hippocampus in
ketones as fuel for
plasticity of *see also* neurogenesis
size of
supplements recommended for
synapses in
see also neurological function
brain-derived neurotrophic factor, *see* BDNF
brain disorders:
 excessive body fat and
 genes and
 gluten sensitivity and
 inflammation and
 modern grains and
 self-assessment of risk factors for
 statins and
brain tumors
bread products
breakfast cereals
breakfast recipes:
 Coconut Oil Omelet
 Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata
 Huevos Rancheros
 Oatless "Oatmeal,"
 Quick Crunchy "Cereal,"
breastfeeding
Brillat-Savarin, Anthelme
Broccoli Soup with Cashew Cream
Brussels Sprouts
butter
Buttermilk Dressing

Caesar, Julius
caffeine
caloric restriction:
 neurogenesis and

Nrf2 pathway activated by
see also fasting
calories, average daily intake of
cancers
canned foods
Caprese salad
carbohydrates
 blood sugar and insulin raised by
 cholesterol level raised by
 cognitive decline and
 defined
 diabetes and consumption of
 diet throughout human evolution and
 fiber in
 gluten-laden, addictiveness of
 goal for intake of
 health benefits of fats vs.
 human dietary requirement for
 hunger and cravings and
 as primary cause of weight gain
 processed, ridding kitchen of
 reducing intake of
 refined
 see also low-carb, high-fat diet; low-fat, high-carb diet
cardiovascular disease
carrots
Cashew Cream, Broccoli Soup with
Cashew Dip, Creamy
Cauliflower “Couscous,”
celiac disease (sprue)
 autism and
 breastfeeding and
 depression and
 free radicals and
 headaches and
 historical perspective on
 schizophrenia and bipolar disorder and
 see also gluten sensitivity
cell death
cell membranes

“Cereal,” Quick Crunchy

cereals

Cesarean sections

Chardonnay Baked Fish

cheese

Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata

chicken

Courgette Yogurt Gazpacho with Saffron-Marinated Chicken Breast

Lemon

with Mustard Vinaigrette

Quick Flat-Roasted

chickpeas, in Hummus Dip

childbearing:

Cesarean sections and

dietary sensitivity of mother before

children:

ADHD in

anxiety medications for

autism in

headaches in

chocolate

Coconut Mousse

Truffles

cholesterol, dietary

eggs and

cholesterol level

ALS (Lou Gehrig’s disease) and

carbohydrates and

cardiac risk and

conventional recommendation for

depression and

dietary fats and

high, threat to health posed by

LDL and

mortality risk and

neurological function and

sexual function and

cholesterol-lowering medications, *see* statins

circadian rhythms

coconut, in Quick Crunchy “Cereal,”

Coconut Chocolate Mousse

coconut oil

Coconut Oil Omelet

coenzyme Q

coffee

cognitive decline

aging and

carbohydrates and

celiac disease and

cognitive decline (*cont.*)

diabetes and

disrupted sleep and

glycation and

insulin resistance and

vitamin D and

see also memory function

condiments

consistency, in daily patterns

corn

coronary artery disease (CAD)

cholesterol and

inflammation and

low testosterone and

saturated fat and

statins and

cottage cheese

Courgette Yogurt Gazpacho with Saffron-Marinated Chicken Breast

COX-2 enzyme

cravings

C-reactive protein (CRP)

curcumin

curry

Cyrex array 3 or

cystic fibrosis

cytokines

see also leptin

daily schedule

dairy products

eliminating from diet

sensitivity to
Davis, William
death, risk for
dementia
body fat and risk for
cholesterol levels
diabetes and
diet rich in healthy fats and
Framingham study and
sleep disruptions and
vascular
see also Alzheimer's disease; cognitive decline
depression,
antidepressants and
celiac disease and
gluten sensitivity and
hemoglobin A1C and risk of
low cholesterol level and
nutritional deficiencies and
suicide risk and
vitamin D and
desserts:
Chocolate Coconut Mousse
Chocolate Truffles
detoxification:
fasting and
genes and
DHA (docosahexaenoic acid)
"diabesity,"
diabetes
Alzheimer's disease and
carbohydrate consumption and
cognitive decline and
dementia and
diagnostic tools and
genetics and
glucose utilization and
glycated proteins and
rising incidence of
risk related to duration of

- statins and
- type
- diagnostic tests
 - before and upon completion of four-week program
- dieting, weight loss through
- digestive disorders
- Dill Spread
- dinner, time for
- dips
 - Avocado-Tahini
 - Creamy Cashew
 - Guacamole
 - Hummus
- DNA, *see* genes; neurogenesis
- docosahexaenoic acid, *see* DHA
- Doidge, Norman
- dopamine
- dressings:
 - Buttermilk
 - Garlic
 - see also* vinaigrettes
- dystonia
-
- eating out
- eating patterns
- Edison, Thomas A.
- eggs
 - Coconut Oil Omelet
 - Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata
 - Huevos Rancheros
 - Oatless “Oatmeal,”
- 80/20 principle
- Emerson, Ralph Waldo
- emotions:
 - headaches and
 - intestinal bacteria and
- emphysema
- endocrine system
- endurance capacity
- EPA

epigenetics
epilepsy
epinephrine
erectile dysfunction (ED)
evolution, athletic prowess and
exercise
 Alzheimer's risk and
 athletic prowess of caveman ancestors and
 BDNF and
 brain health and
 headaches and
 insulin sensitivity and
 intensity of
 neurogenesis and
 week 2: focus on
exorphins

fasting
 ketogenic diets compared to
 protocol for
 in spiritual quests
 see also caloric restriction

fasting blood glucose

fasting insulin

fat (body):
 brain degeneration and
 burning, ketosis and
 carbohydrate intake and
 fasting and
 hormonal organ formed by
 “thrifty genes” and
 visceral (belly) fat

fat cells
 cytokines secreted by
 leptin in

“fat-free” foods

fatigue, chronic

fats, dietary
 conventional recommendation for
 diet high in, throughout human evolution

digestion of
healthy, restocking kitchen with
heart health and
ketogenic diet and
monounsaturated
omega-3 and omega-
saturated
see also cholesterol, dietary; low-carb, high-fat diet; low-fat, high-carb diet
fat-soluble vitamins
fiber
fish
 Chardonnay Baked
 in Dill and Lemon
 Grilled Sardines with Tomato, Rocket, and Pecorino Cheese
 Nicoise Salad
 Quick Salmon with Mushrooms
 Red Snapper with Celery, Black Olives, Cucumber, Avocado, and Cherry
Tomatoes
 Tuna Carpaccio with Red Onion, Parsley, and Pink Peppercorns
fish oils
folic acid
food allergies
Framingham Heart Study
free radicals
 antioxidants and
 celiac disease and
 cholesterol as protection against
 damaging effects of
 glycation and
Frittata, Gruyère and Goat Cheese
fructosamine
fructose
fruit juices
fruits

gallbladder
Garlic Dressing
Gazpacho, Courgette Yogurt, with Saffron-Marinated Chicken Breast
genes
 Alzheimer's disease and

- detoxification and
- diabetes and
- DNA damage and
- exercise and
- impacting expression of, 46; *see also* neurogenesis
- longevity and
- mutations in
- protein production and
- sleep and
- “thrifty,”
- ghrelin
- gliadin
- glioblastoma
- gluconeogenesis
- glucose
 - fasting blood glucose test and
 - LDL oxidized by
 - during times of starvation
- glutathione
- gluten
 - in bathroom toiletries and beauty products
 - foods cross-reacting with
 - foods with and without (lists)
 - increased consumption of
 - inflammation caused by
 - ridding kitchen of
 - in unexpected products
- gluten-free diet, impact of
 - cognitive decline and
 - headaches and
- gluten-free grains
- “gluten-free” products
- gluten sensitivity
 - anti-gliadin antibodies and
 - brain disorders and
 - Cesarean sections and
 - depression and
 - headaches and
 - mental illness and
 - movement disorders and

- schizophrenia and bipolar disorder and
- signs of
- testing for
- see also* celiac disease

glycation

- advanced glycation end products (AGEs) and
- hemoglobin A1C and

glycemic index (GI)

glycogen

goat cheese:

- and Gruyère Frittata
- Roasted Walnut-Oil Salad

grains

- addictiveness of
- containing gluten
- gluten-free
- modern, more gluten in
- see also* carbohydrates

Greek Lemon Lamb

Green Beans with Garlic Dressing

grocery shopping

Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata

Guacamole Dip

HDL (high-density lipoprotein)

headaches

- belly fat and
- in children
- gluten-free diet and
- gluten sensitivity and
- inflammation and
- lifestyle factors and
- medications for
- reducing

health care costs

heart attacks

heart disease

- cholesterol level and
- dietary fats and
- see also* coronary artery disease

hemoglobin A1C

blood sugar control and
brain health and
depression risk and
exercise and

Herb Garden Salad with Balsamic Vinaigrette

high-fructose corn syrup

hippocampus

homocysteine

honey

Huevos Rancheros

Hummus Dip

hunger, carbohydrate-based diet and

hunter-gatherer ancestors

hydrogenated fats

hypertension

hypothalamus

illness-centered approach

immune system

see also autoimmune disorders

impotence

infections, mortality from

inflammation

anti-inflammatory medications and

brain disorders and

caloric restriction and

chronic headaches and

coconut oil and

coronary artery disease and

COX-2 enzyme and

C-reactive protein and

DHA regulation of

dietary fats and

exercise and

food sensitivities and

free radicals and

general meaning of term

gluten and high-carbohydrate diet as stimulators of

headaches and

leptin and
managing level of
oxidation process and

vascular dementia and
visceral fat and
inflammatory bowel syndrome (IBS)
insomnia
insulin

carbohydrate consumption and
deformed proteins in pancreas and
exercise and sensitivity to
fasting insulin test and
leptin compared to
weight loss and sensitivity to
see also diabetes

insulin resistance
intellectual stimulation
intestinal brain (“second brain”)
intestines, gluten-related damage to

Japan, health research in

Kale Salad with Feta Cheese, Roasted Peppers, Black Olives, Artichokes, and
Buttermilk Dressing

ketogenic diet
fasting compared to

ketones
fasting and
ketone test strips

ketosis
kitchen:
clearing out
restocking

Lamb, Greek Lemon
LDL (low-density lipoprotein)
leaky gut
leftovers
legumes
Lemon Rocket with Parmigiano-Reggiano

Lemon Chicken

leptin

- signs of resistance to

life expectancy

lifestyle choices

- headaches and

- making changes in

lipid hypothesis

lipoprotein lipase

liver

- cholesterol made in

- ketones and

- sugars and

- visceral fat and

longevity

- caloric restriction and

- cholesterol level and

- genetic links to

Lou Gehrig's disease, *see* amyotrophic lateral sclerosis

low-carb, high-fat diet

- in week 1: focus on food

low-fat, high-carb diet

“low-fat” foods

low-glycemic diet

lunch, packing for work

lungs, saturated fats and

Lustig, Robert

macular degeneration

mad cow disease

magnesium

Maillard reaction

margarine

mealtimes

meat

- Greek Lemon Lamb

- see also* beef; chicken

medications

- fasting and

- for mental health problems

- sleep repercussions for
 - see also* statins
- meditation
- Mediterranean diet
- medium-chain triglycerides (MCTs)
- memory function
 - caloric restriction and
 - cholesterol level and
 - DHA and
 - disrupted sleep and
 - exercise and
 - high blood sugar and
 - obesity and
 - statins and
- mental health problems
 - medications for
 - see also* ADHD; depression
- menu plan for a week
- Mesmer, Franz Anton
- metabolism
 - of different types of sugar
- migraines
 - see also* headaches
- mild cognitive impairment (MCI)
- milk
 - mother's antibodies to
- "Minestrone," Liquid
- mitochondria
 - free radicals and
- monosodium glutamate (MSG)
- monounsaturated fats
- mood disorders
 - see also* depression
- motivators
- Mousse, Chocolate Coconut
- movement disorders
- mozzarella
- multiple sclerosis (MS)
- muscles
 - during times of starvation

Mushrooms, Quick Salmon with
Mustard Vinaigrette
mutations

Neanderthals

Nei Jing

Neolithic diet

nerve damage

nervous system

neurodegenerative diseases:

deformed proteins and

see also specific diseases

neurogenesis

BDNF and, *see* brain-derived neurotrophic factor

caloric restriction and

curcumin and DHA and

DNA control of

exercise and

intellectual stimulation and

ketogenic diets and

neurological function:

cholesterol and

gluten sensitivity and

neurons

cholesterol as essential fuel for

new, growth of, *see* neurogenesis

neurotransmitters

see also serotonin

Niçoise Salad

nicotine

Nigerians, Alzheimer's disease and

90/10 rule

non-negotiable goals

norepinephrine

Nrf2 pathway

nuts

Oatless "Oatmeal,"

oats

obesity, *see* overweight and obesity

oils:

- cooking, commercial brands of healthy vegetable

olive oil

olives

omega-3 and omega-6 fats

Omelet, Coconut Oil

overweight and obesity

- brain degeneration and carbohydrates as primary cause of headaches and impaired brain function and inflammatory problems and

oxidation process

- LDL damage and

oxidative stress

Paleolithic era

pancreas

- insulin production in

Parkinson's disease

- caloric restriction and cholesterol level and ketogenic diet and vitamin D and

Parmigiano-Reggiano, Lemon Rocket with parsnips

peanuts

Pecorino Pesto

personality disorders

pharmaceutical industry

- statins and

planning each week in advance

Plato

Pollan, Michael

potatoes

prions

priorities, setting

probiotics

in birth canal
processed foods
proteins
deformed, causes of
deformed, neurodegenerative diseases and
healthy, diet rich in

Red Cabbage and Tomato Soup
Red Snapper with Celery, Black Olives, Cucumber, Avocado, and Cherry
Tomatoes
red wine
resveratrol
retinol
Roasted Seasonal Vegetables
Rocket, Lemon, with Parmigiano-Reggiano

salads
Caprese
Herb Garden Salad with Balsamic Vinaigrette
Kale Salad with Feta Cheese, Roasted Peppers, Black Olives, Artichokes,
and Buttermilk Dressing
Lemon Rocket with Parmigiano-Reggiano
Nicoise
Roasted Walnut-Oil
Salmon with Mushrooms, Quick
Sardines, Grilled, with Tomato, Rocket, and Pecorino Cheese
saturated fats
heart health and
historic perspective on consumption of
sauces:
Sofrito
see also dips; dressings; spreads; vinaigrettes
schizophrenia
Sea Salt, Naples, Fla., recipes from
seeds
self-assessment
serotonin
serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
sexual function
Shaw, George Bernard

shopping lists

shortening

Fore Ribs, Succulent

shrimp

side dishes:

- Brussels Sprouts

- Cauliflower “Couscous,”

- Green Beans with Garlic Dressing

- Roasted Seasonal Vegetables

- Sautéed Spinach and Garlic

sirtuins

skipping meals

sleep

- aging and

- circadian rhythms and

- genes and

- ghrelin and

- inadequate, impact of

- leptin and

- maintaining regular habits and

- week 3: focus on

sleep aids

sleep apnea

smoking

- headaches and

snacks

- bedtime

soda

Sofrito

soups:

- Broccoli Soup with Cashew Cream

- Courgette Yogurt Gazpacho with Saffron-Marinated Chicken Breast

- Liquid “Minestrone,”

- Tomato and Red Cabbage

- soy products

spinach, in Gruyère and Goat Cheese Frittata

Spinach and Garlic, Sautéed

splurges

spreads:

- Dill

Pecorino Pesto
sprue, *see* celiac disease
starvation
statins
 Alzheimer's disease and
 diabetes and
 memory dysfunction and
 testosterone and
 vitamin D and
Steaks, Balsamic-Glazed
steroid-related hormones
stiff-person syndrome
stimulants
strength training
stress
stretching
strokes
sucrose (table sugar)
sugar
 average consumption of, 302n.
 glycation and
 metabolism of
 types of
 see also blood sugar
suicide
supplements, brain-boosting
 starting regimen of
sweeteners
synapses

Tahini-Avocado Dip
tea
technological aids
testosterone levels
thyroid
tic disorders
TNF alpha
Tomato and Red Cabbage Soup
tomatoes, in Sofrito
Tourette's syndrome

toxins

see also detoxification

trans fats

triglycerides

medium-chain (MCTs)

Truffles, Chocolate

tryptophan

Tuna Carpaccio with Red Onion, Parsley, and Pink Peppercorns

turkey

turmeric

vascular dementia

vascular disease

vegetable oils

vegetables

fiber in

vinaigrettes:

Balsamic

Mustard

Nicoise

violent behaviors

visceral (belly) fat

headaches and

vitamins:

A

B-complex

C

D,

E

K

waist circumference

walnuts:

Oatless “Oatmeal,”

Quick Crunchy “Cereal,”

Roasted Walnut-Oil Salad

water intake

week 1: focus on food

sample menu plan for

week 2: focus on exercise

week 3: focus on sleep

week 4: put it all together

weight loss

insulin sensitivity and
wheat

in Neolithic era

whole

Wheat Belly (Davis)

wine

yogurt

zinc

About the Author

Dr David Perlmutter is a board-certified, practicing neurologist and Fellow of the American College of Nutrition. He is the recipient of numerous awards, including, the Humanitarian of the Year Award from the American College of Nutrition and the Linus Pauling Award for his pioneering research in neurodegenerative diseases. His writings appear extensively in medical publications and he lectures worldwide. Dr. Perlmutter serves on the Medical Advisory Board for *The Dr. Oz Show*, and has appeared on many nationally syndicated radio and television programs, including *20/20*, *Today*, *Good Morning America*, *The Dr. Oz Show*, and *The Early Show* and on CNN and Fox News. He lives in Naples, Florida, with his wife and two children.